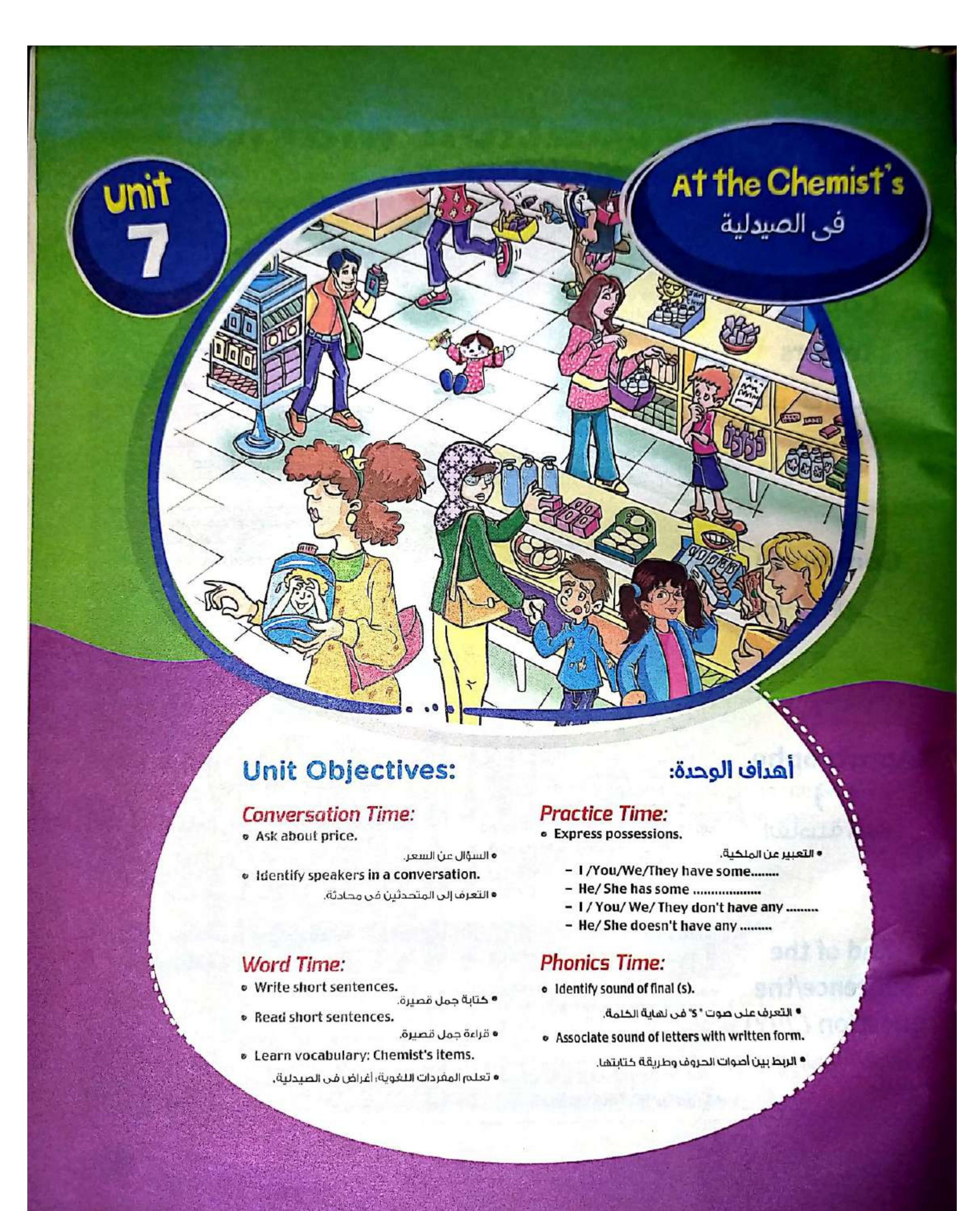


Unit Objectives:

أهداف الوحدة:

Conversation Time:

- Ask about price.
- السؤال عن السعر.
- Identify speakers in a conversation.
- التعرف إلى المتحدثين فى محادثة.

Word Time:

- Write short sentences.
- كتابة جمل قصيرة.
- Read short sentences.
- قراءة جمل قصيرة.
- Learn vocabulary: Chemist's items.
- تعلم المفردات اللغوية: أغراض فى الصيدلية.

Practice Time:

- Express possessions.
- التعبير عن الملكية.
  - I /You/We/They have some........
  - He/ She has some ....
  - I / You/ We/ They don't have any ....
  - He/ She doesn't have any ....

Phonics Time:

- Identify sound of final (s).
- التعرف على صوت "s" فى نهاية الكلمة.
- Associate sound of letters with written form.
- الربط بين أصوات الحروف وطريقة كتابتها.

Conversation Time

SB/ WB: P. (1)



Vocabulary المفردات اللغوية

chemist's	صيدلية	How much....?	كم ثمن ......؟	pound	جنيه
each	كل واحد	okay	حسنًا	change	(فكة) باقي النقود
sure	بالتأكيد	Where.....?	أين .....؟	candy	حلوى
aisle	ممر	How many...? (WB)	كم عدد....؟	doll (WB)	دمية
Why......? (WB)	لماذا......؟	cherry (WB)	كريز	train (WB)	قطار
tree (WB)	شجرة	tea (WB)	شاي	foot (WB)	قدم
cereal (WB)	طعام من الحبوب (يضاف له لبن)	only (WB)	فقط	leg (WB)	رِجل

Opposites المتضادات

cheap (adj.)	رخيص الثمن	expensive (adj.)	غالي الثمن
forget	ينسى	remember	يتذكر

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
thank	يشكر	thanked	help	يساعد	helped

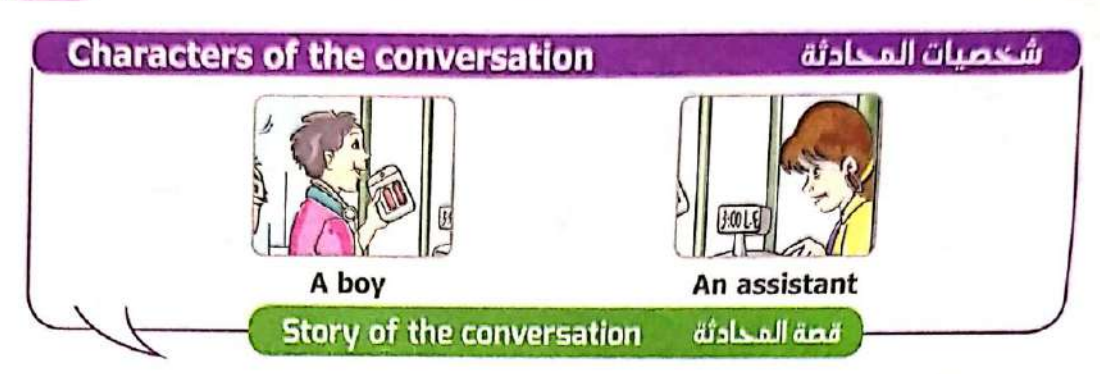
Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
am-is/are	يكون	was/were	take	يأخذ	took
forget	ينسى	forgot			

Expressions and phrases تعبيرات وعبارات

Wow!	تعبير يدل على الدهشة.	Hey!	تعبير لجذب الانتباه.
Oops!	تعبير يستخدم عند حدوث خطأ.	Thanks a lot.	شكرًا جزيلًا.
Excuse me. (WB)	معذرة.		

Characters of the conversation شخصيات المحادثة



Story of the conversation قصة المحادثة

- A boy wants to buy some batteries. He asks the assistant about the price.

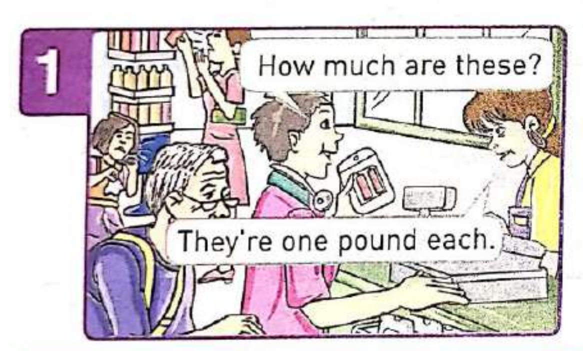
The batteries are only one pound each. The boy wants to buy three.

- ولد يريد شراء بعض البطاريات، ويسأل البائعة عن السعر. سعر البطاريات جنيه للواحدة، والولد يريد شراء ثلاث.



A Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.









B Listen and point to the speakers. استمع وأشِرْ إلى المتحدثين.

C Role-play the conversation with a partner. تبادل الأدوار للمحادثة مع زميل.



Language Functions

1 Asking about price: السؤال عن الثمن (السعر):

How much ......? كم ثمن / سعر....؟

e.g.
A : How much are these? كم ثمن هذه؟
B : They're one pound each. الواحدة ثمنها جنيه.

Note

للسؤال والإجابة عن ثمن أشياء جمع قريبة/بعيدة غير عاقلة:

How much are these/those? كم ثمن هذه / تلك؟

للإجابة: They're + الثمن

A : How much are these?
B : They're one pound each.

these ⟶ تستخدم للإشارة إلى الجمع القريب.
those ⟶ تستخدم للإشارة إلى الجمع البعيد.

- للسؤال و الإجابة عن ثمن شىء مفرد قريب/ بعيد غير عاقل:

How much is this/that? كم ثمن هذا - هذه/ ذلك - تلك؟

للإجابة: It's + الثمن

A : How much is this?
B : It's three pounds.

this ⟶ تستخدم للإشارة إلى المفرد القريب
that ⟶ تستخدم للإشارة إلى المفرد البعيد

2 Making a quick decision: إتخاذ قرار سريع:

will ('ll) + (inf.) مصدر الفعل ....

e.g.
A : Wow! That's cheap. I'll take three. واو! إنها رخيصة، سآخذ ثلاثة.
B : Okay. That's three pounds. حسنًا، إنها بثلاثة جنيهات.

3 Giving instructions (imperative): إعطاء التعليمات (الأمر):

Don't + (inf.) مصدر الفعل ....

e.g.
A : Hey! Don't forget your change. مهلًا! لا تنسَ (الفكه) باقي النقود.
B : Oops! Thanks a lot. عفوًا! شكرًا جزيلًا.

4 Asking for help politely: طلب المساعدة بطريقة مهذبة:

e.g.
A : Excuse me. Can you help me? معذرةً، هل تستطيع أن تساعدني؟
B : Sure. بالتأكيد.

5 Asking about the place of something: السؤال عن مكان شىء ما:

Where...........? أين...........؟

e.g.
A : Where's the candy? أين الحلوى؟
B : It's in aisle 1. انها فى الممر رقم ١.





Listen and complete with one word: استمع وأكمل بكلمة واحدة:

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب.

1. How .... are these? إدارة غرب مدينة نصر 2017
2. That's three .... إدارة أسيوط 2017
3. Wow! That's .... إدارة مصر القديمة 2017
4. I'll .... three. إدارة القناطر الخيرية 2017



D Review. Listen and repeat. راجع. استمع وردد.




Excuse me. Can you help me?


Sure.


Where's the candy?


It's in aisle 1.



Let's say it right



- لاحظ أن حرفى (ch) فى كل من (much/cheap/change) ينطقا /ʧ/ (تش) أما فى (chemist's) ينطقان /k/ (ك).
- لاحظ أن حرفى (th) فى كل من (these/they) ينطقان /ð/ (ذ) أما فى (three/thanks) ينطقان /θ/ (ث).
- لاحظ أن حرفى (su) فى (sure) ينطقان /ʃ/ (ش).
- لاحظ أن حرف (h) فى (Where) "silent" لا ينطق.
- لاحظ أن حرف (s) فى (aisle) "silent" لا ينطق.



A Read and circle.

1.

How	many	is	these	?
Here	much	are	this	!

2.

They're	off	pound	each	,
There	one	doll	eat	.

3.

Why	?	That's	cherry	?	I'll	take	tree	.
Wow	!	This	cheap	.	Is	train	three	,

4.

Okay	,	These	tea	pounds	!
Key	.	That's	three	pound	.

5.

Hey	!	Don't	foot	your	change	?
Hi	,	Do	forget	you're	cereal	.

6.

Only	!	There's	a	leg	,
Oops	?	Thanks	I	lot	.

B Read and write.

1. How much is this?
It's three pounds.
____

2. How much is that?
____
____

3. How much are these?
____
____

4. How much are those?
____
____

Unit 7

Conversation Time

Exercise

1 Listen and complete with one word: استمع وأكمل بكلمة واحدة:



Listen

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب.

1. Can you .... me?
2. They're two pounds ....
3. It's in .... 3.
4. I .... take three.

2 Read and write (True"T" or False"F"): اقرأ واكتب صح أو خطأ:

إدارة شرق شبرا 2015



		True	False
1.	They're at the chemist's.	(..................)	(..................)
2.	There are three babies.	(..................)	(..................)
3.	The old man is wearing a red shirt.	(..................)	(..................)
4.	The boy is listening to music.	(..................)	(..................)

3 Read and circle the odd one: اقرأ وضع دائرة حول الكلمة المختلفة:

1.	this	pen	that	these
2.	aisle	take	forget	help
3.	two	three	one	me
4.	am	pound	is	are

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. This book is one pound. It's ………………………… . إدارة بيا 2017

   a) expensive b) cheap c) each

2. They're one pound ………………………… . إدارة السنبا 2015

   a) much b) each c) many

3. ………………………… forget your change.

   a) Don't b) Doesn't c) Isn't

4. ………………………… is the candy? - It's in aisle 1.

   a) Where b) Which c) When

5 Look and write THREE sentences: انظر واكتب ثلاث جمل:

- …………………………………………………………………………
- …………………………………………………………………………
- …………………………………………………………………………

6 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

- okay. that s three pounds/ إدارة منشأة القناطر 2015

………………………………………………………………………………………… .

For more exercises لمزيد من التدريبات



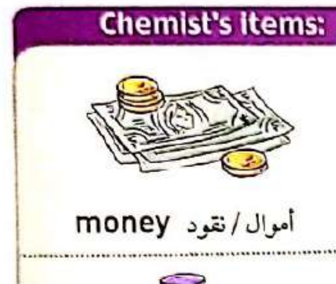


SB/ WB: P. (2)



Vocabulary المفردات اللغوية

Chemist's items: أغراض فى الصيدلية:

 money أموال / نقود	 soap صابون	 shampoo شامبو	 make-up مكياج
perfume عطر (برفان)	 medicine دواء	 toothpaste معجون أسنان	 sunscreen كريم واقٍ من الشمس

Opposites المتضادات

late	متأخر	early	مبكرًا

Other words كلمات أخرى

mum	أُم	What time....?	ما وقت ......؟	please	من فضلك

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past
hurry	يسرع	hurried

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past
hurt	يؤذى / يؤلم	hurt

Expressions and phrases تعبيرات وعبارات

Oh, no!	تعبير يدل على الدهشة.	Ouch!	تعبير يدل على الألم.
What a mess!	يا لها من فوضى!		

A Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.

Watch

1. money	2. soap	3. shampoo	4. make-up
5. perfume	6. medicine	7. toothpaste	8. sunscreen

B Point and say the words. أشر إلى الكلمات وانطقها.





Check-point

Read and circle the odd one: اقرأ وضع دائرة حول الكلمة المختلفة:

(مجاب عنه)

1.	soap	shampoo	cats	make-up	إدارة الوايلى 2017
2.	shampoo	chips	perfume	soap	إدارة المعادى 2017
3.	perfume	play	go	eat	إدارة الزيتون 2017
4.	make-up	medicine	sunscreen	have	إدارة منقلوط 2017



Listen and point. استمع وأشر:



Now, listen and point to the speakers. الآن، استمع وأشر إلى المتحدثين.

Watch

A Mum! What time is it?

B It's 10:30.

A Oh, no! We're late! Please hurry, Mum!



A How much is the toothpaste?

B It's two pounds.

A Wow! That's cheap.



A Ouch! That hurts.

B Oh, no! What a mess!





1 Asking about the time: السؤال عن الوقت:

What time is it? كم الساعة؟

It's + رقم الساعة + **o'clock.** **or** It's + رقم الساعة + عدد الدقائق.

e.g.

A : What time is it? كم الساعة؟

B : It's three o'clock. إنها الثالثة تمامًا/ بالضبط.

or

e.g.

A : What time is it? كم الساعة؟

B : It's 10:30. إنها العاشرة والنصف. أو : إنها العاشرة وثلاثون دقيقة.

2 Expressing pain: التعبير عن الألم:

e.g.

- Ouch! That hurts. آه! هـــذا يؤلم.

3 Stating a problem: ذكر مشكلة:

e.g.

- Oh, no! What a mess! أوه! يا لها من فوضى!





Listen and complete with one word: استمع وأكمل بكلمة واحدة:

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب.

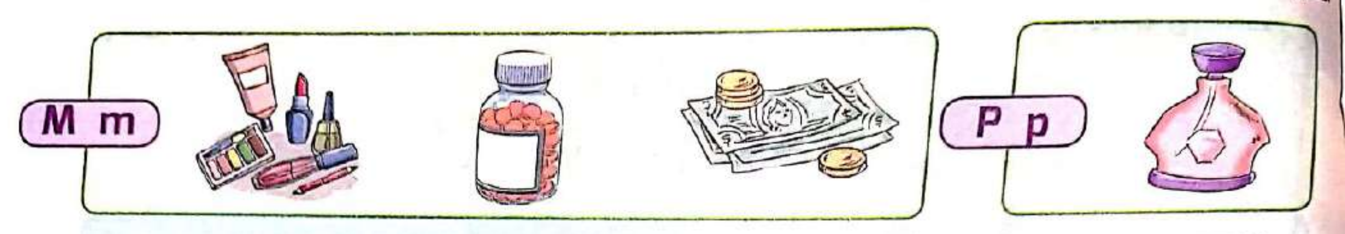
1. How .... is the toothpaste? إدارة غرب مدينة نصر 2017
2. It's three .... إدارة أسيوط 2017
3. Oh, no! .... a mess! إدارة مصر القديمة 2017
4. Wow! That's .... إدارة المناظر الخيرية 2017



D Write the words. (See pages 33 - 34)

اكتب الكلمات.

انظر إلى صفحتى (34 - 33) بالكتاب المدرسى.







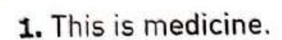
Let's say it right

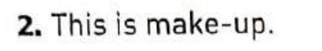
- لاحظ أن حرفى (sh) فى (shampoo) ينطقان /ʃ/ (ش).
- لاحظ أن حرف (c) دائمًا ما ينطق /s/ (س) إذا أتى بعده (i-e-y) كما فى (medicine).
- لاحظ أن حرفى (th) فى (toothpaste) ينطقان /θ/ (ث).





A Read and put ✓ or ✗.

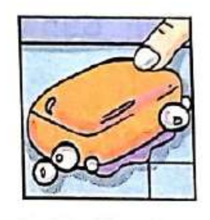

1. This is medicine.

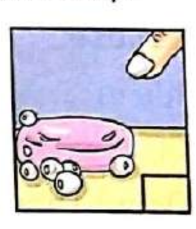

2. This is make-up.


3. This is shampoo.

4. That's soap.







5. That's money.

6. This is toothpaste.

7. That's sunscreen.

8. That's perfume.









B Look and write.



1. ________ 2. ________ 3. ________ 4. ________

5. ________ 6. ________ 7. ________ 8. ________

Word Time

Exercise



1 Listen and complete with one word: استمع وأكمل بكلمة واحدة:

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب.

1. Excuse .... Can you help me?
2. It's in .... 1.
3. I'll .... three.
4. Oops! Thanks a ....



2 Read and write (True"T" or False"F"): اقرأ واكتب صواب أو خطأ:

إدارة الوراق 2017



		True	False
1.	There are some medicine.	[..........]	[..........]
2.	There is some sunscreen.	[..........]	[..........]
3.	There is some money.	[..........]	[..........]
4.	There is some shampoo.	[..........]	[..........]

3 Read and circle the odd one: اقرأ وضع دائرة حول الكلمة المختلفة:

1.	cap	toothpaste	shampoo	soap	إدارة بنى مزار 2016
2.	cheap	late	expensive	help	
3.	soap	shampoo	mess	perfume	إدارة غرب المحلة 2015
4.	hurt	time	hurry	help	

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. How much are .... ?
   a) this b) these c) that
2. Ouch! That ....
   a) hurts b) hurt c) hurting
3. What .... is it? – It's 10:30.
   a) colour b) subject c) time
4. How .... is the medicine? – It's thirty pounds.
   a) many b) much c) old

5 Look and write THREE sentences: انظر واكتب ثلاث جمل:

إدارة الهرم 2015

- ....
- ....
- ....

6 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

- hey don't forget your change/

....

إدارة وسط 2016

For more exercises لمزيد من التدريبات

Unit 7

Cumulative Exercise
Lessons 1& 2

1 Listen and circle the word with the short vowel:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الكلمة التى بها حرف متحرك قصير(غير ممدود):

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب.

a. soap - cup b. mum – cheap c. toothpaste – What d. mess – sunscreen

2 Read and circle the odd one:

اقرأ وضع دائرة حول الكلمة المختلفة:

1.	pound	toothpaste	sunscreen	make-up
2.	cheap	expensive	chemist's	late
3.	How	that	What	Where
4.	thank	hurry	take	medicine

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. How .... are these? - They're three pounds each.
   a) many b) time c) much
2. That .... cheap.
   a) 's b) 'm c) 're
3. .... time is it? - It's 9: 30.
   a) When b) What c) Where
4. Oh, no! We .... late.
   a) 's b) 'm c) 're

4 Look and answer the questions:

انظر وأجب عن الأسئلة:

1 10 pounds

A : How much is the toothpaste?
B : ....

2

A : Is it sunscreen?
B : ....

3

A : Where are they?
B : ....

4

A : What's this?
B : ....



SB/ WB: P. (3)

 Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.



I have He has	some shampoo.	I don't He doesn't	have any soap.

STRUCTURE

Using verb to "have" with "some" & "any" in affirmative and negative statements:

استخدام "have" to .v بمعنى "لديه/ يملك" مع "any" & "some" فى الجمل المثبتة والمنفية:

1- Verb to "have" with "some" in affirmative statements:

I, We, You, They, اسم جمع	have	some	اسم الشيء.
He, She, It , اسم مفرد	has		

e.g. • I have some shampoo.



e.g. • He has some medicine.





2- Verb to "have" with " any" in negative statements:

I, We, You, They, اسم جمع	don't have	any	اسم الشيء.
He, She, It , اسم مفرد	doesn't have		

e.g. • We don't have any money.



e.g. • She doesn't have any perfume.





Note

- لاحظ استخدام "some" فى الجمل الخبرية المثبتة مع الأسماء المعدودة و غير المعدودة:

e.g. • I have some oranges. • She has some soap.

- لاحظ استخدام "any" فى السؤال والنفى مع الأسماء المعدودة و غير المعدودة.

e.g. A : Do you have any carrots?
B : No, I don't have any carrots.

e.g. A : Does she have any toothpaste?
B : No, she doesn't have any toothpaste.



Check-point

Choose the correct answer from a, b or c: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. I don't have .... medicine. (مجاب عنه) إدارة الوايلى 2017
   a) some b) any c) a
2. She .... some toothpaste. إدارة غرب مدينة نصر 2017
   a) hasn't b) have c) has
3. We .... have any soap. إدارة القاهرة الجديدة 2017
   a) aren't b) don't c) doesn't
4. She has .... shampoo. إدارة أسيوط 2017
   a) any b) an c) some

B Listen and repeat. Then practise with a partner. استمع وردد. ثم تدرب مع زميل.



1. He has some perfume.
   He doesn't have any medicine.

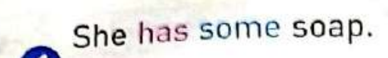


2. They have some make-up.
   They don't have any sunscreen.



3. You have some toothpaste.
   You don't have any money.



4

She has some soap.

She doesn't have any shampoo.



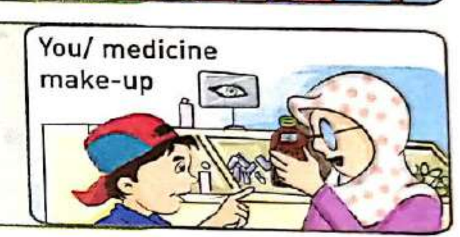
5
We have some sunscreen.

We don't have any perfume.



6
You have some medicine.

You don't have any make-up.



7
I have some shampoo.

I don't have any soap.



8
She has some money.

She doesn't have any toothpaste.



C Look at page 2. Point to the picture and practise with a partner:

انظر صفحة 2 بالكتاب المدرسى. أشر إلى الصورة وتدرب مع زميل كما فى المثال الآتى:

e.g.

S_1: She has some toothpaste.

S_2: She doesn't have any medicine.





D Listen and sing along.

استمع وغـنّ.

I Have Some Toothpaste.



I have some toothpaste in my bag.
I have some toothpaste in my bag.
I have some toothpaste in my bag.
But I don't have any soap.



She has some toothpaste in her bag.
She has some toothpaste in her bag.
She has some toothpaste in her bag.
But she doesn't have any soap.



I have some shampoo in my bag.
I have some shampoo in my bag.
I have some shampoo in my bag.
But I don't have any soap.

He has some shampoo in his bag.
He has some shampoo in his bag.
He has some shampoo in his bag.
But he doesn't have any soap.





A Read, circle and match.

1. I have some	perfume. / money.	I don't have any	soap. / shampoo.
2. I have some	soap. / shampoo.	I don't have any	perfume. / soap.
3. I have some	soap. / sunscreen.	I don't have any	medicine. / money.

B Look and write.



1. They ______________________
2. She ______________________
3. I ______________________
4. He ______________________

C Your turn. Draw and write.



What do you have?

____

____

Practice Time
Exercise

1 Read and write (True"T" or False"F"): اقرأ واكتب صواب أو خطأ:



		True	False
1.	There is some sunscreen.	[..........]	[..........]
2.	There is some make-up.	[..........]	[..........]
3.	The woman is buying food.	[..........]	[..........]
4.	The boy has some perfume.	[..........]	[..........]

2 Read and circle the odd one: اقرأ وضع دائرة حول الكلمة المختلفة:

1.	museum	hospital	bakery	money	إدارة النزهة 2015
2.	shampoo	perfume	mess	soap	إدارة المقطم 2016
3.	make-up	have	medicine	sunscreen	إدارة المنتزه 2017
4.	candy	toothpaste	shampoo	soap	إدارة أبو قرقاص 2017

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. .... have some medicine. إدارة جنوب الجيزة 2016
   a) He   b) She   c) I
2. She doesn't .... any perfume.
   a) has   b) have   c) having
3. They don't have .... money.
   a) many   b) some   c) any
4. Does she .... any perfume? إدارة وسط 2015
   a) has   b) have   c) had

4 Look and answer the questions: انظر وأجب عن الأسئلة:



A : What does he have?

B : ....



A : Do you have any perfume?

B : ....



A : What do you have?

B : ....



A : Does she have any shampoo?

B : ....

5 Look and write THREE sentences: انظر واكتب ثلاث جمل:



- ....
- ....
- ....

6 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

- no I don t have any money/

....

إدارة البدارى 2015

For more exercises لمزيد من التدريبات 



Cumulative Exercise

(Lessons 1 → 3

1 Listen and circle the word with the short vowel:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الكلمة التى بها صوت حرف متحرك قصير (غير ممدود):

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب.

a. much - late b. these - this c. hurt - medicine d. cheap - expensive

2 Listen and complete with one word:

استمع وأكمل بكلمة واحدة:

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب.

1. Oh, no! We're ....
2. Mum! What .... is it?
3. .... much is the sunscreen?
4. Don't forget your ....

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. It's .... aisle 1.
   a) at b) in c) of
2. Don't .... your change.
   a) forget b) forgets c) forgot
3. She .... some shampoo.
   a) has b) hasn't c) have
4. You .... have any toothpaste.
   a) do b) doesn't c) don't

4 Look and answer the questions:

انظر وأجب عن الأسئلة:

1
A : Dose he have any shampoo?
B : ....

2
A : What time is it?
B : ....

3
A : What does she have?
B : ....

4
A : Do you have any sunscreen?
B : ....



SB/ WB: P. (4)

Vocabulary المفردات اللغوية



final s /s/

لاحظ أن حرف "s" الأخير لا يتغير نطقه وينطق /s/ (س) إذا انتهت الكلمة بصوت من الأصوات الآتية: "/p/,/t/,/k/,/θ/,/f/"

caps قبعات	cats قطط	ducks بـط	beets بنجر	bats خفافيش
cups فناجين	tops لعبة النحلة	mats دواسات (سجاد صغير)	chips بطاطس الشيبسى	kits أدوات/ عدة
cakes تورت/ كيك	kites طائرات ورقية	bikes دراجات	carts عربات كارو	socks جورب
books كتب	nuts مكسرات / بندق	rats فئران	pots أوانٍ / حلل	

final s /z/

لاحظ أن حرف "s" الأخير يتغير نطقه وينطق /z/ (ز) إذا انتهت الكلمة بصوت من الأصوات الآتية:
"/g/,/l/,/b/,/n/,/j/,/d/,/m/" أو بـ "a,e,i,o,u" vowel


bags حقائب


girls بنات


peas بازلاء


dogs كلاب


bees نحل

cubs صغار الحيوانات (خصوصًا المفترسة)

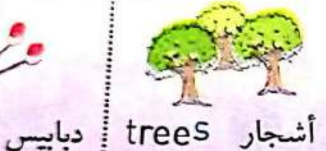
pens أقلام جاف

boys أولاد

kids أطفال

pills حبوب دواء


pins دبابيس


trees أشجار


arms أذرع


eyes عيون


legs أرجل

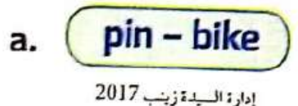

cabs سيارات أجرة



Listen and circle the word with the short vowel:

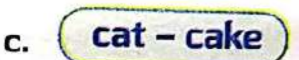
استمع وضع دائرة حول الكلمة التى بها صوت حرف متحرك قصير (غير ممدود):

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب.



a. pin – bike
إدارة السيدة زينب 2017

b. bee – pen
إدارة حدائق القبة 2017



c. cat – cake
إدارة حدائق القبة 2017

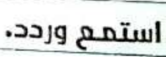
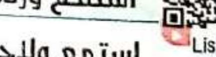
d. cup – tube
إدارة المعادى 2017



A Listen and repeat.

استمع وردد.

استمع ولاحظ الفرق بين نطق حرف الـ (S) الأخير فى الكلمات الآتية:


final s /s/



caps

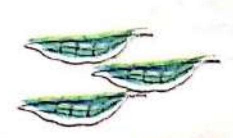

cats


ducks

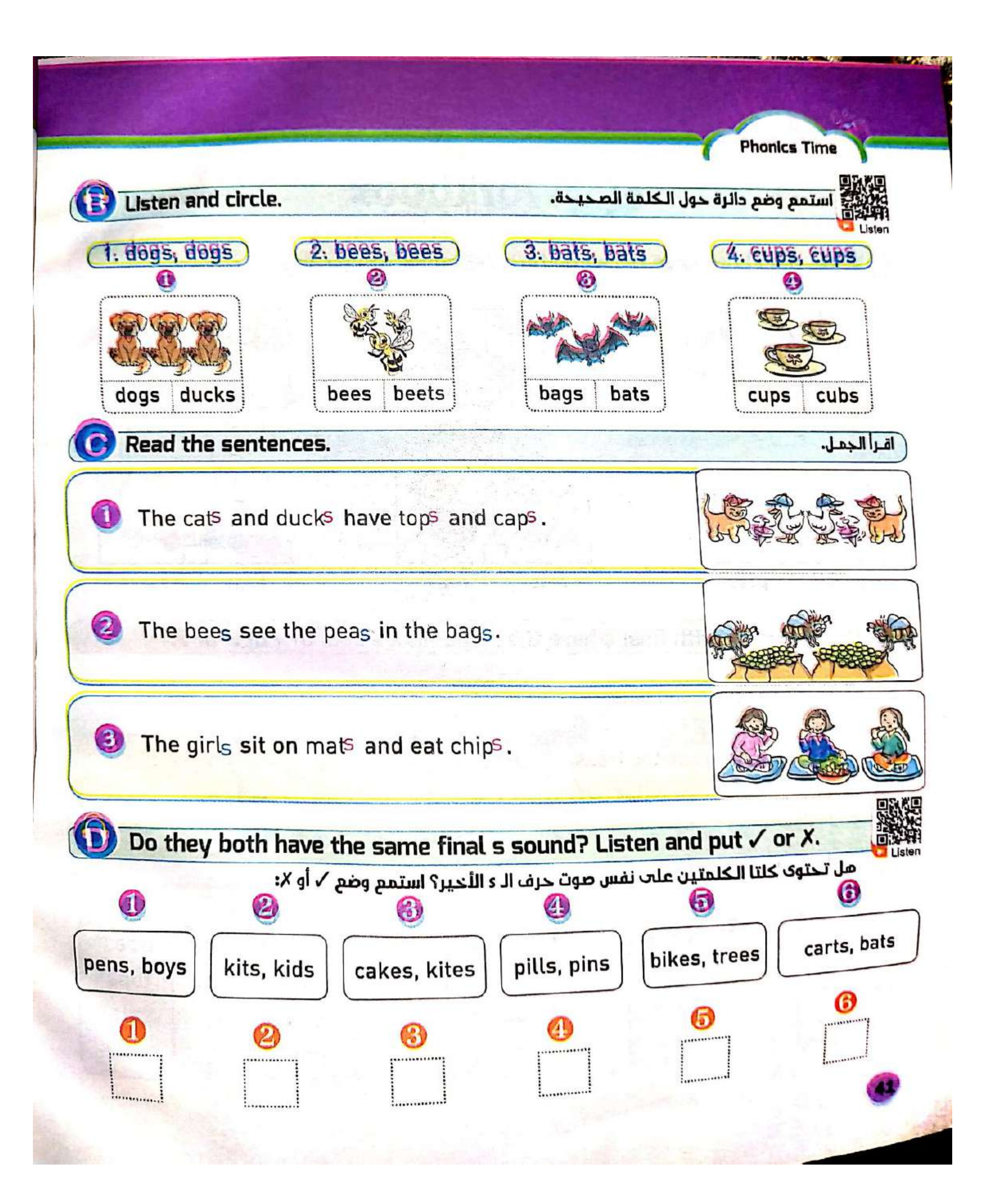
final s /z/


bags


girls


peas





B Listen and circle.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الكلمة الصحيحة.

Listen

1. dogs, dogs | 2. bees, bees | 3. bats, bats | 4. cups, cups

1	2	3	4
dogs / ducks	bees / beets	bags / bats	cups / cubs

C Read the sentences.

اقرأ الجمل.

1. The cats and ducks have tops and caps.
2. The bees see the peas in the bags.
3. The girls sit on mats and eat chips.

D Do they both have the same final s sound? Listen and put ✓ or X.

Listen

هل تحتوى كلتا الكلمتين على نفس صوت حرف الـ s الأخير؟ استمع وضع ✓ أو X:

1. pens, boys
2. kits, kids
3. cakes, kites
4. pills, pins
5. bikes, trees
6. carts, bats

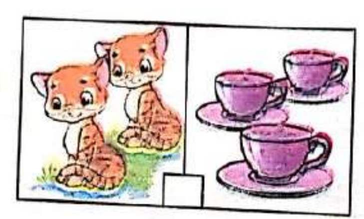
1 ☐ 2 ☐ 3 ☐ 4 ☐ 5 ☐ 6 ☐



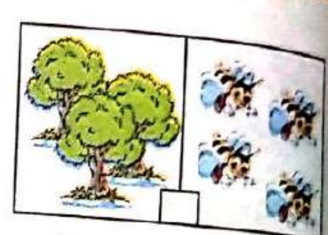
A Do they both have the same final /s/ sound? Put ✓ or ✗.



ducks girls



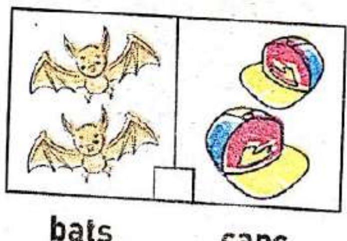
cats cups



trees bees



dogs peas



bats caps



bags socks

B Do the words with final s have the same final s sound? Put ✓ or ✗.

1. The cats see ducks and bats.
2. The bees and dogs see the trees.
3. The girls have books, peas and dogs.

C Circle the word with a different final s sound.

1.	2.	3.	4.	5.
cats	ducks	girls	cups	bees
bats	cups	socks	nuts	tops
bees	bags	beets	caps	rats
tops	cats	bats	cubs	socks

Phonics Time
Exercise



Listen

1 Listen and circle the word with the short vowel:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الكلمة التى بها صوت حرف متحرك قصير (غير ممدود):

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب.

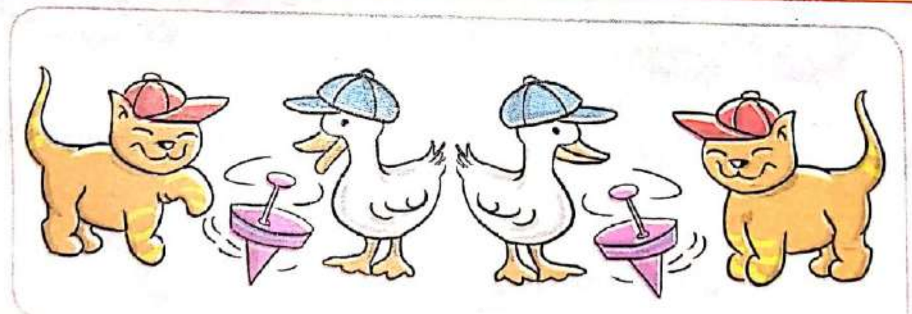
a. (chips – kites) إدارة الإبراهيمية 2017 b. (boys – socks) إدارة بنها 2015 c. (trees – legs) إدارة الفيوم 2015 d. (caps – cakes) إدارة دار السلام 2015

2 Listen and complete with one word: استمع وأكمل بكلمة واحدة:

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب.

1. We have two ....
2. I can see with my ....
3. The girls sit on the ....
4. They eat ....

3 Read and write (True"T" or False"F"): اقرأ واكتب صواب أو خطأ:



	True	False
1. There are two ducks.	(......................)	(......................)
2. They play with tops.	(......................)	(......................)
3. There are three cats.	(......................)	(......................)
4. The cats have caps.	(......................)	(......................)

4 Read and circle the odd one:

اقرأ وضع دائرة حول الكلمة المختلفة:

1.	bats	girls	cats	rats	
2.	mats	nuts	chips	cakes	2015
3.	boys	kids	cubs	girls	2016
4.	arms	eyes	legs	pills	2015

2017

5 Look and answer the questions:

انظر وأجب عن الأسئلة:

1



A : What are these?

B : ....

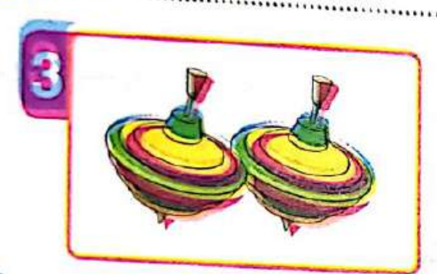
2



A : Are they kids?

B : ....

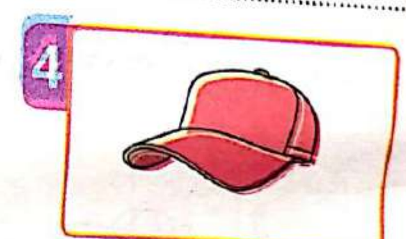
3



A : What can you see?

B : ....

4

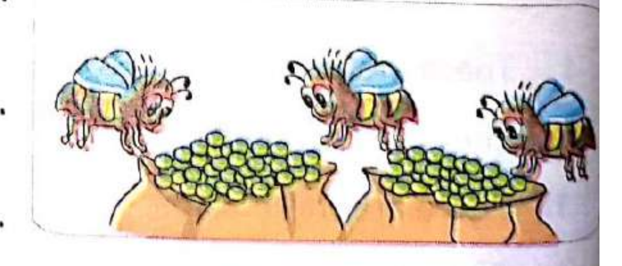


A : Do you have a kite?

B : ....

6 Look and write THREE sentences:

انظر واكتب ثلاث جمل:



- ....
- ....
- ....

For more exercises لمزيد من التدريبات



Cumulative Exercise

Lessons 1 → 4

1 Read and write (True"T" or False"F"): اقرأ واكتب صواب أو خطأ:

	True	False
1. There are four girls.	(..........)	(..........)
2. They're sitting on the mats.	(..........)	(..........)
3. They're eating chips.	(..........)	(..........)
4. They're sad.	(..........)	(..........)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Can you .... me?
   a) talk b) help c) play
2. How much .... this?
   a) is b) are c) am
3. There are six ....
   a) bee b) dog c) kids
4. You have .... toothpaste.
   a) any b) an c) some

3 Look and write THREE sentences: انظر واكتب ثلاث جمل:

- ....
- ....
- ....

4 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- sarah and laila are at the chemist s/ ....

Unit (7) Revision

Conversation Time

A boy : How much are these?

- كم ثمن هؤلاء؟

An assistant : They're one pound each.

- الواحدة ثمنها جنيه.

A boy : Wow! That's cheap. I'll take three.

- واو! انها رخيصة. سآخذ ثلاثًا.

An assistant : Okay. That's three pounds. Hey! Don't forget your change.

- حسنًا. إنها بثلاثة جنيهات. مهلًا! لا تنسَ الفكة باقي النقود.

A boy : Oops! Thanks a lot.

- عفوًا! شكرًا جزيلًا.

Word Time

Vocabulary المفردات اللغوية

money	أموال/ نقود	soap	صابون	shampoo	شامبو
make-up	أدوات تجميل (مكياج)	perfume	عطر (برفان)	medicine	دواء
toothpaste	معجون أسنان	sunscreen	كريم واقٍ من الشمس		

Practice Time

Using verb to "have" with "some" & "any" in affirmative and negative statements:

استخدام v. to "have" بمعنى "لديه / يملك" مع "some" & "any" فى الجمل المثبتة و المنفية:

1- Verb to "have" with "some" in affirmative statements:

I, We, You, They, اسم جمع	have	some	اسم الشيء.
He, She, It , اسم مفرد	has		

e.g.
- We have some soap.
- He has some perfume.

2- Verb to "have" with " any" in negative statements.

I, We, You, They, اسم جمع	don't have	any	اسم الشيء.
He, She, It , اسم مفرد	doesn't have		

e.g.
- We don't have any soap.
- He doesn't have any perfume.

Phonics Time

Final s /s/

caps	قبعات	cats	قطط
ducks	بط	beets	بنجر
bats	خفافيش	cups	فناجين
tops	لعبة النحلة	mats	دواسات (سجاد صغير)
chips	بطاطس الشيبسى	kits	أدوات / عدة
cakes	تورت / كيك	kites	طائرات ورقية
bikes	دراجات	carts	عربات كارو
socks	جورب	books	كتب
nuts	مكسرات/ بندق	rats	فئران
pots	أوانٍ/ حلل		

Final s /z/

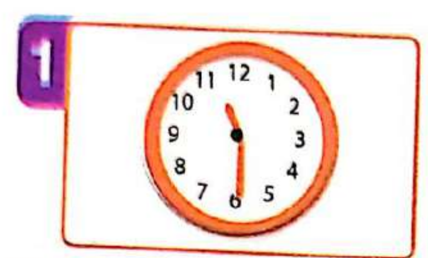
bags	حقائب	girls	بنات
peas	بازلاء	dogs	كلاب
bees	نحل	cubs	صغار الحيوانات (خصوصا المفترسة)
pens	أقلام جاف	boys	أولاد
kids	أطفال	pills	حبوب دواء
pins	دبابيس	trees	أشجار
arms	أذرع	eyes	عيون
legs	أرجل	cabs	سيارات أجرة

Writing Time

1 Look and answer the questions:(Answered examples): ...و أجب عن الأسئلة: (أمثلة مجاب عنها):

...المرئية تساعدك على إجابة السؤال السادس داخل الورقة الامتحانية.

1



A : What time is it?

B : It's 11:30.

2



A : What's this?

B : It's perfume.

3



A : How much is the sunscreen?

B : It's ten pounds.

4



A : Does she have any medicine?

B : Yes, she does.

2 Look and write THREE sentences: (Answered examples): ...نظر واكتب ثلاث جمل: (أمثلة مجاب عنها):

...ه الجزئية تساعدك على إجابة السؤال السابع داخل الورقة الامتحانية.



a
- They are at the chemist's.
- Mona has some toothpaste.
- The woman wants some soap.



b
- Sokkar and Sokkara are at the supermarket.
- They want candy.
- The candy is in aisle 1.



c
- There are three girls sitting on the mats.
- They're eating chips.
- They're happy.

Practise Writing

1 Look and answer the questions: انظر وأجب عن الأسئلة:

(مجاب عنه)

1

A : Do you have any soap?

B : ....

2

A : Does he have any perfume?

B : ....

3

SUN CREAM

A : What's this?

B : ....

4

A : How many bats are there?

B : ....

2 Look and write THREE sentences: انظر واكتب ثلاث جمل:

(مجاب عنه)

a
- ....
- ....
- ....

b
- ....
- ....
- ....

c
- ....
- ....
- ....

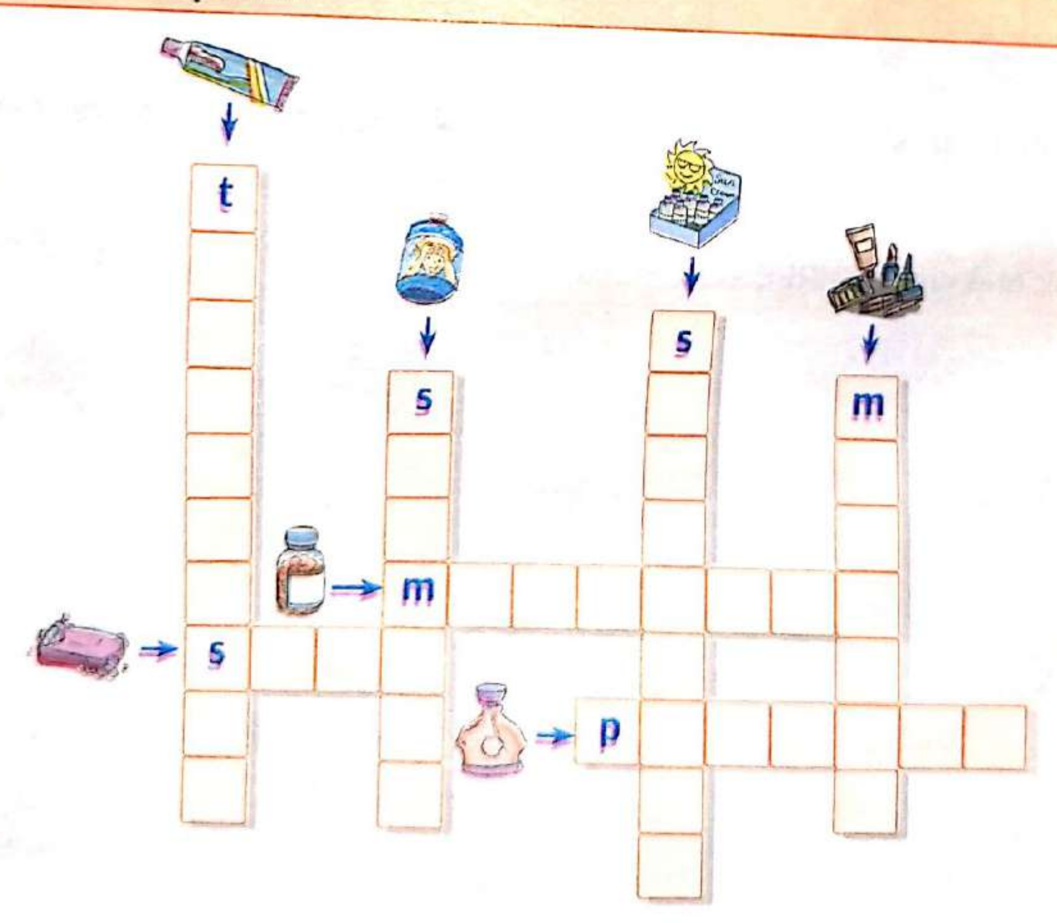
Check Your Vocabulary

Give the meanings in English:

....	دواء	....	ينسى	....	لي الثمن
....	ممر	....	معذرةً	....	يدلية
....	معجون أسنان	....	كريم واقٍ من الشمس	....	صير
....	دواسات (سجاد صغير)	....	خفافيش	....	ؤلم
....	بازلاء	....	أقلام جاف	....	ئران
....	بط	....	بنجر	....	مكسرات/ بندق
....	أدوات/ عدة	....	قبعات	....	ابون

Complete the puzzle:

أكمل اللغز:





Workbook

UNIT (7) Test

A Listen and write.

Listen

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب.

1. How much are ______?
2. ______ one pound ______.
3. Wow! ______ cheap. I'll ______.
4. Okay. That's ______ pounds.
5. Hey! ______ forget ______ change.
6. Oops! Thanks a ______.

B Listen and circle the words with the same final s sound.

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب.

1.	books	dogs	cats	pots	cabs
2.	bags	girls	bees	cups	ducks

C Look and write.

1. ______
2. ______
3. ______
4. ______

D Look and write.

1. She ______ toothpaste.
______ doesn't ______.
2. I ______.
______
3. We ______.
______

Unit (7) Test (1)



A. Listening

1 Listen and circle the word with the short vowel:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الكلمة التى بها صوت حرف متحرك قصير (غير ممدود):

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب.

a. bin – bike b. cup – flute c. bat – plate d. peas – pills

2 Listen and complete with one word:

استمع وأكمل بكلمة واحدة:

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب.

1. Don't .... your change.
2. .... you help me?
3. .... time is it?
4. We are late. Please ....



B. Reading

3 Read and write (True"T" or False"F"):

اقرأ واكتب صواب أو خطأ:



		True	False
1.	They are at the chemist's.	(..........)	(..........)
2.	There are some pets.	(..........)	(..........)
3.	There are some books.	(..........)	(..........)
4.	The woman has some make-up.	(..........)	(..........)

4 Read and circle the odd one:

اقرأ وضع دائرة حول الكلمة المختلفة:

1.	bee	cap	duck	cat
2.	meat	perfume	shampoo	soap
3.	cart	taxi	car	boy
4.	help	play	please	eat

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. I ………………… have any perfume.
   a) do b) don't c) doesn't
2. He ………………… some shampoo.
   a) have b) are c) has
3. The girls sit on the ………………… .
   a) cats b) mats c) bats
4. ………………… much are these?
   a) How b) Who c) What

C. Writing

6 Look and answer the questions: انظر وأجب عن الأسئلة:

1

A : What animals are these?
B : …………………………………

2

A : Where's the rice?
B : …………………………………

3

A : How much is this?
B : …………………………………

4

A : What time is it?
B : …………………………………

7 Look and write THREE sentences: انظر واكتب ثلاث جمل:

- ………………………………… .
- ………………………………… .
- ………………………………… .

8 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- Wow that s cheap/ …………………………………

Unit (7) Test (2)

Selected from Schools' Examinations



1 Listen and circle the word with the short vowel:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الكلمة التى بها صوت حرف متحرك قصير (غير ممدود):

للاجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب.

a. kite – kid (بورسعيد 2015) b. cat – cake (المنوفية 2015) c. pot – home (دمياط 2016) d. soap – book (إدارة الدقى 2016)

2 Listen and complete with one word:

استمع وأكمل بكلمة واحدة:

للاجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب.

1. How much are .... ? (2015)
2. I have some .... (2015)
3. I'll .... three. (2015)
4. We buy medicine at the .... (2014)

B. Reading

3 Read and write (True"T" or False"F"):

اقرأ واكتب صواب أو خطأ:

إدارة الدقى 2015



	True	False
1. There are two girls.	(..........)	(..........)
2. They are at the chemist's.	(..........)	(..........)
3. They are buying soap and sunscreen.	(..........)	(..........)
4. There is some candy.	(..........)	(..........)

4 Read and circle the odd one:

اقرأ وضع دائرة حول الكلمة المختلفة:

1.	mat	toothpaste	shampoo	soap	إدارة الهرم 2015
2.	dogs	cubs	candy	cats	إدارة كوبرى القبة 2017
3.	cakes	peas	chips	tops	إدارة بنى سويف 2017
4.	father	duck	mother	brother	إدارة جنوب سيناء 2017

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. How much is ....? إدارة الدقى 2015
   a) these b) those c) this
2. He doesn't have .... perfume. إدارة الهرم 2015
   a) some b) any c) many
3. Mona .... two kids. إدارة الدقهلية 2016
   a) has b) have c) are
4. They .... have any pens. كفر الشيخ 2016
   a) don't b) doesn't c) isn't

C. Writing

6 Look and answer the questions: انظر وأجب عن الأسئلة:

1

A: Do you have any toothpaste? إدارة أبو النمرس 2015
B: ....

2

A: What is this? إدارة ملاوى 2015
B: ....

3

A: Does she have any sunscreen? إدارة الزيتون 2017
B: ....

4

A: What do you have? إدارة بنى سويف 2016
B: ....

7 Look and write THREE sentences: انظر واكتب ثلاث جمل:

• ....
• ....
• ....

إدارة باب شرق 2015

8 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

• no I don t have any make-up/ .... إدارة أسيوط ٢٠١٦

unit 8

In the Park

فى الحديقة العامة



Unit Objectives:

أهداف الوحدة:

Conversation Time:

- Express regulations. • التعبير عن القواعد.
- Apologise. • الاعتذار.
- Ask about location. • السؤال عن الموقع.
- Identify speakers in a conversation.
  • التعرف الى المتحدثين فى محادثة.

Word Time:

- Write short sentences. • كتابة جمل قصيرة.
- Read short sentences. • قراءة جمل قصيرة.
- Learn vocabulary: Nature.
  • تعلم المفردات اللغوية، الطبيعة.

Practice Time:

- Express presence of items.
  • التعبير عن وجود الأشياء.
  - There's/ are some ....
  - There isn't / aren't any ....

Phonics Time:

- Identify sound of final (es).
  • التعرف على صوت "es" فى نهاية الكلمة.
- Associate sound of letters with written form.
  • الربط بين أصوات الحروف وطريقة كتابتها.

Conversation Time

SB/ WB: P. (5)

Listen

Vocabulary المفردات اللغوية

park	حديقة عامة	What.....?	ما/ ماذا....؟	litter	قمامة
bin	سلة المهملات	Where.....?	أين....؟	tree	شجرة
thanks	شكرًا	Whose...?	لمن/ ملك من..؟	wallet	حافظة نقود للرجال
colour	لون	car (WB)	سيارة	music (WB)	موسيقى
snack (WB)	وجبة خفيفة	homework (WB)	واجب منزلي		

Adjectives الصفات

green	أخضر/ خضراء	yellow	أصفر/ صفراء

Prepositions حروف الجر

under	أسفل/ تحت

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
drop	يُسقط / يلقى	dropped	use	يستخدم	used
wash (WB)	يغسل	washed	watch (WB)	يشاهد	watched
clean up (WB)	ينظف	cleaned up	listen (WB)	يستمع	listened
exercise (WB)	يتدرب/ يتمرن	exercised	climb (WB)	يتسلق	climbed

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
do	يفعل	did	see	يرى	saw
have (WB)	يملك/ يتناول	had			

Expressions and phrases تعبيرات وعبارات

Hey!	تعبير لجذب الانتباه.	I'm sorry.	آسف.
It's over there.	إنها هناك.	It's mine.	ا ملكي.

Phrases (WB) عبارات

drop litter	يلقى القمامة	use the bin	تخدم سلة المهملات
wash the car	يغسل السيارة	watch TV	ساهد التلفاز
listen to music	يستمع إلى الموسيقى	have a snack	اول وجبة خفيفة
climb a tree	يتسلق شجرة	do homework	دى/ يعمل الواجب المنزلي



Characters of the conversation شخصيات المحادثة

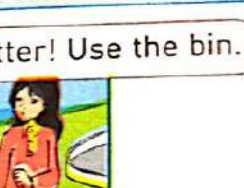

The ranger


A young boy


His friend

Story of the conversation قصة المحادثة

- A young boy and his friend walk in the park. The young boy drops paper on the ground. The ranger of the park sees the paper on the ground. He gets angry and says, "Don't do that. Use the bin".
- ولد وصديقته يمشيان فى الحديقة. الولد يلقى الورق على الأرض. حارس الحديقة يرى الورق على الأرض ويغضب ويقول: "لا تفعل ذلك. استخدم سلة المهملات".





A Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.







B Listen and point to the speakers. استمع وأشر إلى المتحدثين.

C Role-play the conversation with a partner. تبادل الأدوار للمحادثة مع زميل.



Language Functions

1 Giving instructions (imperative): إعطاء التعليمات (الأمر):

• لإعطاء التعليمات بفعل شيء ما نبدأ الجملة بمصدر الفعل:

(Inf.) مصدر الفعل.........

e.g.
- Use the bin. استخدم سلة المهملات.
- Do homework. قم بعمل الواجب المنزلى.

• لإعطاء التعليمات بعدم فعل شيء ما:

Don't + (inf.) مصدر الفعل.........

e.g.
- Don't do that! لا تفعل ذلك!
- Don't drop litter! لا تُلقِ (ترمِ) القمامة!

2 Asking about location of something: السؤال عن موقع (مكان) شيء ما:

Where ......? أين......؟

e.g.

A : Where's the bin? أين سلة المهملات؟

B : It's over there. It's under the tree. إنها هناك .إنها تحت الشجرة.

A : Oh! I see it. Thanks. أوه! أراها. شكرًا.

3 Asking about possession: السؤال عن الملكية:

Whose + الشيء المملوك ? لمن / ملك من ......؟

e.g.

A : Whose wallet is this? لمن / ملك من هذة المحفظة؟

B : Oh! It's mine. أوه! إنها ملكى.

4 Asking about and identifying colours: السؤال عن و التعرف على الألوان:

What colour .....? ما لون ......؟

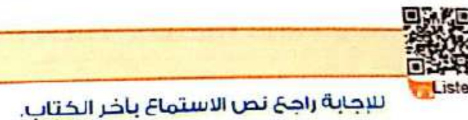
e.g.

A : What colour is it? ما لونها؟

B : It's green and yellow. لونها أخضر وأصفر.



Check-point



للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب.

Listen and complete with one word:

1. Don't drop .... ! إدارة القاهرة الجديدة 2017
2. .... is it? إدارة القاهرة الجديدة 2017
3. I'm .... إدارة الزيتون 2017
4. Use the .... إدارة روض الفرج 2017



راجع. استمع وردد.

D Review. Listen and repeat.

 Whose wallet is this?

 What colour is it?

 It's green and yellow.

 Oh! It's mine.



Let's say it right

- لاحظ أن حرف (h) فى (Where) "silent" لا ينطق.
- لاحظ أن حرف (W) فى (Whose) "silent" لا ينطق وحرف (s) ينطق /z/ (ز).
- لاحظ أن حرف (b) فى (climb) "silent" لا ينطق.

Unit 8



A Read and match. Then number the pictures.

1. Hey! Don't do that! ●
2. Don't drop litter! Use the bin. ●
3. It's over there. It's under the tree. ●

● Oh, I see it. Thanks.
● What?
● I'm sorry. Where is it?





B Unscramble, write and match.

1. | TV | the | Wash | Don't | . | car | watch | ! | ●

____

2. | . | music | to | Clean | ! | listen | Don't | up | ●

____

3. | snack | Don't | Exercise | have | a | ! | . | ●

____

4. | ! | climb | a | Don't | Do | tree | . | homework | ●

____

a. ● 

b. ● 

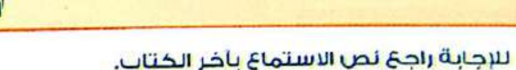
c. ● 

d. ● 

Conversation Time

Exercise

1 Listen and complete with one word:



1. Don't do .... !
2. Oh, it's ....
3. I can't .... it.
4. .... wallet is this?

إدارة شبين الكوم 2015

2 Read and write (True "T" or False "F"):

إدارة الدقي 2015



		True	False
1.	There are two boys.	(..................)	(..................)
2.	The girl is eating.	(..................)	(..................)
3.	They are in the park.	(..................)	(..................)
4.	The boy drops litter on the ground.	(..................)	(..................)

3 Read and circle the odd one:

1.	drop	bin	find	use
2.	Whose	What	do	Where
3.	over	under	next	colour
4.	mine	yellow	green	blue

إدارة الشهداء 2014

إدارة قنــا 2014

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c:

1. Don't drop .... ! Use the bin. إدارة دسوق 2015

   a) letter b) liter c) litter

2. .... colour is it?

   a) Who b) What c) When

3. .... is the bin? - It's under the tree. إدارة حلوان 2015

   a) How b) Where c) When

4. Whose wallet .... this? إدارة البدارى 2014

   a) is b) are c) does

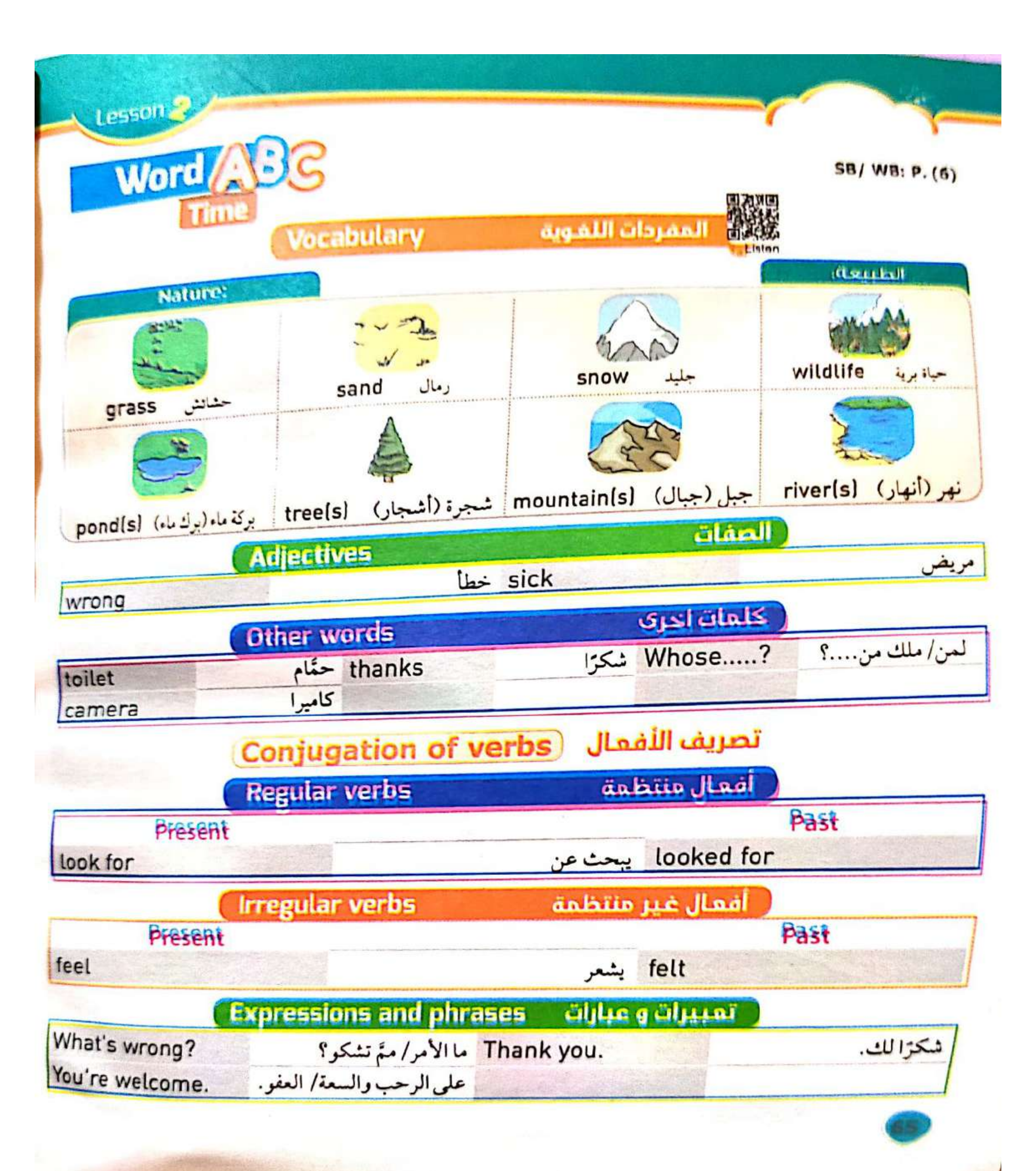
5 Look and write THREE sentences:

- ....
- ....
- ....

6 Punctuate the following:

- let s go to the park on monday/

....



Word ABC Time

SB/ WB: P. (6)

Vocabulary المفردات اللغوية

Listen

Nature: الطبيعة

grass حشائش	sand رمال	snow جليد	wildlife حياة برية
pond(s) بركة ماء (برك ماء)	tree(s) شجرة (أشجار)	mountain(s) جبل (جبال)	river(s) نهر (أنهار)

Adjectives الصفات

wrong	خطأ	sick	مريض

Other words كلمات أخرى

toilet	حمَّام	thanks	شكرًا	Whose.....?	لمن/ ملك من....؟
camera	كاميرا				

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	
look for	يبحث عن	looked for	

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	
feel	يشعر	felt	

Expressions and phrases تعبيرات و عبارات

What's wrong?	ما الأمر/ ممَّ تشكو؟	Thank you.	شكرًا لك.
You're welcome.	على الرحب والسعة/ العفو.		





Listen and repeat.

استمع وردد.

1. grass	2. sand	3. snow	4. wildlife
5. pond/ ponds	6. tree/ trees	7. mountain/ mountains	8. river/ rivers

B Point and say the words.

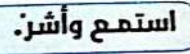
أشر إلى الكلمات وانطقها.



Read and circle the odd one:

(مجاب عنه)

1.	forget	snow	sand	grass	إدارة أسيوط 2017
2.	trees	ponds	rivers	shampoo	إدارة حدائق القبة 2017
3.	river	mountain	key	sea	إدارة غرب مدينة نصر 2017
4.	tree	drop	see	do	إدارة روض الفرج 2017





Listen and point.



Now, listen and point to the speakers.

الآن، استمع وأشر إلى المتحدثين.

A What's wrong?

B I feel sick.



A What are you looking for?

B The toilet.

A It's over there.

B Oh! I see it. Thanks.



A Whose camera is this?

B It's mine! Thank you.

A You're welcome.





1 Asking about a problem: السؤال عن مشكلة:

What's wrong? ما الأمر؟ / مم تشكو؟

e.g.

A : What's wrong? ما الأمر؟/ مم تشكو؟

B : I feel sick. أشعر بالمرض.

2 Thanking: الشكر:

e.g.

A : Thanks. /Thank you. شكرًا / شكرًا لك.

B : You're welcome. على الرحب والسعة / العفو.



Listen and complete with one word:



للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب.

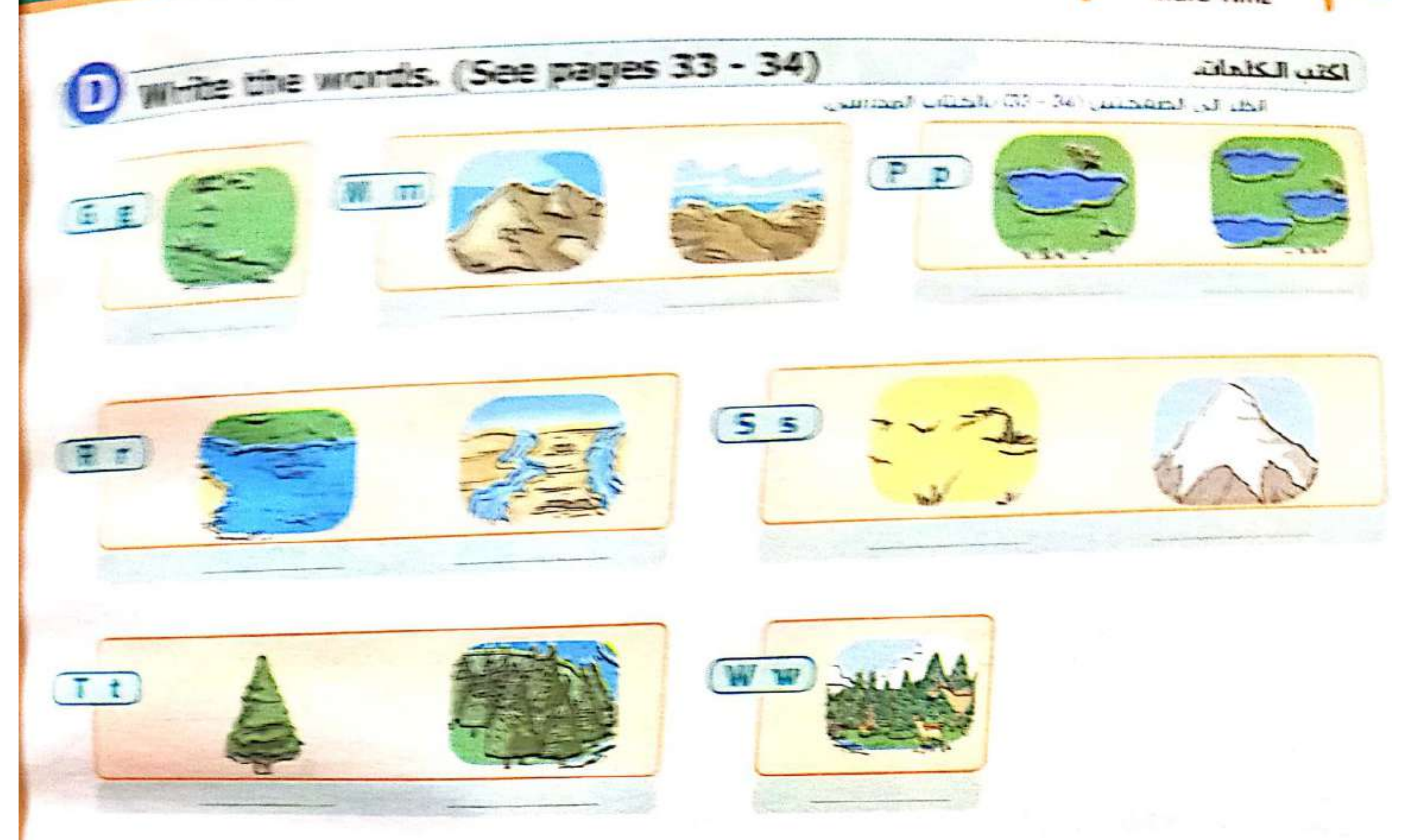
1. Whose camera is .... ?
2. .... wrong?
3. It's over ....
4. What are you ....for?



D Write the words. (See pages 33 - 34)

اكتب الكلمات

انظر إلى الصفحتين (33 - 34) بالكتاب المدرسي



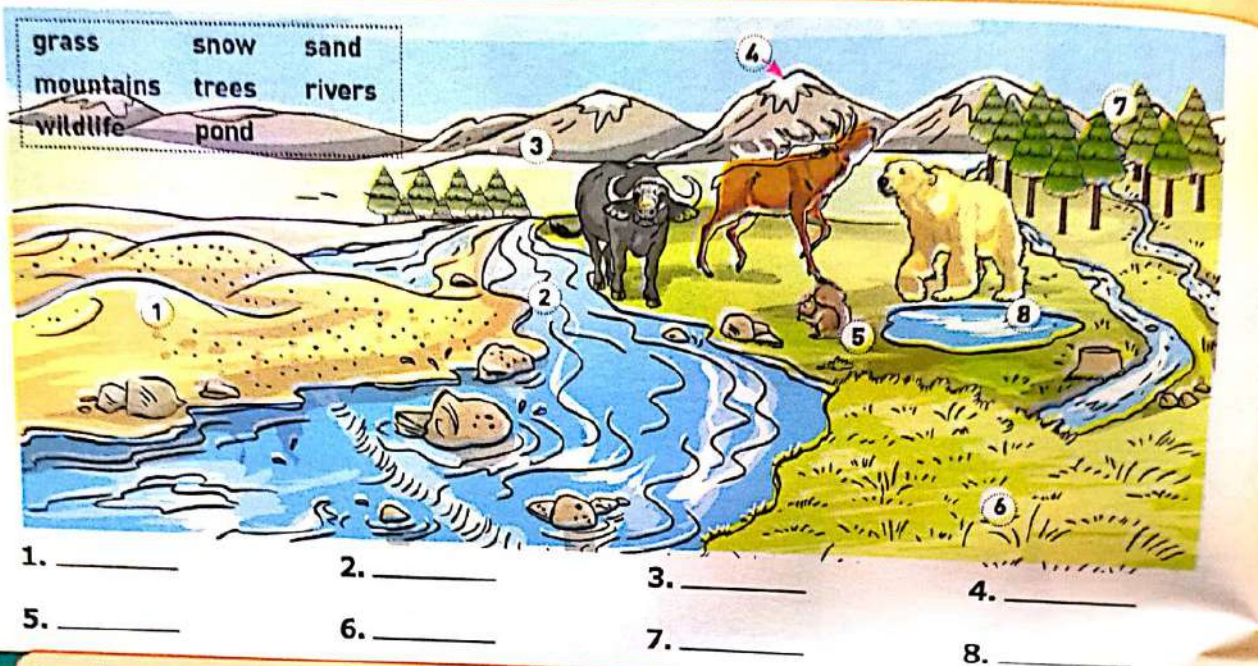
Let's say it right

- لاحظ أن حرف (W) فى (Wrong) "silent" لا ينطق.
- لاحظ أن حرف (C) فى كل من (Camera/welCome) ينطق /k/ (ك).

Unit 



A Look and write.



1. ________ 2. ________ 3. ________ 4. ________

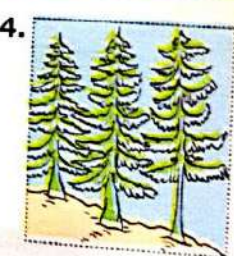
5. ________ 6. ________ 7. ________ 8. ________

B Look, read and put ✓ or ✗.

1. 
snow ☐

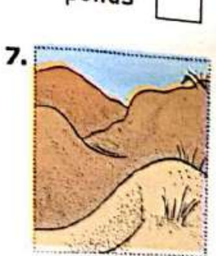
2. 
grass ☐

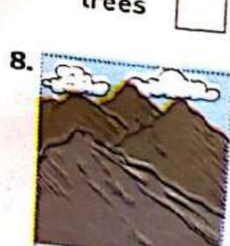
3. 
ponds ☐

4. 
trees ☐

5. 
wildlife ☐

6. 
rivers ☐

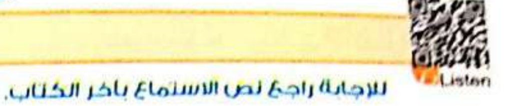
7. 
sand ☐

8. 
mountains ☐

Word Time

Exercise





1 Listen and complete with one word:

Listen

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب.

1. Oh, I .... it.
2. I .... sick.
3. What's .... ?
4. .... welcome.

2 Read and write (True "T" or False "F"):



	True	False
1. There isn't any grass.	[..................]	[..................]
2. The girl is eating.	[..................]	[..................]
3. The man is in the boat.	[..................]	[..................]
4. There are nine trees.	[..................]	[..................]

3 Read and circle the odd one:

1.	tree	flower	sleep	grass	إدارة سنورس 2014
2.	ponds	mountain	trees	rivers	منطقة بني مزار 2015
3.	trees	ponds	mountains	camera	إدارة البدارى 2014
4.	sand	car	truck	bus	إدارة إدفو 2014



4 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c:

1. You .... welcome.

   a) am b) are c) have

2. What's ....?

   a) wrong b) right c) left

3. I .... sick.

   a) fill b) feel c) full

4. What .... you looking for?

   a) is b) do c) are

5 Look and write THREE sentences:

الوسطى 2015

- ....
- ....
- ....



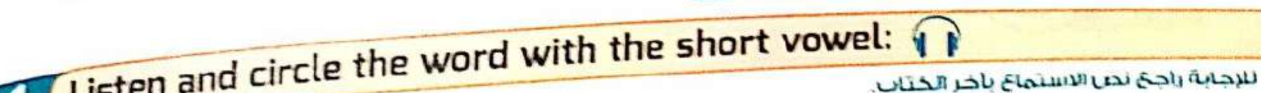
6 Punctuate the following:

- it s mine. thank you/ ....

For more exercises لمزيد من التدريبات



Cumulative Exercise
Lessons 1 & 2




1 Listen and circle the word with the short vowel:

Listen للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب.

a. bin - see b. tree – drop c. mountain – river d. look – snow

2 Read and circle the odd one:

1.	grass	sand	wallet	wildlife
2.	tree	litter	snow	river
3.	feel	look	thank	homework
4.	see	wrong	sick	bad

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c:

1. .... camera is this? - It's mine.
   a) Whose b) Where c) When
2. You .... welcome.
   a) 'm b) 's c) 're
3. There is some ....
   a) ponds b) trees c) wildlife
4. Whose keys are ....?
   a) this b) these c) that

4 Look and answer the questions:

1 
A : What can you see?
B : ....

2 
A : Where's the bin?
B : ....

3 
A : What colour is it?
B : ....

4 
A : What are these?
B : ....





SB/ WB: P. (7



A Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.

There's some grass.	There isn't any sand.
There are some trees.	There aren't any rivers.

There's = There is :لاحظ الاختصار

STRUCTURE

Countable & uncountable nouns: الأسماء المعدودة وغير المعدودة:

- Countable nouns: الأسماء المعدودة:

- هى الأسماء التى تعد، وتأتى فى المفرد و الجمع.
- عندما تأتى فى المفرد يضاف قبلها "a/an" ولكن عندما تأتى فى الجمع لا يضاف قبلها "a/an"، ويضاف فى نهايتها "s/es/ies":

e.g. • a pond ⟶ ponds • a mountain ⟶ mountains

- Uncountable nouns: الأسماء غير المعدودة:

- هى الأسماء التى لا تعد، ودائمًا تأتى فى المفرد.

e.g. (grass - snow - sand - wildlife - ......etc.)

"There is /There are....." with countable and uncountable nouns:

"يوجد......" مع الأسماء المعدودة وغير المعدودة:

Affirmative: الإثبات:

There is ('s) .... يوجد (للمفرد)	There are .... يوجد (للجمع)
There's a/an + اسم مفرد (معدود).	There are some + اسم جمع (معدود).
e.g. There's a tree.	e.g. There are some trees. There are some rivers.
There's some + اسم مفرد (غير معدود).	
e.g. There's some grass.	



Negative: النفى

There isn't .... لا يوجد (للمفرد)	There aren't .... لا يوجد (للجمع)
There isn't any + اسم مفرد (غير معدود).	There aren't any + اسم جمع (معدود).
e.g. There isn't any snow. There isn't any grass.	e.g. There aren't any trees. There aren't any rivers.

Note

- لاحظ: عند النفى نضيف "not (n't)" بعد "There is/There are" وتحول "some" إلى "any".

e.g. • There is some sand. النفى → There isn't any sand.

e.g. • There are some ponds. النفى → There aren't any ponds.



Choose the correct answer from a, b or c:

(مجاب عنه)

إدارة أسيوط 2017

1. There .... any wildlife.
   a) are b) is c) isn't

إدارة القاهرة الجديدة 2017

3. There is some ....
   a) trees b) snow c) ponds

إدارة الزيتون 2017

2. There aren't .... rivers.
   a) any b) some c) a

إدارة روض الفرج 2017

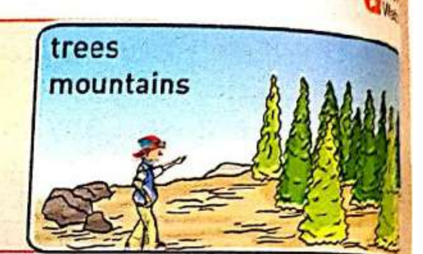
4. There are .... trees.
   a) any b) a c) some

B Listen and repeat. Then practise with a partner.

استمع وردد. ثم تدرب مع زميل.

1. There are some trees.

   There aren't any mountains.



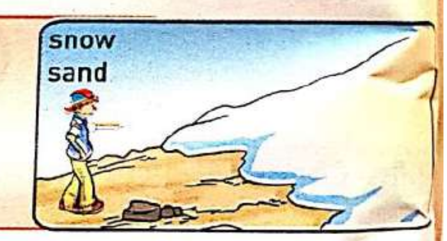
2. There are some mountains.

   There aren't any trees.



3. There's some snow.

   There isn't any sand.



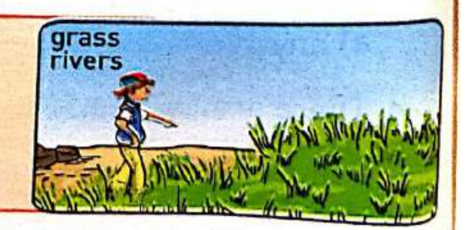
4. There's some sand.

   There isn't any snow.



5. There's some grass.

   There aren't any rivers.





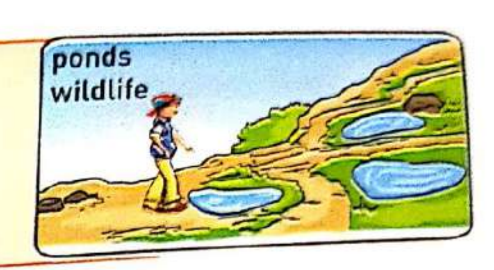
6 There are some rivers.

There isn't any grass.



7 There are some ponds.

There isn't any wildlife.



8 There's some wildlife.

There aren't any ponds.



C Look at page 6. Point to the picture and practise with a partner:

انظر صفحة 6 بالكتاب المدرسى. أشر إلى الصورة وتدرب مع زميل كما فى المثال الآتى:

e.g.

S1: There's some grass.

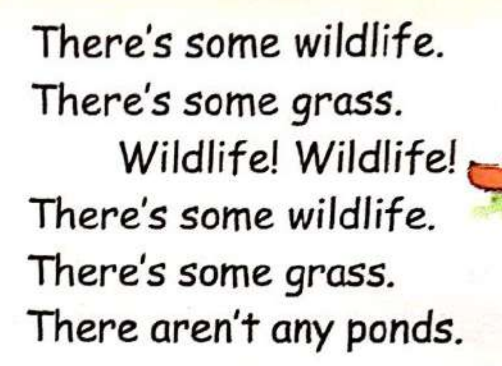
S2: There aren't any trees.



D Listen and sing along. استمع وغـنِّ.



There's Some Wildlife.



There's some wildlife.
There's some grass.
Wildlife! Wildlife!
There's some wildlife.
There's some grass.
There aren't any ponds.

There aren't any ponds.
There aren't any ponds.
There's some wildlife.
There's some grass.
There aren't any ponds.



There's some wildlife.
There's some sand.
Wildlife! Wildlife!
There's some wildlife.
There's some sand.
There aren't any trees.

There aren't any trees.
There aren't any trees.
There's some wildlife.
There's some sand.
There aren't any trees.

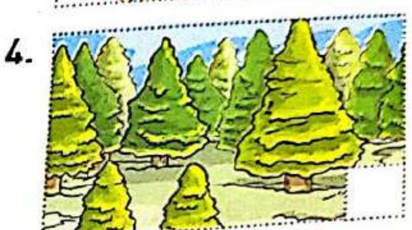


A Read and write the letter.

1.


2.


3.


4.


a. There are some trees.
There aren't any ponds.

b. There are some mountains.
There isn't any grass.

c. There's some snow.
There isn't any sand.

d. There's some wildlife.
There aren't any rivers.

B Compare the pictures. What's different? Write three sentences about picture 2.

1.

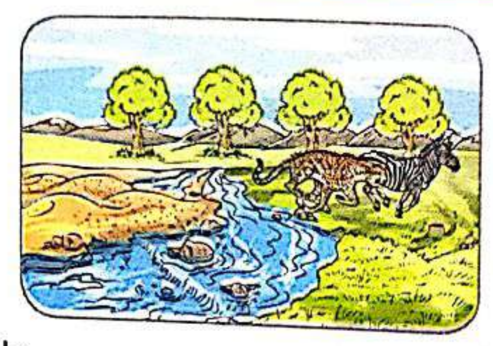

2.


- There's some snow. There aren't any trees.
- ______________________________
- ______________________________
- ______________________________



Practice Time
Exercise

1 Read and write (True "T" or False "F"):



		True	False
1.	There are some animals.	(..................)	(..................)
2.	There is some wildlife	(..................)	(..................)
3.	There aren't any people.	(..................)	(..................)
4.	There are three trees.	(..................)	(..................)

2015 الزقازيق

2 Read and circle the odd one:

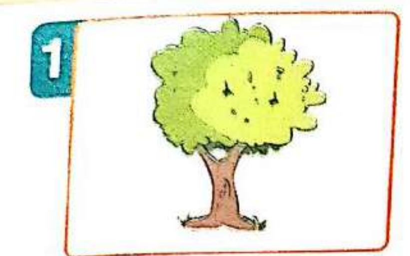
1.	read	tree	flower	grass	إدارة الخليفة 2015
2.	sand	mountain	snow	money	إدارة الزقازيق 2015
3.	sea	pond	bus	river	إدارة جنوب سيناء 2015
4.	grass	boy	sand	snow	

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c:

1. There aren't .... rivers. — إدارة غرب المحلة 2014
   a) some b) an c) any
2. There .... some wildlife.
   a) is b) are c) isn't
3. There isn't any .... — إدارة سنورس التعليمية 2015
   a) ponds b) rivers c) sand
4. There .... some trees in the park. — إدارة منشأة القناطر 2015
   a) is b) are c) isn't

4 Look and answer the questions:

1



A : Is it a tree?

B : ....

إدارة شبرا الخيمة 2017

2



A : What is this?

B : ....

إدارة رشيد 2017

3



A : What can you see?

B : ....

إدارة المنيا 2015

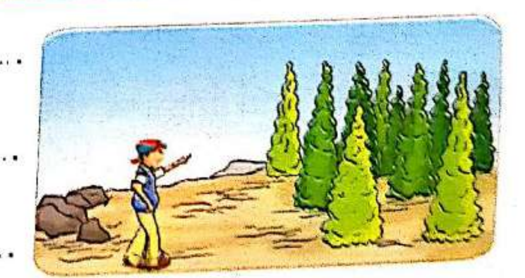
4



A : How many ponds are there?

B : ....

5 Look and write THREE sentences:



- ....
- ....
- ....

6 Punctuate the following:

- where s my wallet, nour/ ....

For more exercises لمزيد من التدريبات



Cumulative Exercise (Lessons 1 → 3)

1 Listen and circle the word with the short vowel:

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب.

a. green – sand b. snow – litter c. mine – this d. pond – toilet

2 Listen and complete with one word:

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب.

1. Don't .... litter!
2. It's under the ....
3. Whose .... is it?
4. You're ....

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c:

1. There aren't any ....
   a) river b) ponds c) tree
2. There .... some sand.
   a) 'm b) 's c) 're
3. .... drop litter! Use the bin.
   a) Didn't b) Doesn't c) Don't
4. Whose wallet .... this?
   a) is b) are c) does

4 Look and answer the questions:

1. A : What is this?
   B : ....
2. A : What can you see?
   B : ....
3. A : What are you looking for?
   B : ....
4. A : What's wrong?
   B : ....





SB/ WB: P. (8)



Vocabulary المفردات اللغوية

لاحظ أن حرفي الـ "es" ينطقان / Iz / إذا انتهت الكلمة بصوت من الأصوات الآتية: "/ks/, /s/, /tʃ/, /dʒ/, /ʃ/"

Final es /Iz/

boxes صناديق	buses أتوبيسات	pencil cases مقلمات	sandwiches ساندوتشات	nurses ممرضات	oranges برتقال
bushes شجيرات	peaches خوخ	witches ساحرات	beaches شواطئ	foxes ثعالب	leashes سلاسل/ قيود/ ألجمة
purses حافظات نقود للسيدات	kisses قُبلات	lashes أسواط/ سياط	matches أعواد كبريت	glasses نظارة/ نظارات	





Final s /z/

لاحظ أن حرف الـ "s" الأخير يتغير نطقه وينطق /z/ في الكلمات الآتية:

keys مفاتيح	eggs بيض	apples تفاح	bees نحل
bags حقائب	trees أشجار	dogs كلاب	pens أقلام جاف

Final s /s/

لاحظ أن حرف الـ "s" الأخير لا يتغير نطقه وينطق /s/ في الكلمات الآتية:

ducks بط	books كتب	cups فناجين	pots أوانٍ/ حلل	cats قطط	caps قبعات

Check-point

Listen and circle the word with the short vowel:

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب.

a. peaches - witches (إدارة المعادي 2017)
b. buses - bees (إدارة كفر الدوار 2017)
c. foxes - trees (إدارة الوايلي 2017)
d. keys - kisses (إدارة 2017)

A Listen and repeat.

استمع وردد

استمع ولاحظ نطق حرفي الـ (es) في الكلمات الآتية:

Final es /Iz/

boxes — buses — pencil cases — sandwiches

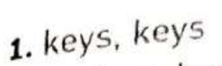




B Does it have final es? Listen and put ✓ or ✗.

هل تحتوي الكلمات الآتية على صوت الـ "es" الاخير؟ استمع وضع ✓ أو ✗.

1. keys, keys
2. nurses, nurses
3. oranges, oranges
4. bushes, bushes
5. eggs, eggs



















اقرأ الجمل.

C Read the sentences.



1. The nurses eat peaches with the witches.



2. She runs on beaches with foxes on leashes.



3. There are sandwiches and pencil cases in boxes under the buses.





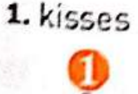
D Listen and match.

استمع وصل.

استمع إلى نص الاستماع وصل الرقم بالكلمة التي تسمعها.



1. kisses
2. matches
3. purses
4. bushes
5. lashes











purses | kisses | lashes | matches | bushes











Unit 8



A Read and circle the words with the final es sound.

keys pencil cases witches bushes bees ducks bags
apples beaches books oranges sandwiches trees
boxes glasses buses cups peaches dogs foxes

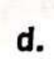
B Read and match.

1. I want peaches and oranges. I don't want eggs.
2. There are glasses under the bushes.
3. The witches have pots and cups.
4. He has some bags. He doesn't have any cats.

a. 

b. 

c. 



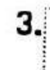
d. 

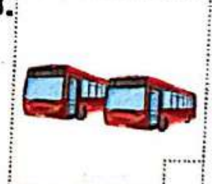
C Does it have the final es sound? Put ✓ or X.

1. 



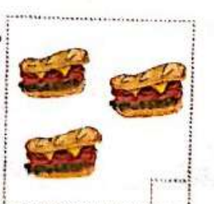
2. 



3. 

4. 

5. 

6. 

7. 

8. 



Phonics Time
Exercise



1 Listen and circle the word with the short vowel:

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب.

a. pencil – green (إدارة الشهداء 2015) b. dog – boat (إدارة الهرم 2016) c. bees – ducks (إدارة البدارى 2017) d. pens – trees (إدارة المنيا 2017)

2 Listen and complete with one word:

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب

إدارة النزهة 2015

1. I don't want ....
2. She runs on the ....
3. The .... have pots and cups.
4. There are pencil .... under the desk. إدارة كوم حمادة 2016

3 Read and write (True "T" or False "F"):

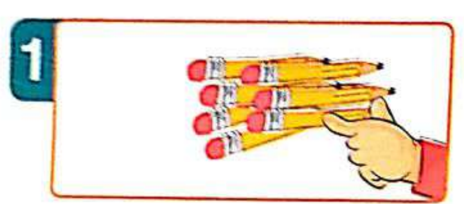


	True	False
1. They are eating fruits.	[..................]	[..................]
2. They are at school.	[..................]	[..................]
3. There are two witches.	[..................]	[..................]
4. There are three nurses.	[..................]	[..................]

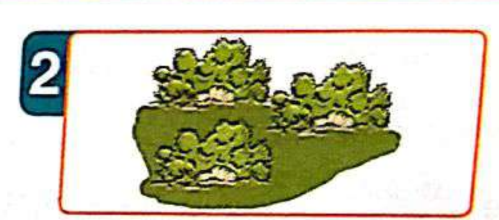
4 Read and circle the odd one:

1.	glasses	peaches	sandwiches	oranges	
2.	cat	dog	fox	pen	إدارة شرق شبرا 2015
3.	caps	boxes	nurses	pencil cases	
4.	bus	pencil case	car	taxi	إدارة روض الفرج 2014

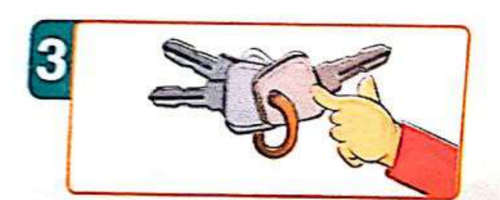
5 Look and answer the questions:

1


A : What are these?
B : ....

2


A : What can you see?
B : ....

3


A : Are these purses?
B : ....

4


A : Where are they?
B : ....

6 Look and write THREE sentences:

- ....
- ....
- ....



For more exercises لمزيد من التدريبات 

Cumulative Exercise
(Lessons 1 → 4)

1 Read and write (True "T" or False "F"):



	True	False
1. There are three boys.	[..........]	[..........]
2. There is a pond.	[..........]	[..........]
3. They are in the park.	[..........]	[..........]
4. Sokkara is looking for her purse.	[..........]	[..........]

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c:

1. It's mine. Thank ....
   a) he b) you c) she
2. There .... some mountains.
   a) am b) is c) are
3. There is .... grass.
   a) any b) an c) some
4. .... drop litter!
   a) Do b) Don't c) Does

3 Look and write THREE sentences:



- ....
- ....
- ....

4 Punctuate the following:

- let s go to the park on friday/ ....



Conversation Time

The ranger : Hey! Don't do that! — مهلًا! لا تفعل ذلك!

A young boy : What? — ماذا؟

The ranger : Don't drop litter! Use the bin. — لا تُلقِ (ترمِ) القمامة! استخدم سلة المهملات.

A young boy : I'm sorry. Where is it? — أنا آسف. أين هي؟

The ranger : It's over there. It's under the tree. — إنها هناك. إنها تحت الشجرة.

A young boy : Oh! I see it. Thanks. — أوه! أراها. شكرًا.

Word Time

Vocabulary — المفردات اللغوية

grass	حشائش	sand	رمال
snow	جليد	wildlife	حياة برية
pond(s)	بركة ماء (برك ماء)	tree(s)	شجرة/ أشجار
mountain(s)	جبل/ جبال	river(s)	نهر/ أنهار



Practice Time

"There is /There are....." with countable and uncountable nouns:
يوجد..... مع الأسماء المعدودة وغير المعدودة:

Affirmative: الإثبات

There's .... يوجد (للمفرد)	There are .... يوجد (للجمع)
There's a/an + اسم مفرد (معدود)	There are some + اسم جمع (معدود)
e.g. There is a river.	e.g. There are some ponds.
There's some + اسم مفرد (غير معدود)	
e.g. There is some wildlife.	

Negative: النفي

There isn't .... لا يوجد (للمفرد)	There aren't .... لا يوجد (للجمع)
There isn't any + اسم مفرد (غير معدود)	There aren't any + اسم جمع (معدود)
e.g. There isn't any sand.	e.g. There aren't any mountains.

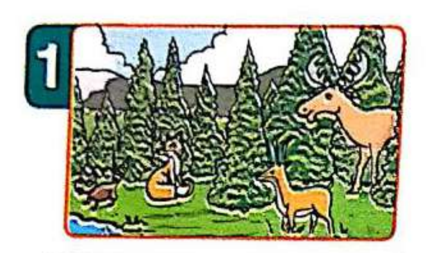
Phonics Time

Final es /Iz/			
boxes	صناديق	buses	أتوبيسات
pencil cases	مقلمات	sandwiches	ساندوتشات
nurses	ممرضات	oranges	برتقال
bushes	شجيرات	peaches	خوخ
witches	ساحرات	beaches	شواطئ
foxes	ثعالب	leashes	سلاسل/ قيود/ ألجمة
purses	حافظات نقود للسيدات	kisses	قُبلات
lashes	أسواط/ سياط	matches	أعواد كبريت
glasses	نظارة/ نظارات		

Writing Time

1 Look and answer the questions: (Answered examples):

الجزئية تساعدك على إجابة السؤال السادس داخل الورقة الامتحانية.



A : What can you see?

B : I can see some wildlife.



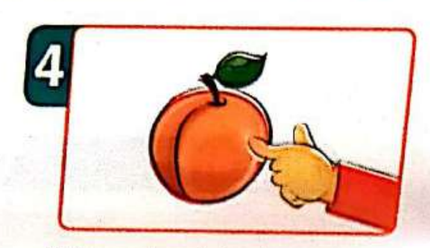
A : Where's the bin?

B : It's under the tree.



A : How many buses are there?

B : There are two buses.



A : What is this?

B : It's a peach.

2 Look and write THREE sentences: (Answered examples):

هذه الجزئية تساعدك على إجابة السؤال السابع داخل الورقة الامتحانية.



a
- They're at the park.
- The boy drops the litter on the ground.
- The ranger tells him to use the bin.



b
- There is some snow.
- There aren't any rivers.
- It's so cold.



c
- There are two witches.
- They are laughing.
- They have pots and cups.



Practise Writing

1 Look and answer the questions:

1

A : Do you like oranges?

B : ....

2




A : Where is she?

B : ....

3



A : Where are they?

B : ....

4



A : What colour is it?

B : ....

2 Look and write THREE sentences:

(مجاب عنه)



a

- ....
- ....
- ....



b

- ....
- ....
- ....



c

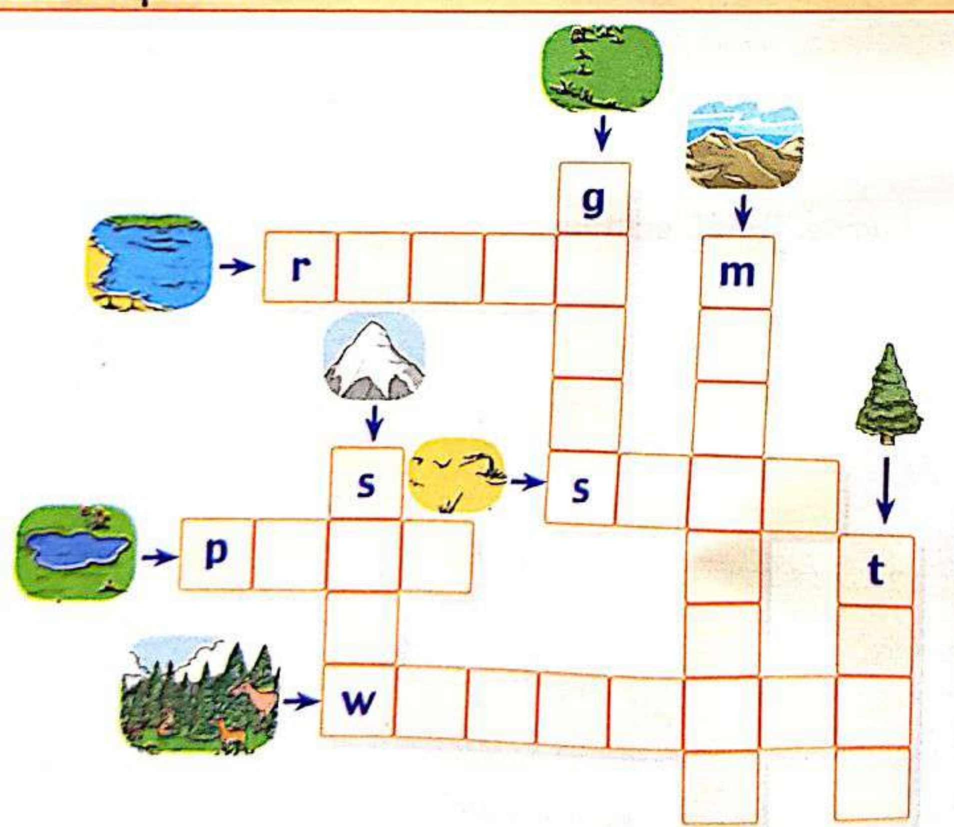
- ....
- ....
- ....

Check Your Vocabulary

Give the meanings in English:

سلة المهملات	....	حشائش	....	شجيرات	....
قمامة	....	حياة برية	....	مقلمات	....
أسفل/ تحت	....	أسواط/ سياط	....	نحل	....
هناك	....	ساندوتشات	....	مفاتيح	....
حديقة عامة	....	شواطئ	....	أنهار	....
ساحرات	....	أوانٍ / حلل	....	أشجار	....
جبال	....	ممرضات	....	حافظات نقود للسيدات	....

Complete the puzzle:





UNIT (8) Test

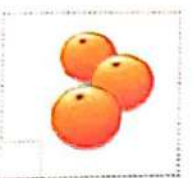
A Listen and match.



للاجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب

1. •	• Hey! Don't do that!
2. •	• Oh! I see it. Thanks.
3. •	• Don't drop litter! Use the bin.
4. •	• It's over there. It's under the tree.
5. •	• What?
6. •	• I'm sorry. Where is it?

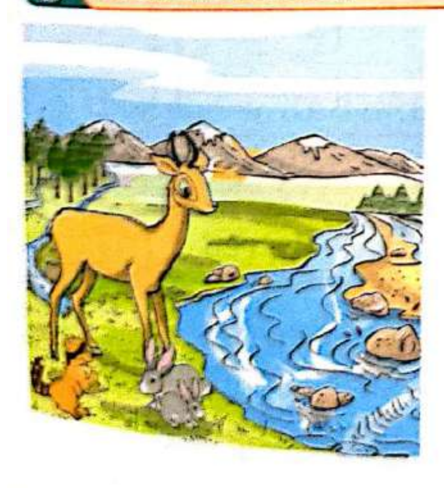
B Does it have final es? Listen and put ✓ or ✗.

1. 
2. 
3. 
4. 
5. 

C Unscramble and write.

1. sarsg ________ 2. eerts ________ 3. nopsd ________
4. irsevr ________ 5. wllfdiie ________ 6. ndas ________

D Look and write.



1. There ______________________ mountains.
There aren't ______________________ rivers.
2. ______________________ grass.
______________________ snow.
3. ______________________ trees.
______________________ sand.
4. ______________________ wildlife.
______________________ ponds.



Unit 8

Unit (8) Test (1)



A. Listening

1 Listen and circle the word with the short vowel:

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب.

a. bus – use b. mine – witch c. pot – do d. egg – bees

2 Listen and complete with one word:

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب.

1. It's .... the tree.
2. This is .... book.
3. Hey! .... do that!
4. You're ....

B. Reading

3 Read and write (True "T" or False "F"):



		True	False
1.	The man is fishing.	(..........)	(..........)
2.	There are four birds in the sky.	(..........)	(..........)
3.	There's a river.	(..........)	(..........)
4.	The man is sitting on a chair.	(..........)	(..........)

4 Read and circle the odd one:

1.	bin	yellow	green	red
2.	watch	climb	music	do
3.	pond	wash	grass	mountain
4.	Where	What	Whose	green

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c:

1. The chair is .... to the tree.
   a) next   b) under   c) on
2. What colour is it? – It's ....
   a) mine   b) green   c) me
3. This is .... wallet.
   a) I   b) mine   c) my
4. .... the bin.
   a) Uses   b) Used   c) Use

C. Writing

6 Look and answer the questions:

1
A : Are these pencil cases?
B : ....

2
A : What are these?
B : ....

3
A : Whose purse is this?
B : ....

4
A : What are you looking for?
B : ....

7 Look and write THREE sentences:

- ....
- ....
- ....

8 Punctuate the following:

- i m sorry. where is it/ ....

Unit (8) Test (2)

Selected from Schools' Examinations



A. Listening

1 Listen and circle the word with the short vowel:

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب.

a. box – home (إدارة القناطر الخيرية 2017)   b. bag – tree (إدارة الحايفة 2017)   c. fox – soap (إدارة وسط 2015)   d. snow – pond (إدارة غرب طنطا 2015)

2 Listen and complete with one word:

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب.

1. There aren't .... rivers. (2015)
2. Let's .... to the park. (2015)
3. Don't .... litter! (2007)
4. Whose wallet is .... ? (2017)

B. Reading

3 Read and write (True "T" or False "F"):

إدارة غرب المحلة 2015



		True	False
1.	The girl is in the kitchen.	[..................]	[..................]
2.	The girl is drinking.	[..................]	[..................]
3.	The man is fishing.	[..................]	[..................]
4.	There are some trees.	[..................]	[..................]

4 Read and circle the odd one:

1.	eggs	peaches	cups	oranges	إدارة رشيد 2017
2.	wildlife	trees	mountains	cinema	إدارة السنبلاوين 2017
3.	Whose	What	mine	Where	إدارة المنتزه 2017
4.	yellow	witch	green	blue	إدارة عين شمس 2017

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c:

1. .... is the bin ? - It's under the tree. إدارة أشمون 2017
   a) What b) Where c) When
2. .... colour is it? إدارة عين شمس 2017
   a) What b) When c) Where
3. There aren't .... rivers. إدارة شبرا الخيمة 2017
   a) a b) some c) any
4. I .... sorry. Where is the bin? إدارة فارسكور 2017
   a) am b) is c) are

C. Writing

6 Look and answer the questions:

1

A : What are these?
B : ....
إدارة قليوب 2017

2

A : What is this?
B : ....
إدارة دار السلام 2017

3

A : Where do you put litter?
B : ....
إدارة حدائق القبة 2017

4

A : How many cups can you see?
B : ....
إدارة أشمون 2017

7 Look and write THREE sentences:

- ....
- ....
- ....

إدارة اللبن 2017

8 Punctuate the following:

- nada and soha don t want eggs/ .... إدارة منفلوط 2017

Unit 9

In the Kitchen
فى المطبخ



Unit Objectives:

أهداف الوحدة:

Conversation Time:

- Make offers.
  - تقديم العروض.
- Accept/reject offers.
  - قبول / رفض العروض.
- Identify speakers in a conversation.
  - التعرف إلى المتحدثين فى محادثة.

Word Time:

- Write short sentences.
  - كتابة جمل قصيرة.
- Read short sentences.
  - قراءة جمل قصيرة.
- Learn vocabulary: Food items.
  - تعلم المفردات اللغوية: عناصر الطعام.

Practice Time:

- Ask about availability.
  - السؤال عن مدى إتاحة الشىء.
  - Is/Are there any.........?
  - Yes/No ....

Phonics Time:

- Distinguish between sounds of (br, gr, pr).
  - التمييز بين أصوات "br, gr, pr".
- Associate sound of letters with written form.
  - الربط بين أصوات الحروف وطريقة كتابتها.

Lesson 1

Conversation Time

SB/ WB: P. (9)



Vocabulary المفردات اللغوية

kitchen	مطبخ	too	أيضًا	let's	هيا بنا......
snack	وجبة خفيفة	chocolate chip cookie	رقاقة بسكويت بالشيكولاتة	thanks	شكرًا
strawberry ice cream	آيس كريم فراولة	litter	قمامة	bin	سلة المهملات
cereal (WB)	طعام من الحبوب (يضاف له لبن)	vegetables (WB)	خضراوات		

Adjectives الصفات

sorry	آسف

Opposites المتضادات

hungry (adj.)	جوعان	full up (adj.)	شبعان
good (adj.)	جيد	bad (adj.)	سيء

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
want	يريد	wanted	like	يحب	liked
drop	يسقط / يلقي	dropped	use	يستخدم	used

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
have	يملك/ يتناول	had	eat (WB)	يأكل	ate

Expressions and phrases تعبيرات وعبارات

Me, too.	وأنا، أيضًا.	What about...?	ماذا عن/ ما رأيك في ......؟
That sounds good.	ذلك يبدو جيدًا.		



Characters of the conversation
شخصيات المحادثة



Kareem



Mona

Story of the conversation
قصة المحادثة

- Kareem and Mona are in the kitchen. They are hungry. They want to have a snack. Kareem doesn't like chocolate chip cookies, so they are going to have strawberry ice cream.

ريم ومنى فى المطبخ. هما جائعان . هما يريدان أن يتناولا وجبة خفيفة. كريم لا يحب رقائق البسكويت بالشيكولاتة ذلك سوف يتناولا آيس كريم فراولة.

A Listen and repeat.
استمع وردد.







B Listen and point to the speakers.
استمع وأشر إلى المتحدثين.

C Role-play the conversation with a partner.
تبادل الأدوار للمحادثة مع زميل.





Language Functions

1 Expressing feelings: التعبير عن المشاعر:

Subject (الفاعل) + v. to be (am/is/are) + adj. (صفة)

e.g.
A : I'm hungry. — أنا جوعان.
B : Me, too. — وأنا ،أيضًا.

2 Suggestion: الاقتراح:

Let's + (inf.) هيا بنا..... .... مصدر الفعل

e.g.
• Let's have a snack. — هيا بنا نتناول وجبة خفيفة.

What about + noun (اسم) / (inf.) + ing....? ماذا عن...؟

e.g.
A : What about some strawberry ice cream? — ماذا عن بعض من آيس كريم الفراولة؟
B : Mm! That sounds good. — مم! ذلك يبدو جيدًا.

Note

• لاحظ استخدام "some" في السؤال بغرض «العرض/ الاقتراح».

3 Offering: العرض:

Do you want ....? هل تريد ....؟

e.g.
A : Do you want a chocolate chip cookie? — هل تريد رقاقة بسكويت بالشيكولاتة؟
B : No, I don't like cookies. — لا،أنا لا أحب رقائق البسكويت.

4 Giving instructions (imperative): إعطاء التعليمات (الأمر):

• لإعطاء التعليمات بفعل شيء ما نبدأ الجملة بمصدر الفعل:

(Inf.) مصدر الفعل ....

e.g.
• Use the bin. — استخدم سلة المهملات.

• لإعطاء التعليمات بعدم فعل شيء ما:

Don't + (inf.) مصدر الفعل ....

e.g.
• Don't do that! — لا تفعل ذلك!
• Don't drop litter! — لا تلق (ترمي) القمامة!



Check-point

Listen and complete with one word:



1. I don't like ....
2. .... have a snack.
3. What about .... sandwiches?
4. I .... hungry.



1 Review. Listen and repeat. راجع، استمع وردد.



Hey! Don't do that!



What?



Don't drop litter. Use the bin.



Okay. Sorry.



Let's say it right

- لاحظ أن [tch] في [kitchen] ينطقون / tʃ / (تش).
- لاحظ أن حرفي [ck] في [snack] ينطقان / k /(ك).
- لاحظ أن حرفي [ch] في كل من [chocolate /chip] ينطقان /tʃ/(تش).
- لاحظ أن حرف [c] في كل من [cookie/chocolate / ice cream] ينطق /k/(ك).



A Number the sentences in the correct order.



_______ No, thanks. I don't like cookies.
_______ Mm! That sounds good.
_______ Do you want a chocolate chip cookie?
_______ What about some strawberry ice cream?
_______ I'm hungry.
_______ Me, too. Let's have a snack.

B Look and write.

1. 

He wants cookies.
He doesn't want
cereal.

2. 

____
____
____

3. 

____
____
____

4. 

____
____
____

C Your turn. Read and write.

When do you have a snack?

____
____
____



What do you eat?

____
____
____

Unit 9

Conversation Time

Exercise

1 Listen and complete with one word:

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب

1. I have some strawberry ....
2. What .... some cookies?
3. That sounds ....
4. She doesn't want ....

2 Read and write (True"T" or False"F"):



		True	False
1.	There are four people.	[..........]	[..........]
2.	The boy doesn't like cookies.	[..........]	[..........]
3.	They are in the kitchen.	[..........]	[..........]
4.	The girl is playing the piano.	[..........]	[..........]

3 Read and circle the odd one:

1.	cookie	fish	ice cream	water
2.	cereal	do	cake	vegetables
3.	cold	snack	hot	hungry
4.	three	five	too	fifteen

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c:

1. I .... hungry.

a) am b) are c) is

2. Let's .... a snack.

a) has b) have c) having

3. .... you want a chocolate chip cookie?

a) Have b) Are c) Do

4. What .... some strawberry ice cream?

a) of b) in c) about

5 Look and write THREE sentences:

- ....
- ....
- ....

6 Punctuate the following:

- i m hungry, omar/

....

For more exercises لمزيد من التدريبات

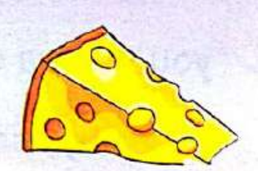
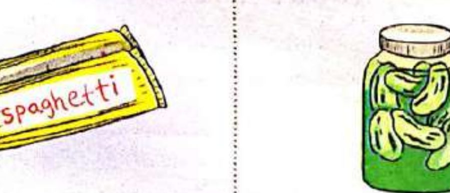
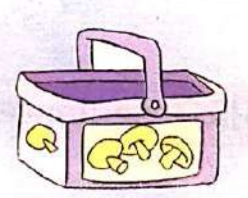


SB/ WB: P. (



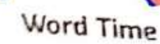
Vocabulary المفردات اللغوية

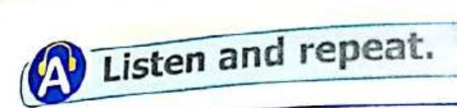
Food items: عناصر الطعام:

 salt ملح	 pepper فـلـفـل	 cheese جبنة / جبن	 hot sauce صلصة حارة
  spaghetti مكرونة إسباجتى	 pickles مخلل	 mushrooms فطر (عش الغراب)	 carrots جــزر

Other words كلمات أخرى

salad	سلطة	mess	ى
soup (WB)	حساء (شوربة)	butter (WB)	ة





A Listen and repeat.

استمع وردد.

1. salt	2. pepper	3. cheese	4. hot sauce
5. spaghetti	6. pickles	7. mushrooms	8. carrots

B Point and say the words.

أشر إلى الكلمات وانطقها.





Read and circle the odd one:

1.	cheese	spaghetti	butter	bag
2.	salt	pepper	mess	hot sauce
3.	pickles	apple	carrots	mushrooms
4.	hot sauce	perfume	butter	salad



Listen and point. استمع وأشر.



Now, listen and point to the speakers. الآن، استمع وأشر إلى المتحدثين.

A Where's the cheese?

B It's next to the salad.

A Oh, there it is.



- There's some pepper. There isn't any salt.



- What a mess!



Note

"There is /There are....." with countable and uncountable nouns"

"يوجد...... " مع الأسماء المعدودة وغير المعدودة:

Affirmative: **الإثبات:**

There	is ('s)	some	.اسم مفرد (غير معدود)
	are ('re)		.اسم جمع (معدود)

e.g. There's some pepper. - There are some mushrooms.

Negative: **النفى:**

There	isn't	any	.اسم مفرد (غير معدود)
	aren't		.اسم جمع (معدود)

e.g. There isn't any salt. - There aren't any pickles.



Listen and complete with one word:



للإجابة، راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب.

1. .... is the cheese? إدارة شرق 2016
2. There's .... pepper. إدارة غرب الفيوم 2017
3. It's .... to the salad. إدارة ببا 2017
4. There isn't .... salt.

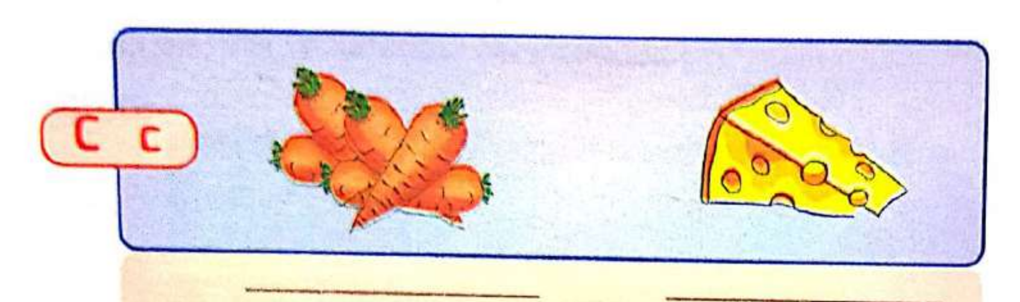
D Write the words. (See pages 33 - 34)

اكتب الكلمات.

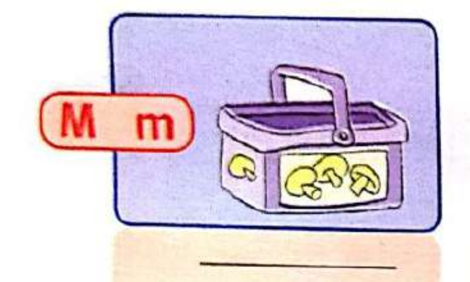
ارجع إلى الصفحات (33 - 34) بالكتاب المدرسي.


H h

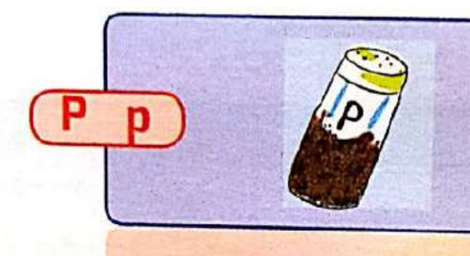
______


C c

______ ______

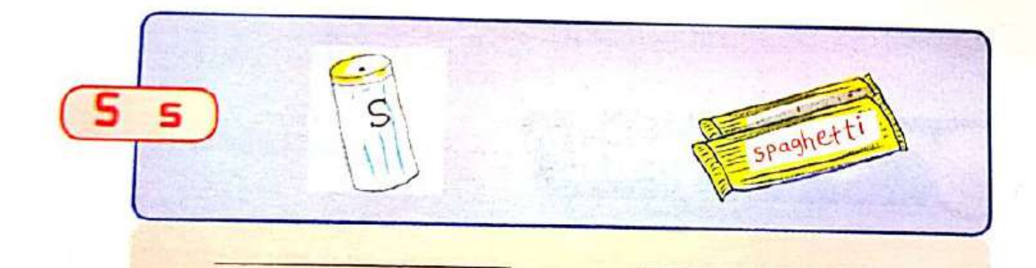

M m

______




P p

______ ______



S s

______ ______



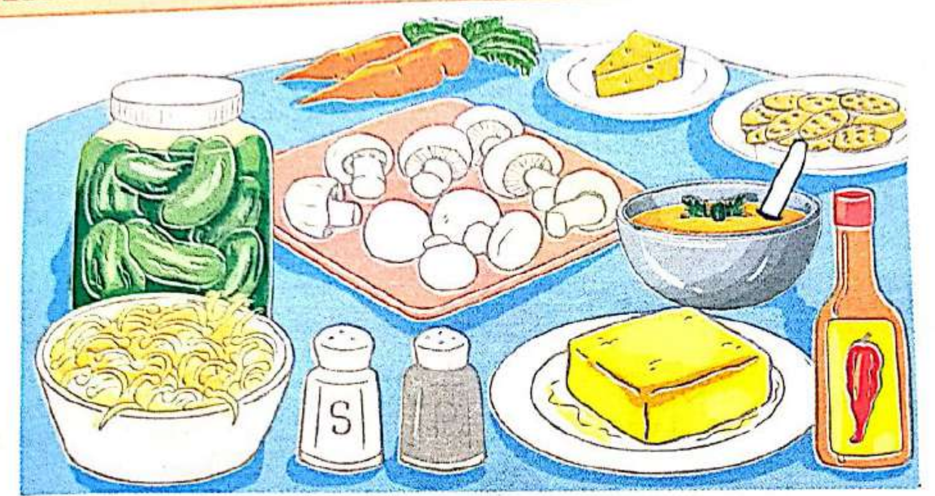
Let's say it right

- لاحظ أن حرف (h) فى (spaghetti) "silent" لا ينطق.
- لاحظ أن حرف (s) فى (cheese) ينطق/ z/ (ز).
- لاحظ أن حرف (c) دائمًا ما ينطق /s/ (س) إذا أتى بعده (e-i-y) كما فى (sauce-cinema-bicycle).



Word Time

A Look and write.



pickles
soup
spaghetti
salt
mushrooms
cheese
pepper
hot sauce
cookies
carrots
butter

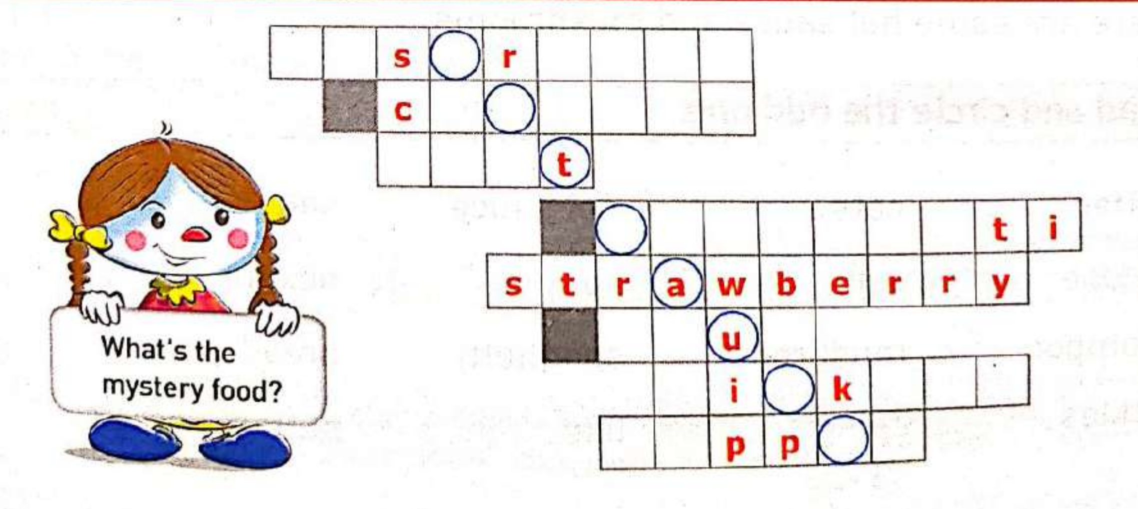
There's some ... There are some ...

______ ______ ______

______ ______ ______

______ ______ ______

B Look at A. Fill in the puzzle.



Word Time

Exercise

1 Listen and complete with one word:

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب

1. There .... some pickles.
2. What a .... !
3. There isn't any ....
4. Where's the .... ?

2 Read and write (True"T" or False"F"):



		True	False
1.	They are in the kitchen.	[..........]	[..........]
2.	The man is eating spaghetti.	[..........]	[..........]
3.	The woman is baking cookies.	[..........]	[..........]
4.	There are some hot sauce and mushrooms.	[..........]	[..........]

3 Read and circle the odd one:

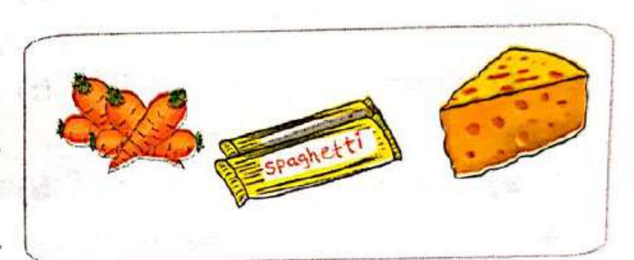
1.	butter	cats	hot sauce	salt
2.	cheese	salt	pepper	next to
3.	shampoo	mushroom	spaghetti	bread
4.	pickles	carrots	like	butter

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c:

1. Where .... the butter?
   a) are b) am c) is
2. There is .... pepper.
   a) a b) any c) some
3. It's next .... the salad.
   a) too b) two c) to
4. There .... some carrots.
   a) is b) am c) are

5 Look and write THREE sentences:

إدارة سيدى سالم 2015



- ....
- ....
- ....

6 Punctuate the following:

- let s go to the cinema on friday/ ....

إدارة سمنود 2017

For more exercises لمزيد من التدريبات

Cumulative Exercise (Lessons 1& 2)

1 Listen and circle the word with the short vowel:

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب.

a. litter - like b. snack - salt c. cheese – pepper d. hot – soup

2 Read and circle the odd one:

1.	next to	in	under	salt
2.	hungry	thirsty	drop	good
3.	Where	that	When	What
4.	pickles	soup	butter	hot sauce

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c:

1. Don't .... litter.
   a) drops b) dropped c) drop
2. .... are the carrots? -They're next to the pickles.
   a) What b) Where c) When
3. .... the bin.
   a) Use b) Using c) Uses
4. .... have some chocolate chip cookies.
   a) Let b) Let's c) Lots

4 Look and answer the questions:

1. A : Do you like spaghetti?
   B : ....
2. A : Are there any carrots?
   B : ....
3. A : What is it?
   B : ....
4. A : Are they cakes?
   B : ....



SB/ WB: P. (11)

A Listen and repeat.

استمع وردد.

Is there any salt?	• Yes, there is. • No, there isn't.
Are there any pickles?	• Yes, there are. • No, there aren't.

STRUCTURE

Asking about the availability of something using "Is/Are there any........?":

السؤال عن مدى إتاحة (توافر) شيء ما باستخدام "هل يوجد أى ....؟"

• للسؤال بـ "هل" عن مدى إتاحة (توافر) شيء مفرد غير معدود (طعام) مثل:

pepper	salt	cheese	spaghetti	hot sauce

Is there any + اسم مفرد (غير معدود) ?

e.g. **A :** Is there any salt?

للإجابة بالإثبات	للإجابة بالنفى
B : Yes, there is.	**B :** No, there isn't.

• للسؤال بـ "هل" عن مدى إتاحة (توافر) أشياء جمع معدودة (أطعمة) مثل:

carrots	pickles	mushrooms

Are there any + اسم جمع (معدود) ?

e.g. **A :** Are there any pickles?

للإجابة بالإثبات	للإجابة بالنفى
B : Yes, there are.	**B :** No, there aren't.

Notes

لاحظ استخدام "some" فى الجمل الخبرية المثبتة:

e.g.
- There is **some** hot sauce.
- There are **some** mushrooms.

لاحظ استخدام "any" فى السؤال و النفي:

e.g.

A : Is there **any** pepper?
B : No, there isn't **any** pepper.

A : Are there **any** carrots?
B : No, there aren't **any** carrots.



Choose the correct answer from a, b or c:

1. Are there any .... ?
   - a) salt
   - b) pepper
   - c) pickles

   السلاوين 2017

2. There .... any mushrooms.
   - a) are
   - b) aren't
   - c) isn't

   كوم حمادة 2016

3. .... there any butter?
   - a) Are
   - b) Is
   - c) Am

   بنى مزار 2015

4. There isn't .... hot sauce.
   - a) any
   - b) not
   - c) some

   زفتى 2017

B Listen and repeat. Then practise with a partner.

استمع وردد، ثم تدرب مع زميل.



1. Is there any pepper?
   Yes, there is.



2. Are there any pickles?
   Yes, there are.



3. Are there any carrots?
   No, there aren't.



4. Is there any cheese?
   Yes, there is.



5. Is there any hot sauce?
   No, there isn't.







6 Is there any spaghetti?

Yes, there is.



7 Is there any salt?

No, there isn't.



8 Are there any mushrooms?

No, there aren't.

C Look at page 10. Look at the picture and practise with a partner:

انظر صفحة 10 بالكتاب المدرسى. انظر إلى الصورة وتدرب مع زميل كما فى المثال الآتى:

e.g.

S_1: Is there any salt?

S_2: No, there isn't.







6 Listen and sing along.

Is There Any Pepper?

Is there any pepper?
Yes, there is.
Yes, there is.
Yes, there is.



Are there any pickles?
No, there aren't.
There aren't any pickles here.
Oh, no!

Is there any hot sauce?
Yes, there is.
Yes, there is.
Yes, there is.



Are there any carrots?
No, there aren't.
There aren't any carrots here.
Oh, no!

Is there any cheese?
Yes, there is.
Yes, there is.
Yes, there is.

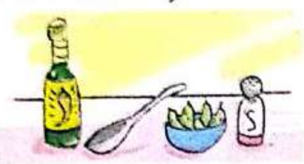


Are there any mushrooms?
No, there aren't.
There aren't any mushrooms here.
Oh, no!

Workbook
Practice Time

A Read and put ✓.

1. Is there any cheese?



☐ Yes, there is.
☐ No, there isn't.

2. Are there any pickles?



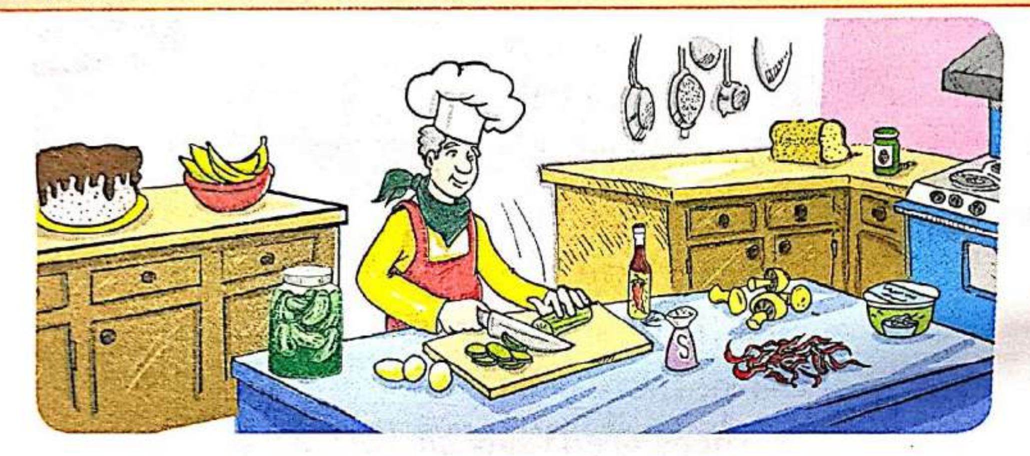
☐ Yes, there are.
☐ No, there aren't.

3. Is there any salt?

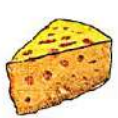


☐ Yes, there is.
☐ No, there isn't.

B Look and write.



1.  Are there ____________________
____________________?
____

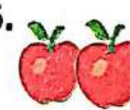
2.  ____________________
____
____

3.  ____________________
____
____

4. 

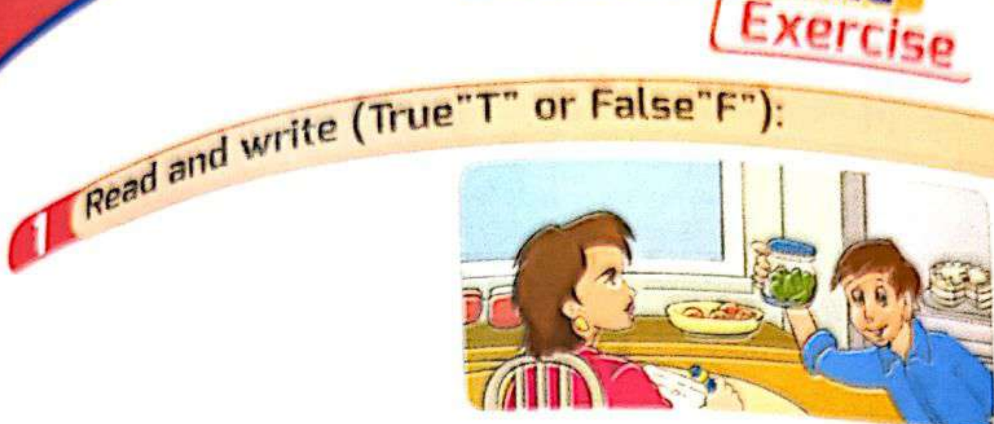
____
____
____

5.  ____________________
____
____

6.  ____________________
____
____



Practice Time
Exercise



1 Read and write (True"T" or False"F"):

		True	False
1.	There are some pickles.	[..........]	[..........]
2.	There is some cheese.	[..........]	[..........]
3.	There is a cake.	[..........]	[..........]
4.	There are some carrots.	[..........]	[..........]

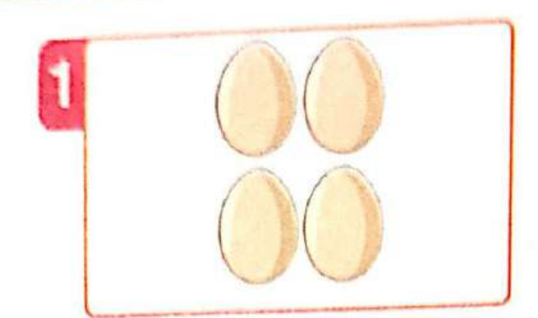
2 Read and circle the odd one:

1.	carrots	mushrooms	salt	pickles
2.	bus	cheese	egg	spaghetti
3.	pepper	cat	hot sauce	salt
4.	salt	cheese	butter	juice

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c:

1. .... there any cheese?
   a) Are   b) Is   c) Do
2. Is there .... sugar?
   a) any   b) many   c) some
3. Are there .... pickles?
   a) some   b) much   c) any
4. There .... some mushrooms.
   a) are   b) is   c) isn't

4 Look and answer the questions:



A : How many eggs are there?



B : ....

إدارة شرق شبرا 2015

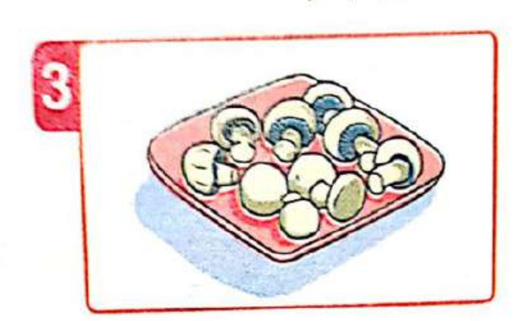


A : Is there any salt?

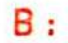


B : ....

إدارة وسط 2016



A : Are there any mushrooms?



B : ....

إدارة ديرب نجم 2017

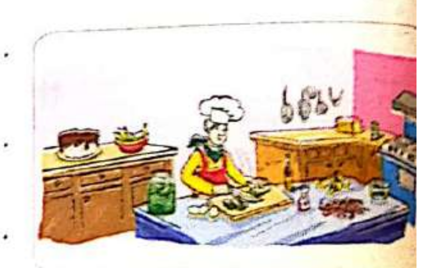


A : Is it a kitchen?

B : ....

إدارة البداري 2015

5 Look and write THREE sentences:



- ....
- ....
- ....

6 Punctuate the following:

- mona and kareem don t like pickles/ ....

إدارة شبراخيت 2015



For more exercises لمزيد من التدريبات

Cumulative Exercise

(Lessons 1 → 3

1 Listen and circle the word with the short vowel:

للاجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب.

a. salt - drop   b. butter - soup   c. sauce - pickles   d. chip - cheese

2 Listen and complete with one word:

للاجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب.

1. .... good.
2. What about .... cookies?
3. Hey! Don't do .... !
4. Don't drop ....

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c:

1. What about .... strawberry ice cream?
   a) some   b) any   c) much
2. Where .... the butter?
   a) are   b) am   c) is
3. Are there any pickles? -Yes there.................. .
   a) is   b) are   c) aren't
4. Are .... any mushrooms?
   a) they   b) their   c) there

4 Look and answer the questions:

1. A : Where is the bin?
   B : ....
2. A : Where are they?
   B : ....
3. A : What is it?
   B : ....
4. A : Do you like cheese?
   B : ....



SB/ WB: P. (12)

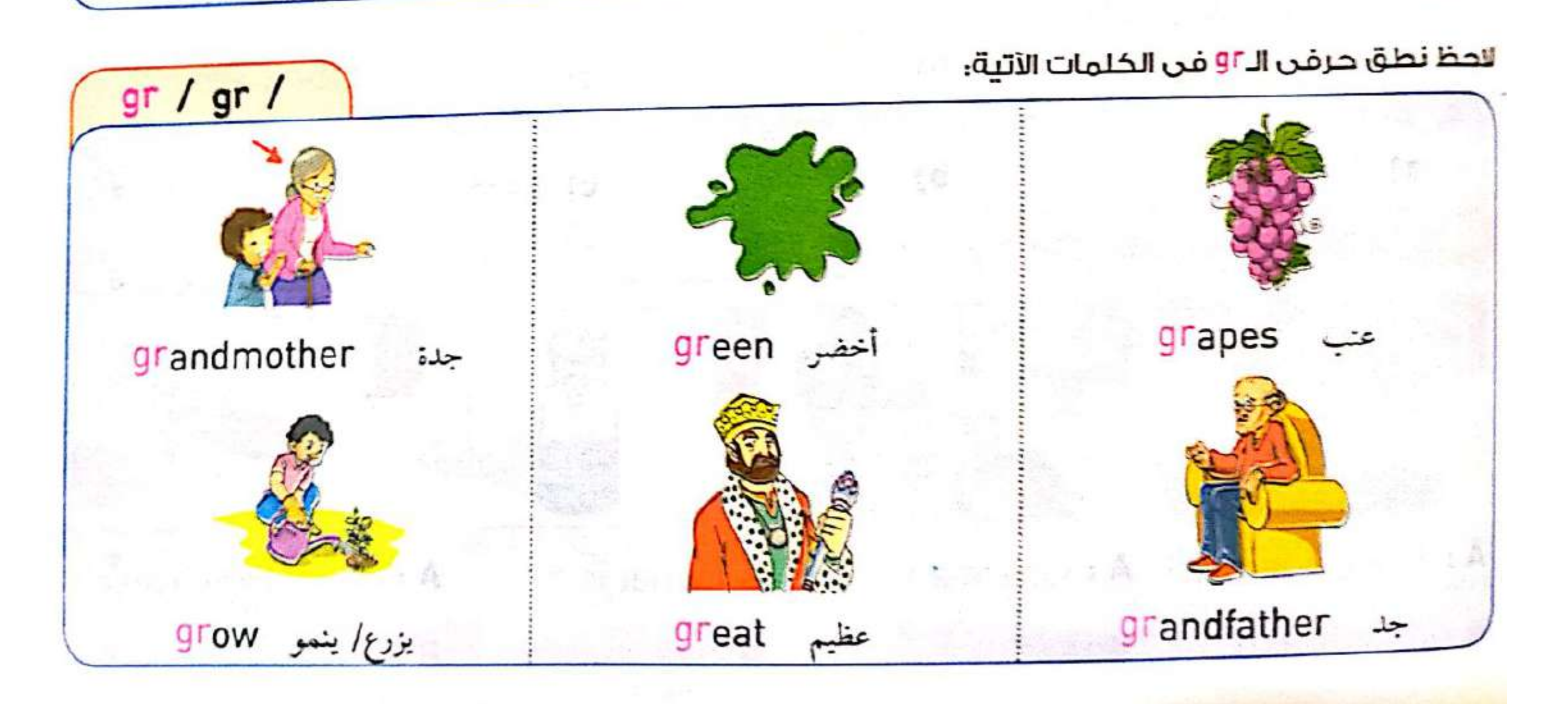
Vocabulary المفردات اللغوية



لاحظ نطق حرفى الـ br فى الكلمات الآتية:

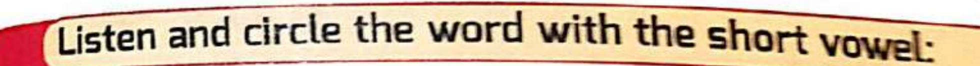


لاحظ نطق حرفى الـ gr فى الكلمات الآتية:









Listen and circle the word with the short vowel:



للحصول على نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب



a. bread - broom

إدارة أبو النمرس 2017



b. plum - prize

إدارة السويس 2016

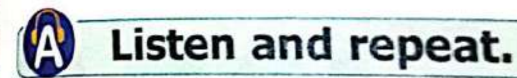


c. prune - brick

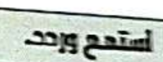
إدارة أبو كبير 2015



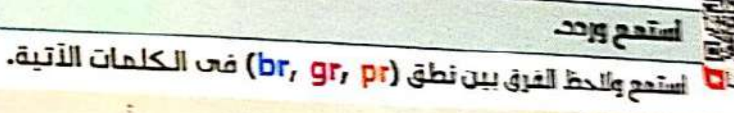
d. mother - grow



A Listen and repeat.



استمع وردد



استمع ولاحظ الفرق بين نطق (br, gr, pr) فى الكلمات الآتية.





bread



brown



grandmother



green

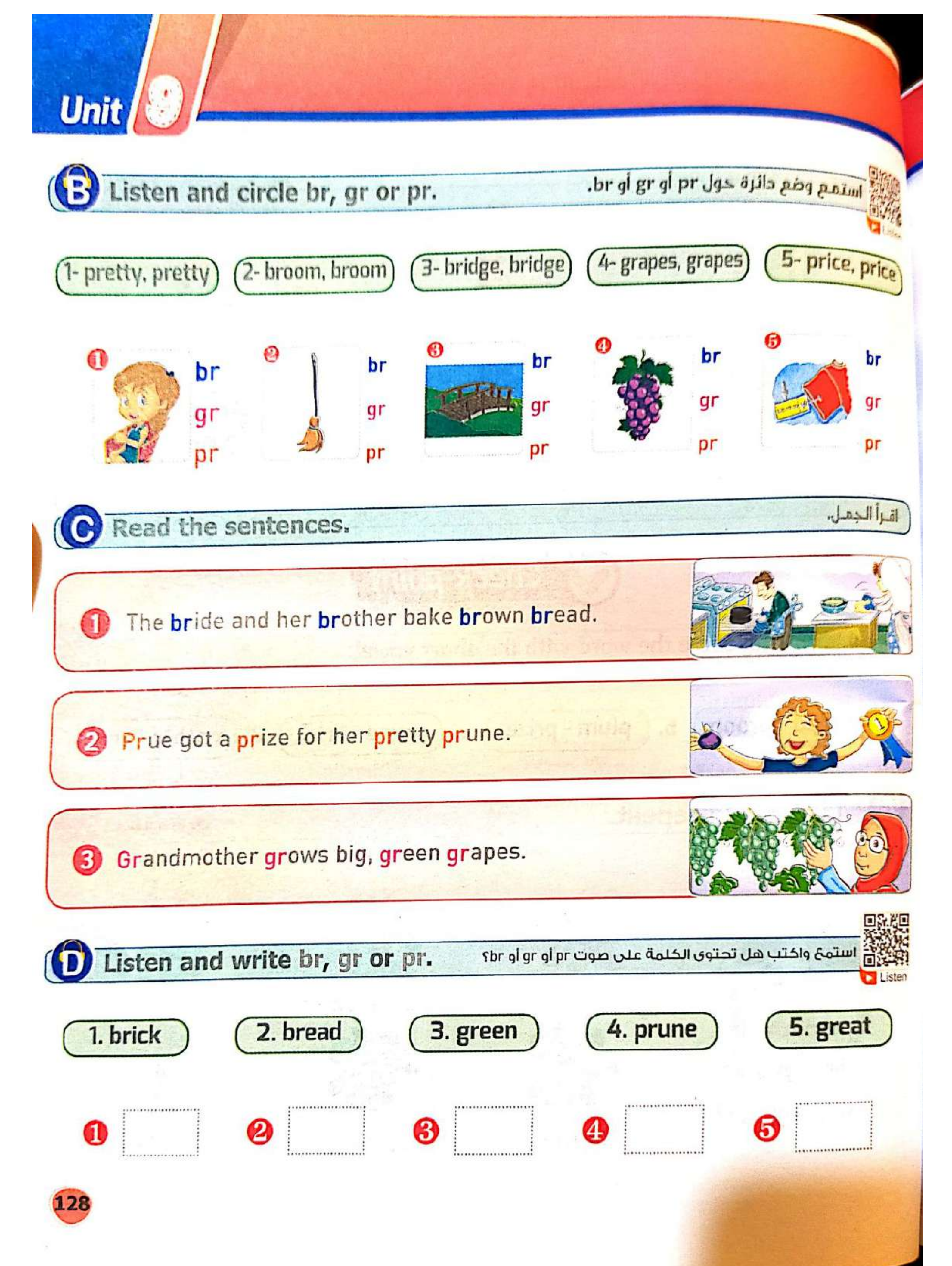


present



prize





B Listen and circle br, gr or pr.

استمع وضع دائرة حول pr أو gr أو br.

1- pretty, pretty | 2- broom, broom | 3- bridge, bridge | 4- grapes, grapes | 5- price, price

1. br gr pr
2. br gr pr
3. br gr pr
4. br gr pr
5. br gr pr

C Read the sentences.

اقرأ الجمل.

1. The bride and her brother bake brown bread.
2. Prue got a prize for her pretty prune.
3. Grandmother grows big, green grapes.

D Listen and write br, gr or pr.

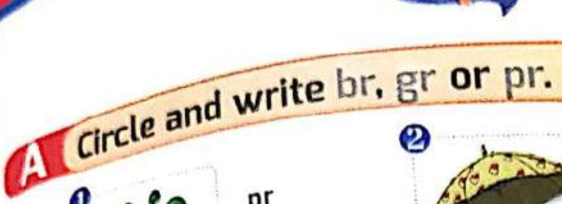
استمع واكتب هل تحتوى الكلمة على صوت pr أو gr أو br؟

Listen

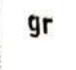
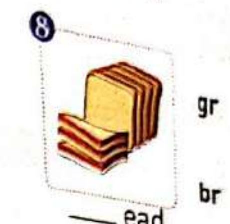
1. brick | 2. bread | 3. green | 4. prune | 5. great

1. ______
2. ______
3. ______
4. ______
5. ______





A Circle and write br, gr or pr.

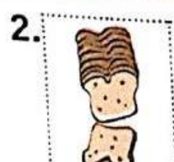
1.   pr gr ___ een
2.  br gr um___ ella
3.   gr br ___ apes
4.  br pr ___ own
5.   gr pr ___ etty
6.  pr br ___ ize
7.   pr gr ___ esent
8.  gr br ___ ead

B Look, read and match.

1. 
2. 
3. 
4. 

- Sally gives her grandmother a present.
- I have a green umbrella.
- My grandfather has a prune and a grape.
- I eat brown bread at night.

C Do they both have the same consonant blend? Put ✓ or ✗.

1. 
2.  
3.  
4. 

Unit 9

Phonics Time
Exercise

1 Listen and circle the word with the short vowel:

للإجابة، راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب.

a. bread – prize
إدارة منشأة القناطر 2014

b. bride - bridge
إدارة الوايلي 2014

c. box – broom

d. prune – plum
إدارة بني مزار 2015

2 Listen and complete with one word:

للإجابة، راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب.

1. It is ....
2. Is there any .... ?
3. She is ....
4. My grandmother likes ....

3 Read and write (True "T" or False "F"):

إدارة الواسطى 2016

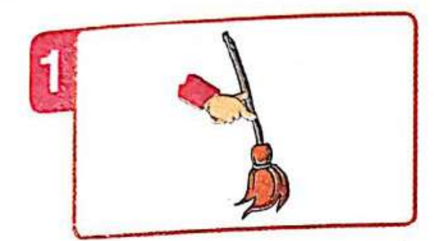


	True	False
1. They are three girls.	(..................)	(..................)
2. They are at school.	(..................)	(..................)
3. They are in the kitchen.	(..................)	(..................)
4. They are baking bread.	(..................)	(..................)

4 Read and circle the odd one:

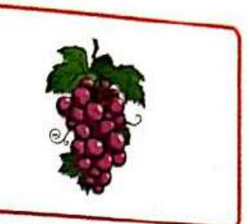
1.	father	mother	sister	bread	
2.	green	grapes	brown	black	إدارة المنتزه 2015
3.	bridge	grandmother	brother	grandfather	إدارة شرق 2015
4.	bus	prize	car	train	إدارة بلبيس 2014

5 Look and answer the questions:



A : What is this?

B : ....



A : Do you like grapes?

B : ....



A : Is it bread?

B : ....



A : How much is it?

B : ....

6 Look and write THREE sentences:

إدارة ساقلتة 2017

- ....
- ....
- ....

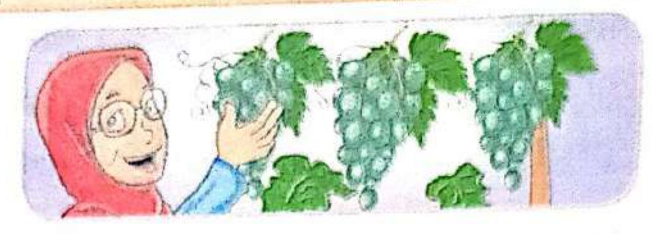


For more exercises لمزيد من التدريبات



Cumulative Exercise
(Lessons 1 → 4

1 Read and write (True "T" or False "F"):



	True	False
1. There are some grapes and bananas.	[..........]	[..........]
2. The grapes are green.	[..........]	[..........]
3. This is my grandmother.	[..........]	[..........]
4. She doesn't like grapes.	[..........]	[..........]

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c:

1. .... there any mushrooms?
   a) Is b) Was c) Are
2. My grandmother .... big green apples.
   a) grows b) rides c) helps
3. The bride and her brother are .... bread.
   a) helping b) baking c) doing
4. Are there .... carrots?
   a) an b) some c) any

3 Look and write THREE sentences:

- ....
- ....
- ....



4 Punctuate the following:

- do you like cheese noha/ ....



Unit 9 Revision

Conversation Time

Kareem : I'm hungry.

- أنا جوعان.

Mona : Me, too. Let's have a snack. Do you want a chocolate chip cookie?

- وأنا، أيضًا. هيا بنا نتناول وجبة خفيفة. هل تريد رقاقة بسكويت بالشيكولاتة؟

Kareem : No, thanks. I don't like cookies.

- لا، شكرًا. أنا لا أحب رقائق البسكويت.

Mona : What about some strawberry ice cream?

- ماذا عن بعض من آيس كريم الفراولة؟

Kareem : Mm! That sounds good.

- مم! ذلك يبدو جيدًا.

Word Time

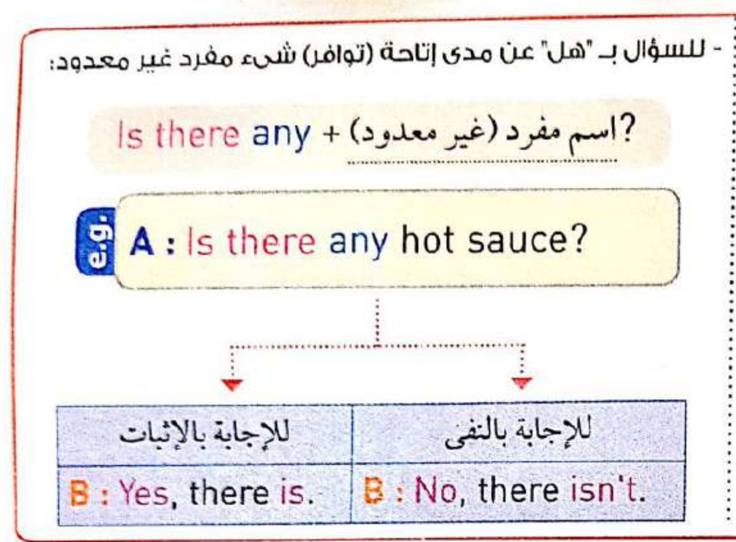
salt	ملح	pepper	فلفل
cheese	جبنة/ جبن	hot sauce	صلصة حارة
spaghetti	مكرونة إسباجتي	pickles	مخلل
mushrooms	فطر (عش الغراب)	carrots	جزر

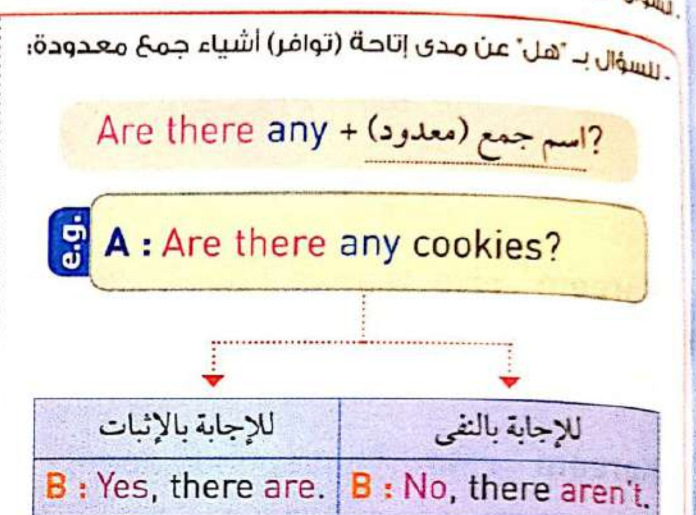


Practice Time

Asking about the availability of something using "Is/Are there any........?":

- للسؤال عن مدى إتاحة (توافر) شيء ما بإستخدام "هل يوجد أي.......؟"





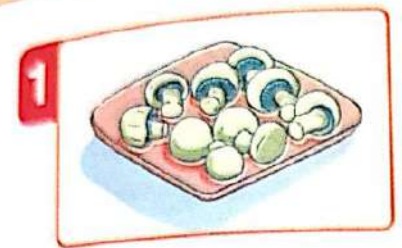
Phonics Time

br/br/		gr/gr/		pr/pr/	
bread	خبز	grandmother	جدة	present	هدية
brown	بنى	green	أخضر	prize	جائزة
broom	مقشة	grapes	عنب	pretty	جميلة
bridge	كوبرى	grow	يزرع/ ينمو	price	سعر/ ثمن
bride	عروسة	great	عظيم	Prue	برو (اسم بنت)
brother	أخ	grandfather	جد	prune	برقوق/ خوخ مجفف
brick	قالب طوب				
umbrella	شمسية				

Writing Time

1 Look and answer the questions: (Answered examples):

هذه الجزئية تساعدك على إجابة السؤال السادس داخل الورقة الامتحانية



A : Are there any mushrooms?

B : Yes, there are.



A : What are these?

B : They are carrots.



A : Is she sad?

B : No, she isn't.



A : What is he doing?

B : He is feeding the pet.

2 Look and write THREE sentences: (Answered examples):

هذه الجزئية تساعدك على إجابة السؤال السابع داخل الورقة الامتحانية.

a
- Kareem and Mona are in the kitchen.
- They're hungry.
- They want to have a snack.



b
- This is my grandmother.
- She's growing big, green grapes.
- She likes eating grapes.



c
- The chef is in the kitchen.
- There are some pickles and mushrooms.
- There isn't any cheese.



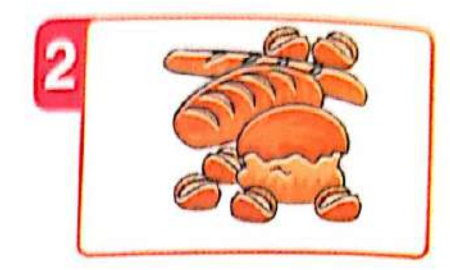
Practise Writing

1 Look and answer the questions:



A : What are these?

B : ....



A : Do you want bread?

B : ....



A : Is there any salt?

B : ....



A : What can you see?

B : ....

2 Look and write THREE sentences:

(مجاب عنه)

a
- ....
- ....
- ....



b
- ....
- ....
- ....



c
- ....
- ....
- ....

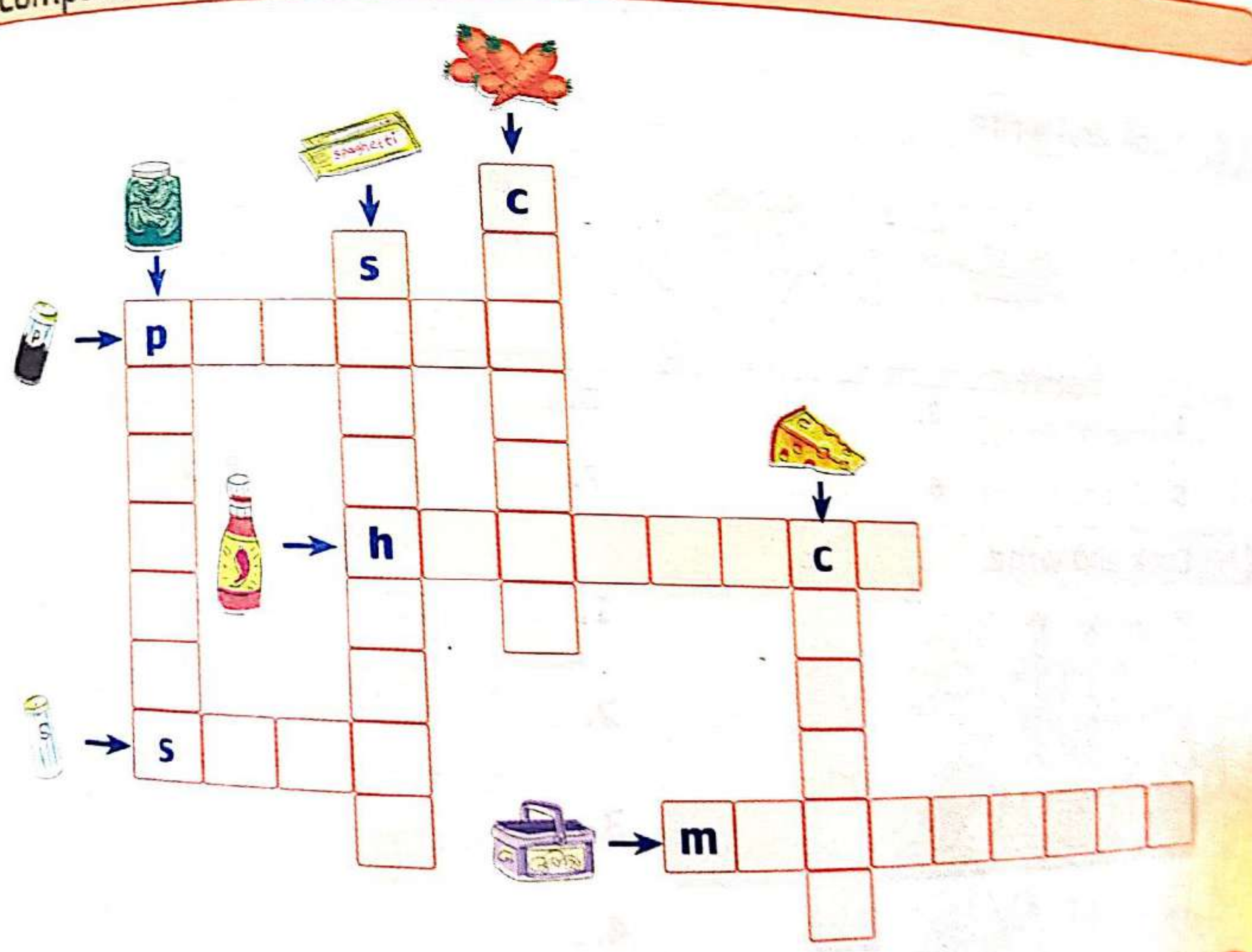


Check Your Vocabulary

Give the meanings in English:

....	جزر	....	جوعان	....	مطبخ
....	مكرونة إسباجتي	....	وجبة خفيفة	....	مقشة
....	شبعان	....	شوربة	....	خبز
....	عروسة	....	عنب	....	صلصة حارة
....	سعر / ثمن	....	عظيم	....	جبنة/ جبن
....	هدية	....	كوبري	....	مخلل
....	ملح	....	شمسية	....	فلفل

Complete the puzzle.





UNIT (9) Test

A Listen and match.

للإجابة، راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب.

1. I'm •
2. Me, too. Let's •
3. Do you want •
4. No, thanks. I •
5. What about •
6. Mm! That •

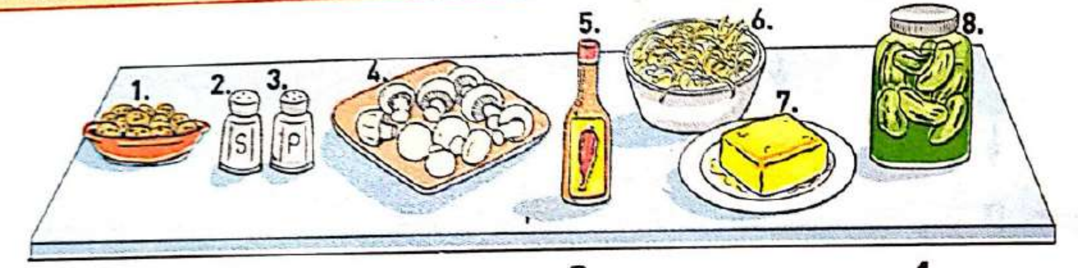
- • a chocolate chip cookie?
- • don't like cookies.
- • some strawberry ice cream?
- • hungry.
- • sounds good.
- • have a snack.

B Does it have br, gr or pr? Listen and write.

للإجابة، راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب.

1. __ead 2. __apes 3. __esent 4. __ize 5. __andmother

C Look and write.



1. ________ 2. ________ 3. ________ 4. ________

5. ________ 6. ________ 7. ________ 8. ________

D Look and write.



1. ________________ hot sauce?
____
2. ________________ pickles?
____
3. ________________ cheese?
____
4. ________________ mushrooms?
____



Unit (9) Test (1)

A. Listening

1 Listen and circle the word with the short vowel:



للإجابة، راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب.

a. grapes – caps b. salt – salad c. carrot – great d. soup – pepper

2 Listen and complete with one word:

للإجابة، راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب.

1. She got a .... for her pretty prune.
2. What a .... !
3. Ali is my ....
4. I .... some ice cream.



B. Reading

3 Read and write (True "T" or False "F"):



		True	False
1.	There's some bread.	(..........)	(..........)
2.	There is a cake in the fridge.	(..........)	(..........)
3.	The man is at school.	(..........)	(..........)
4.	There are some pickles.	(..........)	(..........)

4 Read and circle the odd one:

1.	pickles	carrots	mushrooms	cheese
2.	cheese	prune	prize	bread
3.	broom	have	like	want
4.	What	were	When	Where

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c:

1. It's .... to the pepper.
   a) next   b) in front   c) behind
2. There's .... salt.
   a) any   b) some   c) a
3. The bride .... brown bread.
   a) bakes   b) grows   c) cries
4. There .... some carrots.
   a) do   b) is   c) are

C. Writing

6 Look and answer the questions:

1



A : Is she pretty?
B : ....

2



A : How much is it?
B : ....

3



A : What do you want?
B : ....

4



A : Is it a prize?
B : ....

7 Look and write THREE sentences:



- ....
- ....
- ....

8 Punctuate the following:

- dalia and nada have a big green and brown prize/ ....

Unit (9) Test (2)

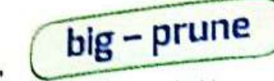
Selected from Schools' Examinations



A. Listening

1 Listen and circle the word with the short vowel:

للإجابة، راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب.

a.  big – prune b. prize – bread c. present – green d. brick – price

إدارة عين شمس 2015 — إدارة باب الشعرية 2015

2 Listen and complete with one word:

للإجابة، راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب.

1. They don't have .... books.
2. I have some ....
3. .... sounds good.
4. I have a .... umbrella.

3 Read and write (True "T" or False "F"):



	True	False
1. There are two carrots.	[..........]	[..........]
2. There isn't any salt.	[..........]	[..........]
3. There is some cheese.	[..........]	[..........]
4. There are some mushrooms.	[..........]	[..........]

4 Read and circle the odd one:

1.	pepper	salt	hot sauce	bakery
2.	carrot	truck	cheese	butter
3.	next to	cheese	pepper	salt
4.	egg	prune	bus	spaghetti

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c:

1. I don't .... cookies.
   a) like b) liked c) liking
2. I don't like .... It's hot.
   a) cheese b) eggs c) pepper
3. .... about some ice cream?
   a) What b) When c) Which
4. There are .... carrots.
   a) any b) some c) an

C. Writing

6 Look and answer the questions:

1


A : Is it hot sauce?
B : ....

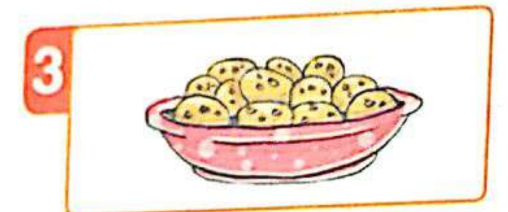
إدارة النزهة 2015

2



A : Do you like grapes?
B : ....

إدارة وسط 2015

3


A : What do you like?
B : ....

إدارة شرق 2015

4


A : Is it a restaurant?
B : ....

إدارة غرب البرج 2015

7 Look and write THREE sentences:



- ....
- ....
- ....

إدارة الباجور 2017

8 Punctuate the following:

- do ahmed and soha like cookies/ ....

إدارة الباجور 2017



Objectives:

الأهداف:

Listening/Speaking:

- Participate in a conversation.
  • المشاركة في محادثة
- Identify meaning of a conversation.
  • التعرف على معنى محادثة

Reading/Writing:

- Recognise and produce words (vocabulary).
  • التعرف على المفردات اللغوية (الكلمات) واستخداماتها.

Story Time

SB/ WB: P. (13)

A **Listen and repeat.**

استمع وردد.

Watch















B Look at A. Listen and point.

انظر إلى التمرين A . استمع وأشر.

C Listen. Circle "True or False".

استمع، وضع دائرة حول صح أو خطأ.

1. Sokkar wants some vegetables. True – False
2. Sokkara doesn't have any carrots. True – False
3. Sokkara has some spaghetti. True – False
4. There are some pickles. True – False
5. There isn't any hot sauce. True – False

D Role-play these scenes.

تبادل الأدوار في هذه المشاهد.



SB/ WB: P. (14)



Look, read and circle "True or False".

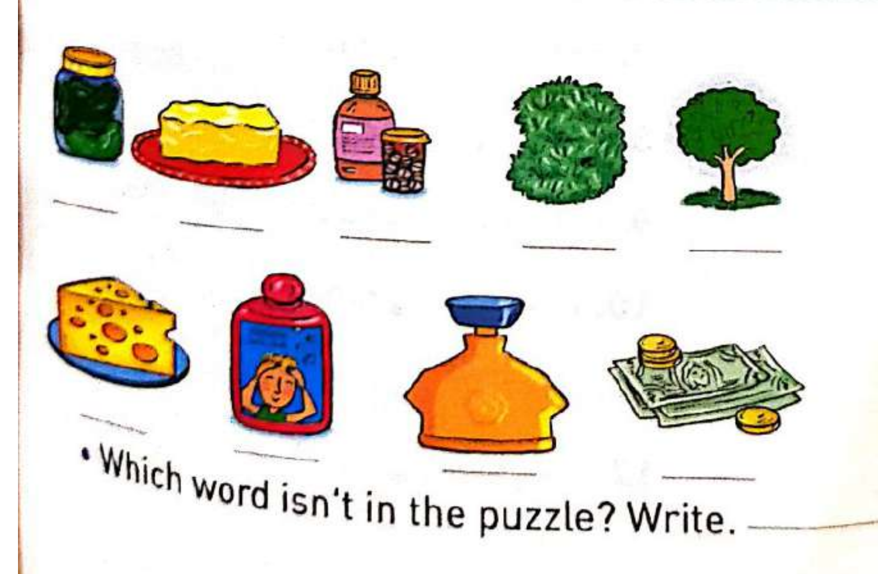
انظر، واقرأ وضع دائرة حول صح أو خطأ:



1. The cats are on the bed. — True - False
2. There are peas and grapes in the brown boxes. — True - False
3. There is some bread in the green bag. — True - False
4. The girl has some caps. — True - False
5. The girl has some sandwiches. — True - False
6. The man has a prize and a present. — True - False

B Look and write. Then find the words in the puzzle.

انظر واكتب. ثم أوجد الكلمات فى اللغز.



w	p	o	s	j	n	m	l	a	a
m	m	d	h	b	u	t	t	e	r
e	g	r	a	s	s	a	f	p	e
d	b	o	m	d	o	p	e	s	c
i	c	l	p	i	c	k	l	e	s
c	h	a	o	i	n	r	f	z	t
i	e	t	o	f	f	s	i	p	n
n	e	s	o	a	k	m	l	c	i
e	s	p	e	r	f	u	m	e	w
r	e	g	h	m	o	n	e	y	t

• Which word isn't in the puzzle? Write. ____________

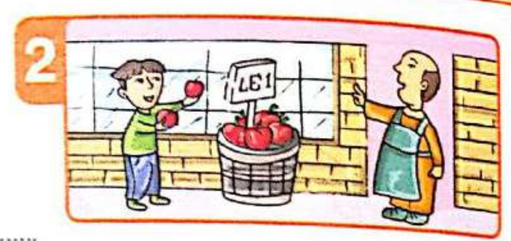


A Read, check and write the response.



☐ Don't forget your change.
☐ Don't do that!

Oops! Thanks a lot.



☐ How much are those?
☐ How much are these?

____



☐ What time is it?
☐ Where is it?

____



☐ Do you want some pickles?
☐ Do you want some ice cream?

____

B Match and write.

1. sun	work	______
2. wild	room	______
3. mush	brush	______
4. hair	life	wildlife
5. tooth	screen	______
6. home	paste	______

7. hot	box	______
8. brown	case	______
9. pencil	sauce	hot sauce
10. lunch	bread	______
11. chocolate	cream	______
12. ice	chip	______



Review (1)

A Look and write.



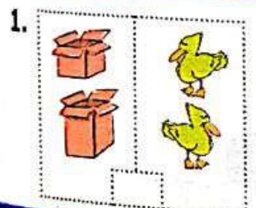






1. ______________________ mountains. ______________________ trees.
2. ______________________ toothpaste. ______________________ shampoo.
3. ______________________ money. ______________________ sunscreen.
4. ______________________ salt? ______________________

B Do they both have the same final sound (es or s)? Put ✓ or ✗.

1. 
2.
3. 
4. 

C Match.







Mid-term Revision



Vocabulary المفردات اللغوية

chemist's	صيدلية	How much....?	كم ثمن ......؟	pound	جنيه
each	كل واحد	okay	حسنًا	change	فكة (باقي النقود)
sure	بالتأكيد	Where....?	أين.....؟	candy	حلوى
aisle	ممر	money	أموال / نقود	soap	صابون
shampoo	شامبو	make-up	مكياج	perfume	عطر / برفان
medicine	دواء	toothpaste	معجون أسنان	sunscreen	كريم واقٍ من الشمس

Opposites المتضادات

cheap (adj.)	رخيص الثمن	expensive (adj.)	غالي الثمن
forget	ينسى	remember	يتذكر

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
thank	يشكر	thanked	help	يساعد	helped

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
am-is/are	يكون	was/were	take	يأخذ	took
forget	ينسى	forgot			

final "s" /s/

caps	قبعات	cats	قطط	ducks	بـط	beets	بنجر
bats	خفافيش	cups	فناجين	tops	لعبة النحلة	mats	دواسات (سجاد صغير)
chips	بطاطس الشيبسي	kits	أدوات/ عدة	cakes	تورت/ كيك	kites	طائرات ورقية
bikes	دراجات	carts	عربات كارو	socks	جورب	books	كتب
nuts	بندق/ مكسرات	rats	فئران	pots	أوانٍ/ حلل		

final "s" /z/

bags	حقائب	girls	بنات	peas	بازلاء	dogs	كلاب
bees	نحل	cubs	صغار الحيوانات (خصوصًا المفترسة)	pens	أقلام جاف	boys	أولاد
kids	أطفال	pills	حبوب دواء	pins	دبابيس	trees	أشجار
arms	أذرع	eyes	عيون	legs	أرجل	cabs	سيارات أجرة



Vocabulary المفردات اللغوية

park	حديقة عامة	What....?	ما/ ماذا.....؟	litter	قمامة
bin	سله المهملات	Where....?	أين؟	tree	شجرة
thanks	شكرًا	Whose ...?	لمن/ ملك من..؟	wallet	حافظة نقود للرجال
colour	لون	grass	حشائش	sand	رمال
snow	جليد	wildlife	حياة برية	pond(s)	بركة ماء (برك ماء)
tree(s)	شجرة (أشجار)	mountain(s)	جبل (جبال)	river(s)	نهر (أنهار)

Adjectives الصفات

green	أخضر/ خضراء	yellow	أصفر/ صفراء

Prepositions حروف الجر

under	أسفل/ تحت

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
drop	يسقط / يلقي	dropped	use	يستخدم	used

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
do	يفعل	did	see	يرى	saw

Phrases عبارات

drop litter	يلقى القمامة	use the bin	يستخدم سلة المهملات
wash the car	يغسل السيارة	watch TV	يشاهد التلفاز
listen to music	يستمع إلى الموسيقى	have a snack	يتناول وجبة خفيفة
climb a tree	يتسلق شجرة	do homework	يؤدى/ يقوم بعمل الواجب المنزلي

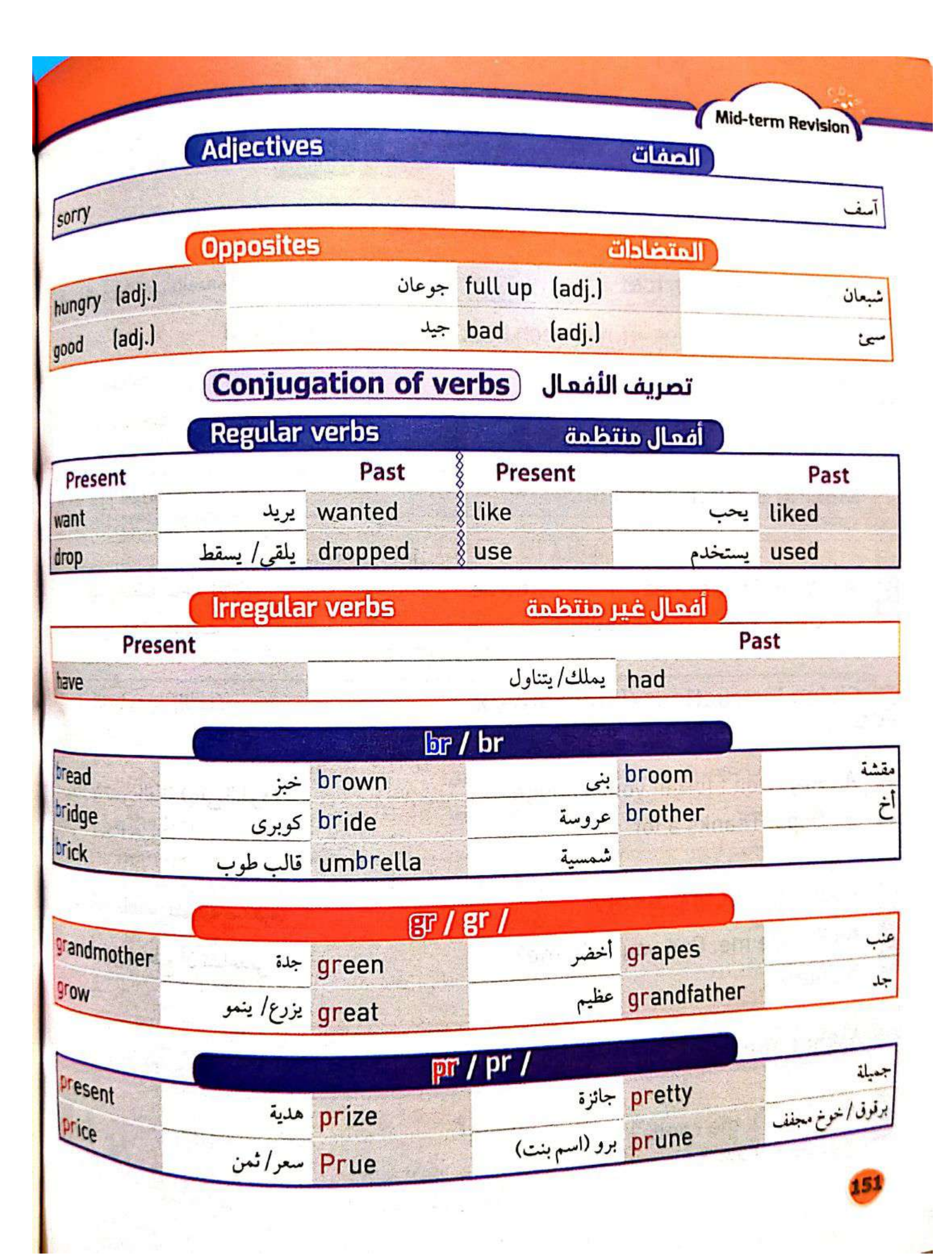
final "es"/Iz/

boxes	صناديق	buses	أتوبيسات	pencil cases	مقلمات
sandwiches	ساندوتشات	nurses	ممرضات	oranges	برتقال
bushes	شجيرات	peaches	خوخ	witches	ساحرات
beaches	شواطئ	foxes	ثعالب	leashes	سلاسل/ قيود/ ألجمة
purses	حافظات نقود للسيدات	kisses	قبلات	lashes	أسواط/ سياط
matches	أعواد كبريت	glasses	نظارة/ نظارات		

Unit 9

Vocabulary المفردات اللغوية

kitchen	مطبخ	too	أيضًا	let's	هيا بنا .....
snack	وجبة خفيفة	chocolate chip cookie	رقاقة بسكويت بالشيكولاتة	thanks	شكرًا
strawberry ice cream	آيس كريم فراولة	litter	قمامة	bin	سلة المهملات
salt	ملح	pepper	فلفل	cheese	جبنة / جبن
hot sauce	صلصة حارة	spaghetti	مكرونة إسباجتي	pickles	مخلل
mushrooms	فطر(عش الغراب)	carrots	جزر		



Adjectives الصفات

sorry	آسف

Opposites المتضادات

hungry	(adj.)	جوعان	full up	(adj.)	شبعان
good	(adj.)	جيد	bad	(adj.)	سيئ

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
want	يريد	wanted	like	يحب	liked
drop	يلقي/ يسقط	dropped	use	يستخدم	used

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past
have	يملك/ يتناول	had

br / br

bread	خبز	brown	بني	broom	مقشة
bridge	كوبري	bride	عروسة	brother	أخ
brick	قالب طوب	umbrella	شمسية		

gr / gr /

grandmother	جدة	green	أخضر	grapes	عنب
grow	يزرع/ ينمو	great	عظيم	grandfather	جد

pr / pr /

present	هدية	prize	جائزة	pretty	جميلة
price	سعر/ ثمن	Prue	برو (اسم بنت)	prune	برقوق/ خوخ مجفف





1 Asking about price: السؤال عن الثمن (السعر):

How much........? كم ثمن/ سعر........؟

e.g.

A : How much are these? — كم ثمن هؤلاء؟

B : They're one pound each. — الواحدة ثمنها جنيه.

2 Making a quick decision: اتخاذ قرار سريع :

will ('ll) + (inf.) .....مصدر الفعل

e.g.

A : Wow! That's cheap. I'll take three. — واو! إنها رخيصة سآخذ ثلاثة.

B : Okay. That's three pounds. — حسنًا. إنها بثلاثة جنيهات.

3 Giving instructions (imperative): إعطاء التعليمات (الأمر):

Don't + (inf.) .....مصدر الفعل

e.g.

A : Hey! Don't forget your change. — مهلا! لا تنس الفكة (باقى النقود).

B : Oops! Thanks a lot. — عفوًا! شكرًا جزيلاً.

4 Asking for help politely: طلب المساعدة بطريقة مهذبة:

e.g.

A : Excuse me. Can you help me? — معذرةً. هل تستطيع أن تساعدنى؟

B : Sure. — بالتأكيد.

5 Asking about the place of something: السؤال عن مكان شئ ما:

Where........? أين........؟

e.g.

A : Where's the candy? — أين الحلوى؟

B : It's in aisle 1. — إنها فى الممر رقم ١.

6 Asking about the time: السؤال عن الوقت:

What time is it? كم الساعة؟
It's + رقم الساعة + عدد الدقائق.

e.g.
A : What time is it? كم الساعة؟
B : It's 10:30. إنها العاشرة والنصف. أو إنها العاشرة وثلاثون دقيقة.

7 Expressing pain: التعبير عن الألم:

e.g.
• Ouch! That hurts. آه! هـــذا يؤلم.

8 Stating a problem: ذكر مشكلة:

e.g.
• Oh, no! What a mess! أوه ! يالها من فوضى!



1 Giving instructions (imperative): إعطاء التعليمات (الأمر):

• لإعطاء التعليمات بفعل شىء ما نبدأ الجملة بمصدر الفعل:

.........مصدر الفعل (Inf.)

e.g.
• Use the bin. استخدم سلة المهملات.
• Do homework. قم بعمل الواجب المنزلى.

• لإعطاء التعليمات بعدم فعل شىء ما :

Don't + (inf.) مصدر الفعل.........

e.g.
• Don't do that! لا تفعل ذلك!
• Don't drop litter! لا تلقِ (ترمِ) القمامة!

2 Asking about location of something: السؤال عن موقع (مكان)شئ ما:

Where .....? أين......؟

e.g.
A : Where's the bin? أين سلة المهملات؟
B : It's over there. It's under the tree. إنها هناك. إنها تحت الشجرة.

3 Asking about possession: السؤال عن الملكية:

Whose + الشيء المملوك? لمن / ملك مَن ....؟

e.g.

A : Whose wallet is this? لمن / ملك مَن هذه المحفظة؟

B : Oh! It's mine. أوه! إنها ملكي.

4 Asking about and identifying colours: السؤال عن و التعرف على الألوان:

What colour .....? ما لون ......؟

e.g.

A : What colour is it? ما لونها؟

B : It's green and yellow. لونها أخضر وأصفر.

5 Asking about a problem: السؤال عن مشكلة:

What's wrong? ما الأمر / مم تشكو؟

e.g.

A : What's wrong? ما الأمر / مم تشكو؟

B : I feel sick. أشعر بالمرض.

6 Thanking: الشكر:

e.g.

A : Thanks/Thank you. شكرًا/ شكرًا لك.

B : You're welcome. على الرحب و السعة / العفو.



Expressing feelings: التعبير عن المشاعر:

Subject (الفاعل) + v. to"be" (am/is/are) + adj. (صفة)

e.g.
A : I'm hungry. أنا جوعان.
B : Me, too. و أنا، أيضاً.

Suggestion: الإقتراح:

Let's + (inf.) مصدر الفعل.... هيا بنا....

e.g.
• Let's have a snack. هيا بنا نتناول وجبة خفيفة.

What about + noun (اسم) / (inf.) + ing...? ماذا عن...؟

e.g.
A : What about some strawberry ice cream? ماذا عن بعضٍ من آيس كريم الفراولة؟
B : Mm! That sounds good. مم! ذلك يبدو جيدًا.

Offering: العرض:

Do you want ....? هل تريد ....؟

e.g.
A : Do you want a chocolate chip cookie? هل تريد رقاقة بسكويت بالشيكولاتة؟
B : No, I don't like cookies. لا، أنا لا أحب رقائق البسكويت.

Giving instructions (imperative): إعطاء التعليمات (الأمر):

• لإعطاء التعليمات بفعل شيء ما نبدأ الجملة بمصدر الفعل:

(Inf.) مصدر الفعل ....

e.g.
• Use the bin. استخدم سلة المهملات.

• لإعطاء التعليمات بعدم فعل شيء ما:

Don't + (inf.) مصدر الفعل...........

e.g.
• Don't do that! لا تفعل ذلك!
• Don't drop litter! لا تلقِ (ترم) القمامة!





Using verb to "have" with "some" & "any" in affirmative and negative statements:

استخدام "have" to .v بمعنى "لديه / يملك" مع "some" & "any" فى الجمل المثبتة و المنفية:

1- Affirmative statements.

I, We, You, They, اسم جمع	have	some	اسم الشيء.......
He, She, It , اسم مفرد	has		

e.g. • I have some soap. • She has some make-up.

2- Negative statements.

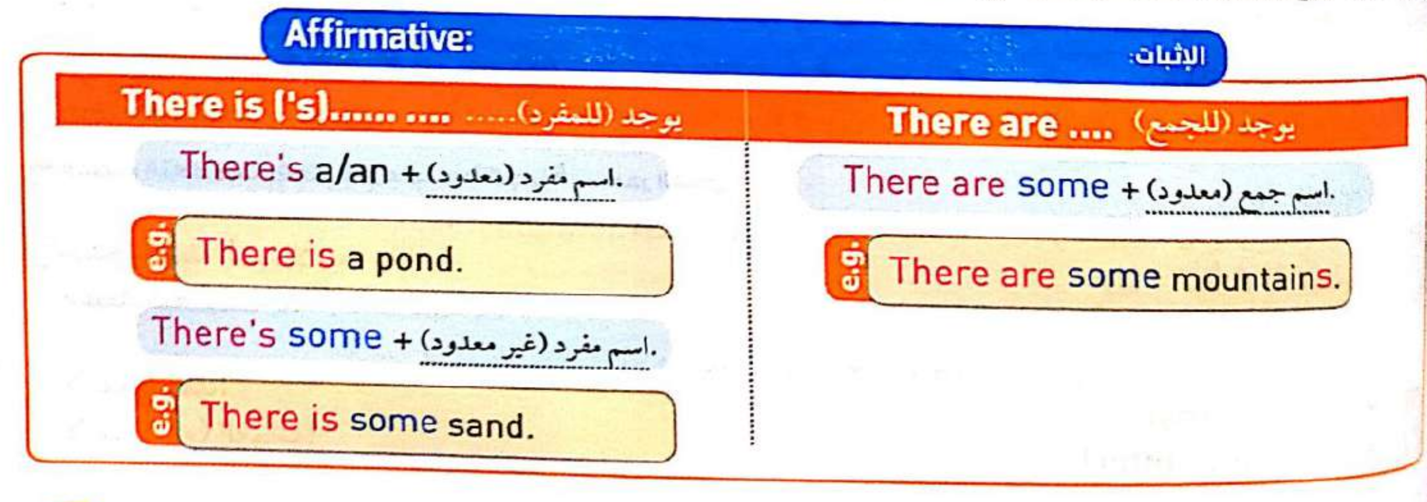
I, We, You, They, اسم جمع	don't have	any	اسم الشيء.......
He, She, It , اسم مفرد	doesn't have		

e.g. • They don't have any toothpaste. • He doesn't have any sunscreen.



There is /There are...." with countable and uncountable nouns:

يوجد....." مع الأسماء المعدودة و غير المعدودة:



Affirmative: الإثبات:

There is ('s)...... ....يوجد (للمفرد)	There are .... يوجد (للجمع)
There's a/an + اسم مفرد (معدود).	There are some + اسم جمع (معدود).
e.g. There is a pond.	e.g. There are some mountains.
There's some + اسم مفرد (غير معدود).	
e.g. There is some sand.	

Negative: النفى:

There isn't .... لا يوجد (للمفرد)

There isn't any + اسم مفرد (غير معدود).

e.g. There isn't any wildlife.

There aren't .... لا يوجد (للجمع)

There aren't any + اسم جمع (معدود).

e.g. There aren't any trees.



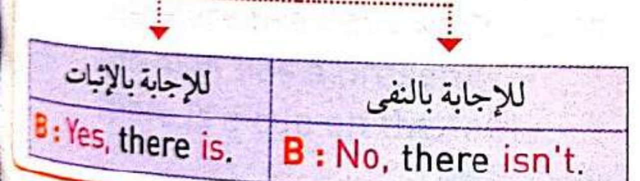
Asking about the availability of something using "Is/Are there any........?":

السؤال بـ "هل" عن مدى إتاحة (توافر) شىء ما باستخدام "هل يوجد أى ....؟"

- للسؤال بـ "هل" عن مدى اتاحة (توافر) شىء مفرد غير معدود

Is there any + اسم مفرد (غير معدود)?

e.g. A : Is there any pepper?



للإجابة بالإثبات	للإجابة بالنفى
B : Yes, there is.	B : No, there isn't.

- للسؤال بـ "هل" عن مدى اتاحة (توافر) أشياء جمع معدودة:

Are there any + اسم جمع (معدود)?

e.g. A : Are there any mushrooms?

للإجابة بالإثبات	للإجابة بالنفى
B : Yes, there are.	B : No, there aren't.

Units (7 , 8 & 9) General Exercises



A. Listening

1 Listen and circle the word with the short vowel:

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب.



A

a. get – green b. caps – grapes c. tree – bed d. kite – sit

B

a. duck – prune b. home – fox c. beach – pepper d. grass – bake

C

a. big – bride b. beets – box c. three – leg d. broom – bag

2 Listen and complete with one word:

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب.

A

1. Whose .... is this?
2. What a ....!
3. It's a ....
4. I'll .... three.

B

1. .... drop litter!
2. There are ....mountains.
3. I don't like ....
4. There aren't .... mushrooms.

C

1. That .... good.
2. You're ....
3. Don't .... litter!
4. How .... are these chocolate chip cookies?

B. Reading

3 Read and write (True "T" or False "F"):

A



	True	False
1. Sokkar is eating.	(..................)	(..................)
2. The rice is hot.	(..................)	(..................)
3. Sokkara is reading.	(..................)	(..................)
4. Sokkar is drinking tea.	(..................)	(..................)

B



	True	False
1. There are two cats on the table.	(..................)	(..................)
2. There are five caps on the bag.	(..................)	(..................)
3. The man has a present.	(..................)	(..................)
4. There is a cup on the table.	(..................)	(..................)

C



	True	False
1. The girl is sitting.	(..................)	(..................)
2. There are two rivers.	(..................)	(..................)
3. There are some animals.	(..................)	(..................)
4. There is some grass.	(..................)	(..................)

4 Read and circle the odd one:

A

1.	cheese	salt	pickles	soup
2.	mushrooms	cookies	carrots	litter
3.	Whose	white	Where	What
4.	bin	bag	box	drop

B

1.	tree	cub	dog	fox
2.	book	dog	pen	pencil
3.	pots	cups	bags	have
4.	boys	oranges	apples	peaches

C

1.	cheese	mountain	butter	spaghetti
2.	kite	grandmother	grandfather	sister
3.	forget	do	money	write
4.	under	in	on	thank

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c:

A

1. How much .... these?
   a) is b) are c) am
2. There .... some butter.
   a) is b) are c) am
3. I don't have .... perfume.
   a) any b) some c) an
4. I have .... soap.
   a) any b) some c) a

B

1. There .... glasses under the table.
   a) is b) are c) am
2. He doesn't .... any cats.
   a) has b) having c) have
3. What about .... strawberry ice cream?
   a) some b) an c) any
4. There .... some salt.
   a) are b) is c) am

C

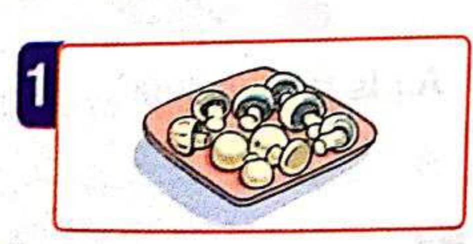
1. Let's .... a snack.
   a) have b) has c) having
2. I don't have .... pickles.
   a) some b) an c) any
3. There .... some carrots.
   a) is b) are c) am
4. Is there .... cheese?
   a) some b) a c) any

C. Writing

6 Look and answer the questions:

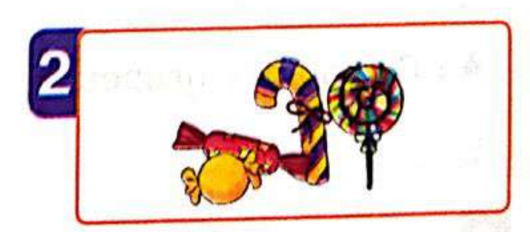
A

1



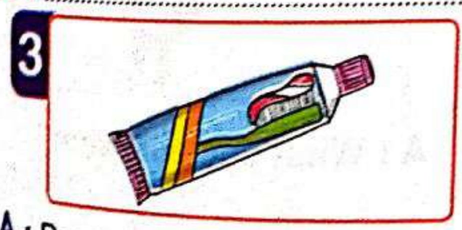
A : Are there any mushrooms?
B : ....

2



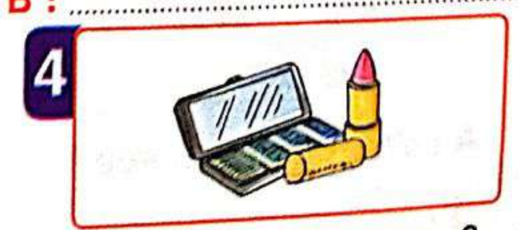
A : Do you like candy?
B : ....

3



A : Do you want some toothpaste?
B : ....

4



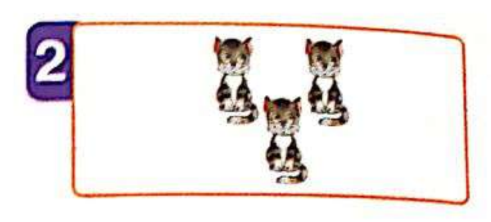
A : Is there any shampoo?
B : ....





A : What are these?

B : ....



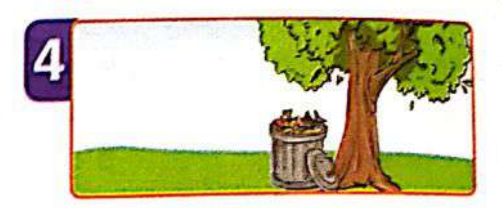
A : Are they cats?

B : ....



A : How much is it?

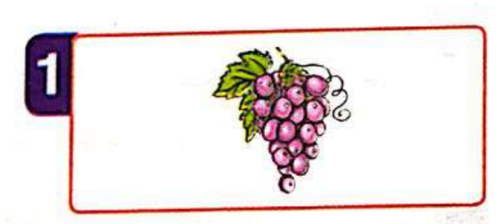
B : ....



A : Where's the bin?

B : ....





A : Do you like grapes?

B : ....



A : Is this wildlife?

B : ....



A : What can you see?

B : ....



A : What does he want?

B : ....

7 Look and write THREE sentences:

A

- ....
- ....
- ....

B

- ....
- ....
- ....

C

- ....
- ....
- ....

8 Punctuate the following:

A

- what do you like eating mona/

....

B

- ali and heba don t like spaghetti/

....

C

- yes i like reading/

....

اختبارات على ما سبق دراسته

Exam (1)



1 Listen and circle the word with the short vowel:

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب.

a. bed – bee b. pin – bike c. glue – up d. home – box

2 Listen and complete with one word:

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب.

1. Let's .... a snack.
2. Whose .... is this?
3. What about some ....?
4. That sounds ....

B. Reading

3 Read and write (True "T" or False "F"):



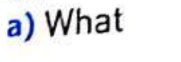
		True	False
1.	There are some pickles.	[..........]	[..........]
2.	There isn't any pepper.	[..........]	[..........]
3.	There is some butter.	[..........]	[..........]
4.	There is some hot sauce.	[..........]	[..........]

4 Read and circle the odd one:

1.	pepper	salt	bakery	hot sauce
2.	this	Whose	Where	What
3.	trees	ponds	rivers	buses
4.	cheese	happy	mushroom	spaghetti

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c:

1. Is there any cheese ? – No, there ....
   a) wasn't b) isn't c) aren't
2. There .... some pickles.
   a) is b) was c) are
3. There .... some hot sauce.
   a) are b) is c) do
4. .... much is the ice cream?
   a) What b) Who c) How



C. Writing

6 Look and answer the questions:

1



A : Do you like fish?
B : ....

2



A : What do you want?
B : ....

3

A : Whose purse is this?
B : ....





A : How many apples are there?
B : ....

7 Look and write THREE sentences:



- ....
- ....
- ....

8 Punctuate the following:

- oh! it s mine/ ....

Exam (2)

Selected from Schools' Examinations



1 Listen and circle the word with the short vowel:

للإجابة، راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب.

a. pin - bike (إدارة المراغة 2017) b. cake - cap (إدارة دير مواس 2016) c. kit - wild (إدارة قويسنا 2017) d. beet - pen (إدارة حدائق القبة 2017)

2 Listen and complete with one word:

للإجابة، راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب.

1. They are one .... each.
2. I don't .... cookies.
3. Let's have a ....
4. That sounds ....

B. Reading

3 Read and write (True "T" or False "F"):



		True	False
1.	There are three girls.	(..................)	(..................)
2.	They are watching TV.	(..................)	(..................)
3.	They are playing football.	(..................)	(..................)
4.	They are at home.	(..................)	(..................)

4 Read and circle the odd one:

1.	shampoo	perfume	toothpaste	forget
2.	caps	kids	one	pills
3.	rat	cheap	good	bad
4.	candy	chips	nuts	dogs

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c:

1. How much .... these? (إدارة الشرابية 2017)
   a) is b) are c) was
2. I have .... medicine. (إدارة زفتى 2017)
   a) any b) an c) some
3. I don't have .... soap. (إدارة الساحل 2017)
   a) some b) any c) a
4. What is he .... ? (إدارة إهناسيا 2017)
   a) doing b) do c) does

C. Writing

6 Look and answer the questions:

1



إدارة البلينة 2016

A: Is there any bread?
B: ....

2

إدارة عين شمس 2015

A: Where can you drop litter?
B: ....

3

إدارة شربين 2017

A: What can you see?
B: ....

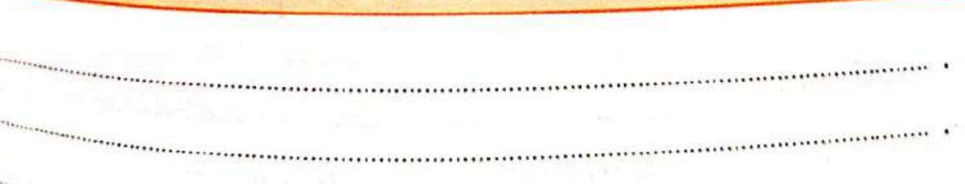
4



إدارة بنها 2017

A: Does she have any sunscreen?
B: ....

7 Look and write THREE sentences:



- ....
- ....
- ....



إدارة حلمية الزيتون 2016

8 Punctuate the following:

- let s go to the chemist s/ .... (إدارة السمود 2015)

Exam (3)

Selected from Schools' Examinations



A. Listening

1 Listen and circle the word with the short vowel:

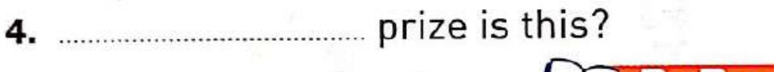
للإجابة، راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب.

a. seat - neck (إدارة أجا 2016) b. six - pie (إدارة البلينة 2016) c. soup - pot (إدارة القرين 2017) d. ant - lake (إدارة فرشوط 2017)

2 Listen and complete with one word:

للإجابة، راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب.

1. They don't .... any money. (2016)
2. Are these your .... ? (2017)
3. They are eating in the .... (2017)
4. .... prize is this? (2015)



B. Reading

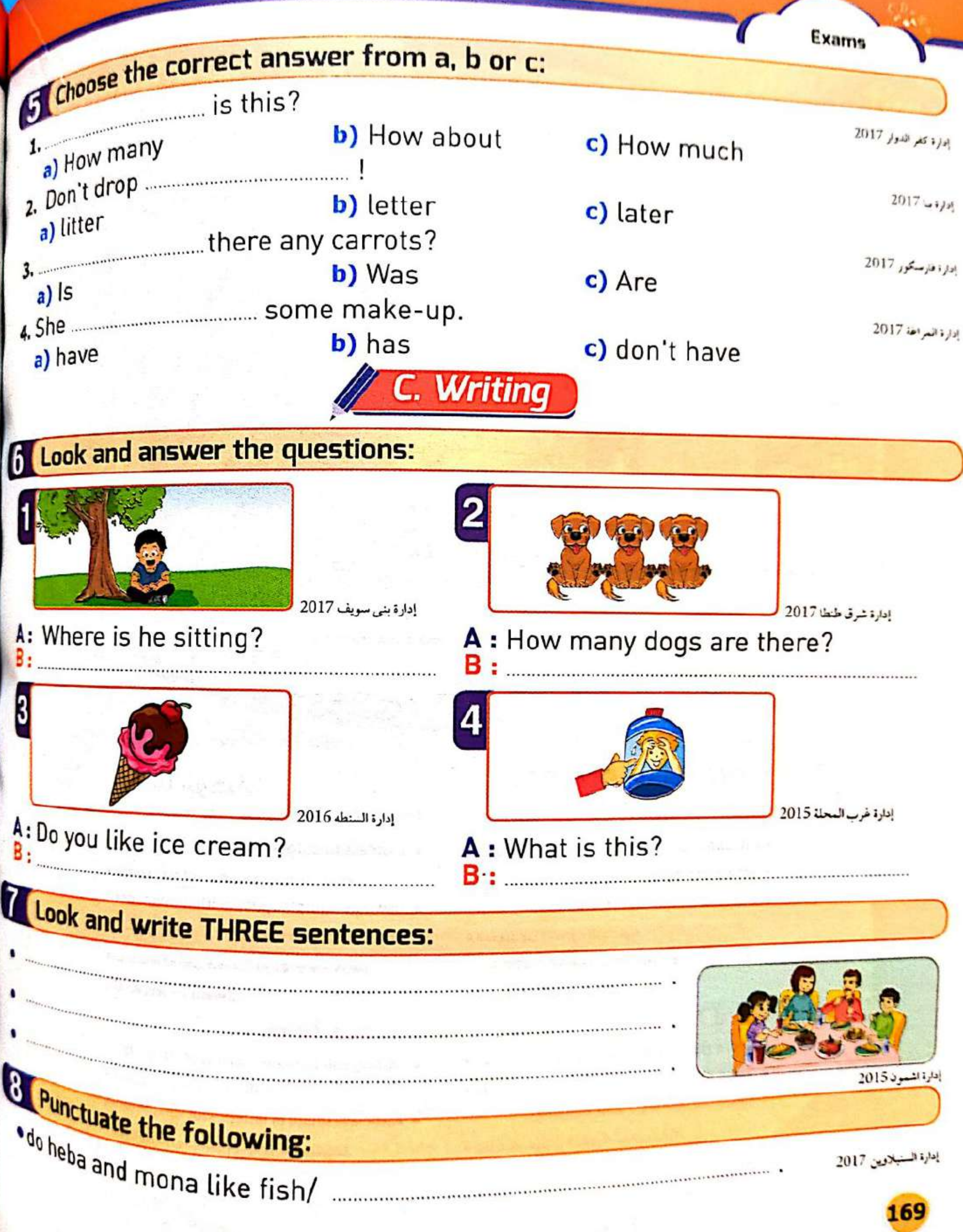
3 Read and write (True "T" or False "F"):



	True	False
1. The girl is watching TV.	[..........]	[..........]
2. She is jumping.	[..........]	[..........]
3. She is reading a book.	[..........]	[..........]
4. She is at the club.	[..........]	[..........]

4 Read and circle the odd one:

1.	oranges	nurses	bananas	apples
2.	Whose	Where	Does	When
3.	pound	on	in	under
4.	canary	parrot	bird	girl



5 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c:

1. .... is this? — إدارة كفر الدوار 2017
   a) How many b) How about c) How much
2. Don't drop .... ! — إدارة ببا 2017
   a) litter b) letter c) later
3. .... there any carrots? — إدارة فارسكور 2017
   a) Is b) Was c) Are
4. She .... some make-up. — إدارة المراغة 2017
   a) have b) has c) don't have

C. Writing

6 Look and answer the questions:

1 — إدارة بنى سويف 2017

A: Where is he sitting?
B: ....

2 — إدارة شرق طنطا 2017

A : How many dogs are there?
B : ....

3 — إدارة السنطة 2016

A: Do you like ice cream?
B: ....

4 — إدارة غرب المحلة 2015

A : What is this?
B : ....

7 Look and write THREE sentences:

- ....
- ....
- ....

إدارة أشمون 2015

8 Punctuate the following:

- do heba and mona like fish/ .... — إدارة السنبلاوين 2017

unit 10

Downtown
وسط المدينة



Unit Objectives:

أهداف الوحدة:

Conversation Time:

- Ask about possessions. • السؤال عن الملكية.
- Make a suggestion. • عَمل اقتراح.
- Express & respond to thanks.
  • التعبير عن الشكر و الرد عليه.
- Identify speakers in a conversation.
  • التعرف إلى المتحدثين فى محادثة.

Word Time:

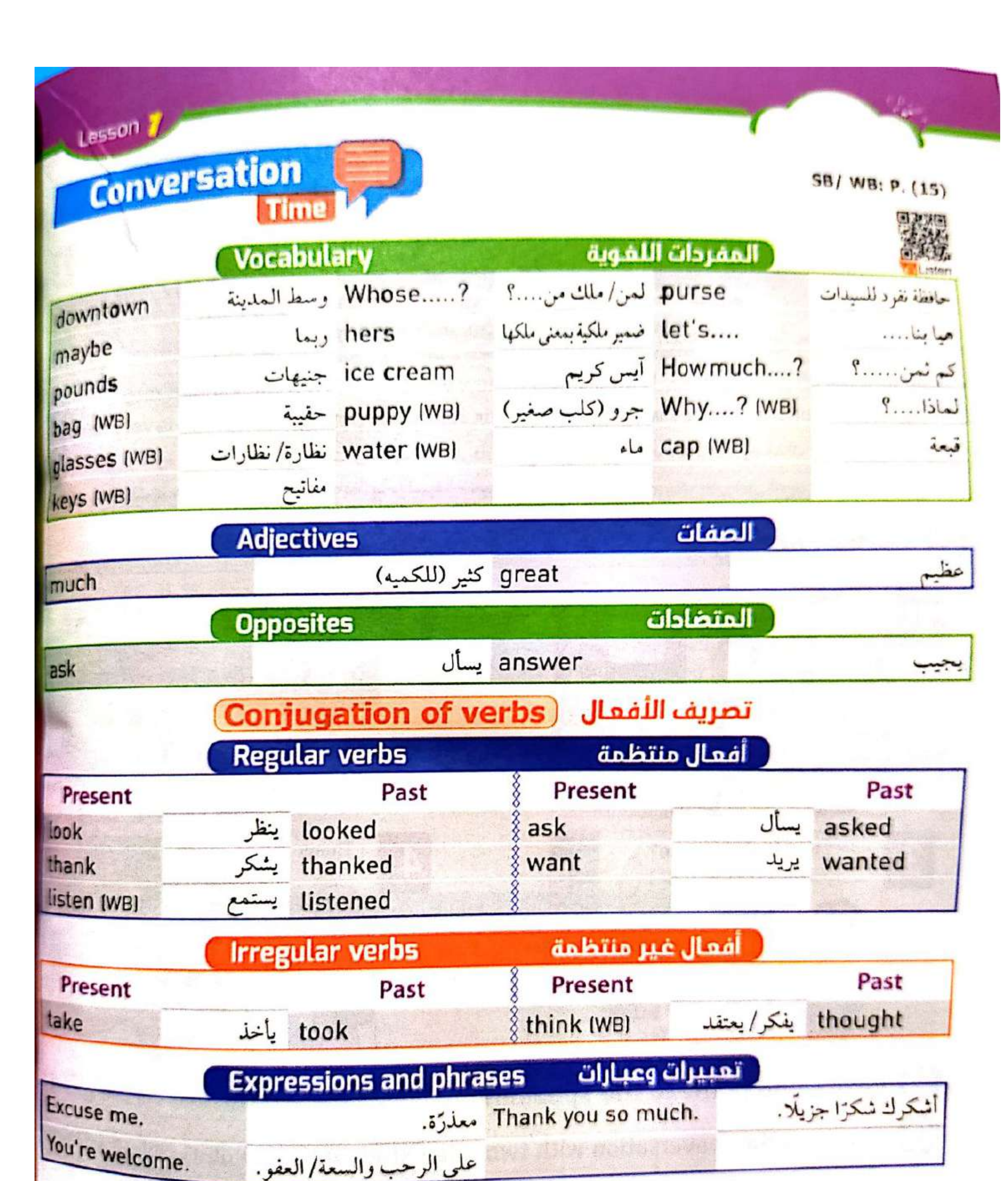
- Write short sentences. • كتابة جمل قصيرة.
- Read short sentences. • قراءة جمل قصيرة.
- Learn vocabulary: Public buildings.
  • تعلم المفردات اللغوية، مبانى عامة.

Practice Time:

- Express past location.
  • التعبير عن التواجد فى مكان ما فى الماضى.
- Use the simple past with (was/were) and (wasn't/ weren't).
  • استخدام الماضى البسيط مع (was - were) و (wasn't - weren't).

Phonics Time:

- Distinguish between sounds of (cr, dr, tr).
  • التمييز بين أصوات "cr, dr, tr".
- Associate sound of letters with written form.
  • الربط بين أصوات الحروف وطريقة كتابتها.



Conversation Time

SB/ WB: P. (15)

Listen

Vocabulary المفردات اللغوية

downtown	وسط المدينة	Whose.....?	لمن/ ملك من.....؟	purse	حافظة نقود للسيدات
maybe	ربما	hers	ضمير ملكية بمعنى ملكها	let's....	هيا بنا....
pounds	جنيهات	ice cream	آيس كريم	How much....?	كم ثمن.....؟
bag (WB)	حقيبة	puppy (WB)	جرو (كلب صغير)	Why....? (WB)	لماذا....؟
glasses (WB)	نظارة/ نظارات	water (WB)	ماء	cap (WB)	قبعة
keys (WB)	مفاتيح				

Adjectives الصفات

much	كثير (للكميه)	great	عظيم

Opposites المتضادات

ask	يسأل	answer	يجيب

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
look	ينظر	looked	ask	يسأل	asked
thank	يشكر	thanked	want	يريد	wanted
listen (WB)	يستمع	listened			

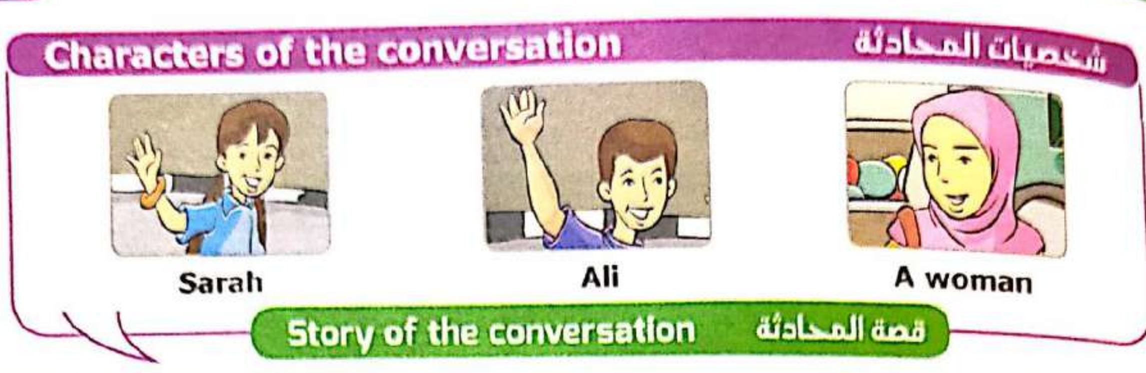
Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
take	يأخذ	took	think (WB)	يفكر/ يعتقد	thought

Expressions and phrases تعبيرات وعبارات

Excuse me.	معذرة.	Thank you so much.	أشكرك شكرًا جزيلًا.
You're welcome.	على الرحب والسعة/ العفو.		

Characters of the conversation شخصيات المحادثة



Story of the conversation قصة المحادثة

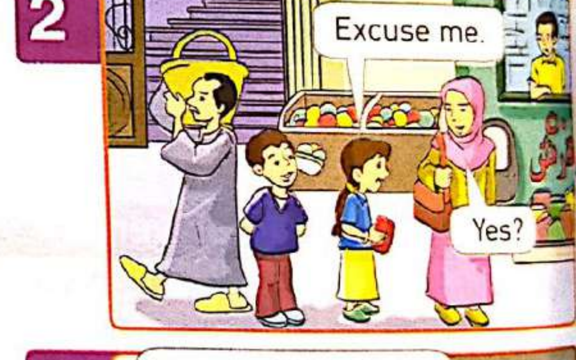
- Ali and Sarah find a purse, but they don't know whose it is. They think that it may belong to this woman, so they walk up to her. It is really her purse. The woman is very happy.

يجد علي وسارة حافظة نقود للسيدات ولكنهما لا يعرفان لمن تكون هذه الحافظة. هما يعتقدان أنها ربما تخص هذه السيدة، لذلك يذهبوا إليها. إنها حقًا حافظتها والسيدة سعيدة جدًا.



A Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.









B Listen and point to the speakers. استمع وأشر إلى المتحدثين.

C Role-play the conversation with two other students. مثل الأدوار للمحادثة مع زميلين آخرين.



1 Asking about possessions: السؤال عن الملكية:

Whose + الشيء المملوك ......? لمن/ ملك من .....؟

e.g.
A : Look! Whose purse is this? انظر! لمن حافظة النقود هذه؟
B : Maybe it's hers. ربما تكون ملكها.

2 Suggestion: الإقتراح:

Let's + (inf.) مصدر الفعل........

e.g.
• Let's ask. هيا بنا نسأل.

3 Making sure of information: التأكد من معلومة:

e.g.
A : Is this your purse? هل حافظة النقود هذه تخصك؟
B : Yes, it is. نعم.

4 Thanking: الشكر:

e.g.
A : Thank you so much. أشكرك شكرًا جزيلًا.
B : You're welcome . على الرحب و السعة / العفو.

5 Asking about price: السؤال عن الثمن (السعر):

How much ....? كم ثمن ....؟

e.g.
A : How much is that? كم ثمن ذلك؟
B : It's two pounds. إنه بجنيهان.

Note — Possessive adjectives and pronouns صفات و ضمائر الملكية

Subject pronouns ضمائر الفاعل	Possessive adjectives صفات الملكية		Possessive pronouns ضمائر الملكية
I	my	+ noun الشيء المملوك	mine
He	his		his
She	her		hers
It	its		its
We	our		ours
You	your		yours
They	their		theirs

- تأتى صفات الملكية "Possessive adjectives" قبل الشىء المملوك:

e.g. • This is her purse. • This is your bag.

- تأتى ضمائر الملكية "Possessive pronouns" فى نهاية الجمل بدلاً من "صفة الملكية" و "الشئ المملوك" معًا:

e.g. • This is her purse. = It's hers. • This is your bag. = It's yours.



Listen and complete with one word:

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب.

1. Let's ....her. (إدارة شربين 2015)
2. You .... welcome. (إدارة تسمنود 2016)
3. Thank you so .... (إدارة الإسماعلية 2016)
4. .... purse is this? (إدارة قطبة 2017)

D Review. Listen and repeat.

راجع. استمع وردد.

 I want ice cream.

 Okay. How much is that?

 It's two pounds.

 Great! We'll take two.





- لاحظ أن حرف (w) فى كل من (Whose /answer) "silent" لا ينطق.
- لاحظ أن حرفى (th) فى (this) ينطقان / ð/ (ذ).
- لاحظ أن حرف (c) فى (Excuse me) ينطق / k/ (ك).
- لاحظ أن حرفى (ch) فى (much) ينطقان / tʃ/ (تش).





Workbook
Conversation Time

A Read, circle and match.

1.

Look	?	Whose	puppy	are	this	?
Listen	!	Where	purse	is	that	.

Maybe	I'm	here	,	Let	answer	,
Mother	it's	hers	.	Let's	ask	.



2.

Excuse	me	?
That's	her	.

Why	?
Yes	!

Are	this	your	bag	?
Is	that	you	purse	.



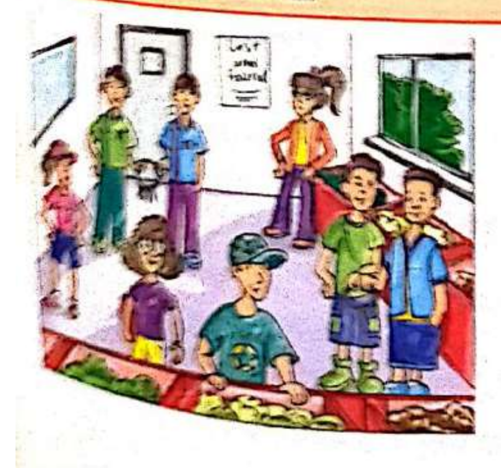
3.

No,	,	hers	is	.	Thank	us	too	much	?
Yes	.	it	are	!	Think	you	so	many	.

We're	welcome	.
You're	water	,



B Read and write.



1.  Is this her cap? 

____

2.  Are these her glasses?

____

3.  Are these their keys? 

____



Conversation Time

Exercise

1 Listen and complete with one word: 

Listen للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب.

1. I want ....
2. .... you so much. 2015
3. I .... take two apples. 2015
4. How much .... they? 2015

2 Read and write (True "T" or False "F"):

2017



		True	False
1.	The woman is fat.	(..................)	(..................)
2.	The man sells ice cream.	(..................)	(..................)
3.	The boy wants ice cream.	(..................)	(..................)
4.	They are at home .	(..................)	(..................)

3 Read and circle the odd one:

1.	look	cap	want	take
2.	purses	keys	glasses	want
3.	Whose	How much	pound	Where
4.	ice cream	thank	listen	answer

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c:

1. Let's .... her.
   a) asks b) ask c) asking
2. Whose wallet .... this?
   a) is b) am c) are
3. They are one pound ....
   a) every b) one c) each
4. Are these .... glasses? .
   a) her b) hers c) yours

5 Look and write THREE sentences:

- ....

- ....
- ....



6 Punctuate the following:

- is this your purse nour/

....



For more exercises لمزيد من التدريبات

SB/ WB: P. (16)



Word ABC Time



Vocabulary المفردات اللغوية

Public buildings: مبانٍ عامة:



museum متحف



cinema سينما



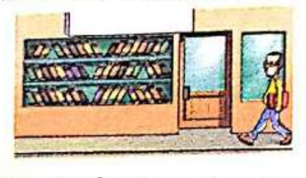
department store متجر متعدد الأقسام



hospital مستشفى



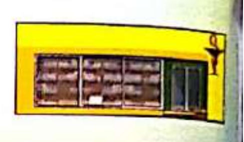
restaurant مطعم



bookshop محل بيع كتب



bakery مخبز



chemist's صيدلية

Other words كلمات أخرى

When...?	متى....؟	morning	الصباح	music	موسيقى	work	عمل
aeroplane	طائرة	ticket	تذكرة	What time...?	ما وقت...؟	now	الآن
afternoon	بعد الظهر	evening	المساء				

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

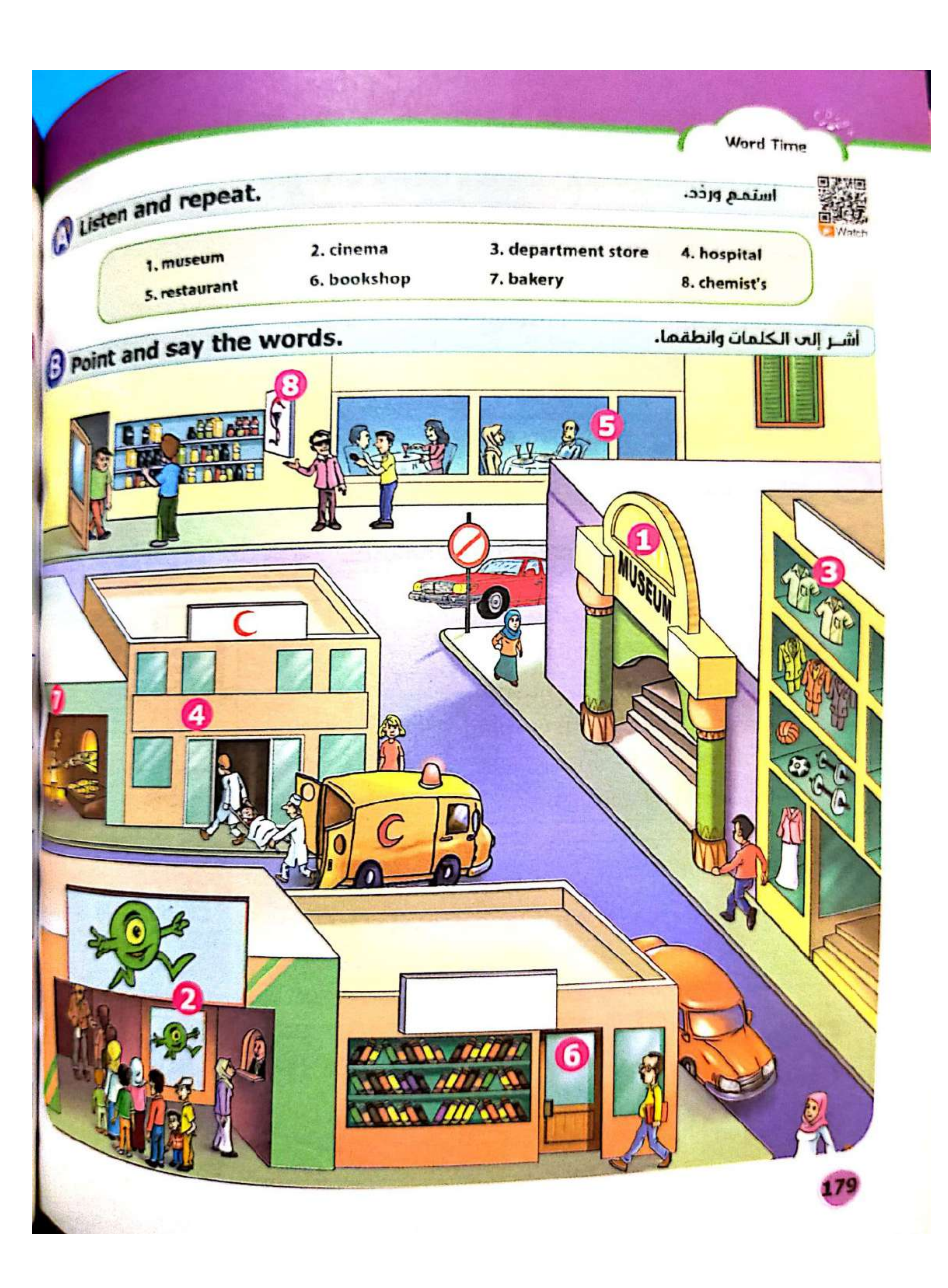
Present		Past	Present		Past	Present		Past
exercise	يتدرب/يتمرن	exercised	help	يساعد	helped	start	يبدأ	started
listen	يستمع	listened						

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past	Present		Past
do	يفعل / يعمل	did	go	يذهب	went	see	يرى	saw

Expressions and phrases تعبيرات وعبارات

May I help you?	هل يمكنني أن أساعدك؟	Bye-bye!	إلى اللقاء!	See you later.	أراك لاحقًا.



A Listen and repeat.

استمع وردد.

1. museum	2. cinema	3. department store	4. hospital
5. restaurant	6. bookshop	7. bakery	8. chemist's

B Point and say the words.

أشر إلى الكلمات وانطقها.

Unit 10



Read and circle the odd one:

1.	museum	hospital	bakery	money
2.	bookshop	museum	books	hospital
3.	Whose	bakery	chemist's	museum
4.	bookshop	purse	cinema	hospital



Listen and point. استمع وأشر.

Now, listen and point to the speakers. الآن، استمع وأشر إلى المتحدثين.

A When do you exercise?
B I exercise in the morning.
A When do you listen to music?
B I listen to music in the evening.
A How do you go to work?
A I go to work by aeroplane.



A Hi. May I help you?
B One ticket, please. What time does it start?
A 1:15



A I'm going now.
B Bye-bye!
A See you later.





1 Offering help: عرض المساعدة:

May I + (inf.) مصدر الفعل ....? هل يمكنني أن ......؟

e.g.
A : May I help you? هل يمكنني أن اساعدك؟
B : One ticket, please. تذكرة واحدة، من فضلك .

2 Asking about time: السؤال عن الوقت:

What time ....? ما وقت ......؟

e.g.
A : What time does it start? ما وقت بداية العرض؟
B : 1:15. الواحدة و الربع. / الواحدة وخمسة عشر دقيقة.

Notes

- Wh-questions with "When":
• استخدام كلمة الإستفهام "متى" للسؤال عن وقت حدوث الفعل:

When → do + I, we, you, they, اسم جمع + (inf.) مصدر الفعل ......?
When → does + he, she, it, اسم مفرد + (inf.) مصدر الفعل......?

• وعند الإجابة نستخدم فترات اليوم:

in the	morning.	فى الصباح
	afternoon.	بعد الظهر
	evening.	فى المساء
at	→ night	فى الليل / ليلاً

e.g.
A : When do you exercise?
B : I exercise in the morning.

e.g.
A : When does he listen to music?
B : He listens to music in the evening.

-Wh-questions with "How": • استخدام كلمة الإستفهام "كيف" للسؤال عن كيفية الذهاب لمكان ما (وسيلة المواصلات):

How	do	I, we, you, they, اسم الجمع	(inf.)	complement	?
	does	he, she, it , اسم مفرد	مصدر الفعل	(تكملة الجملة)	

للإجابـــة:

I / We/ You/ They	go	to + اسم مكان	by + وسيلة المواصلات ....
He/ She/ It	goes		

e.g.
A : How do you go to work?
B : I go to work by aeroplane.

e.g.
A : How does she go to school?
B : She goes to school by bus.

Note

• نستخدم by قبل وسائل المواصلات:
• He goes to work by bus /car/train/bicycle/taxi/ ferry/the underground/aeroplane.
• نستخدم on قبل كلمة foot بمعنى سيرًا على الأقدام:
• I go to school on foot.



Listen and complete with one word:

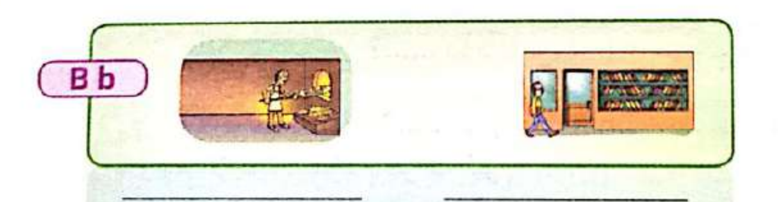
للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب.

1. May I .... you? — 2017
2. How .... you go to work? — 2016
3. What .... does it start? — 2016
4. .... do you listen to music? — 2017

D Write the words. (See pages 33 - 34)

اكتب الكلمات.

انظر إلى الصفحات (34 - 33) بالكتاب المدرسى.

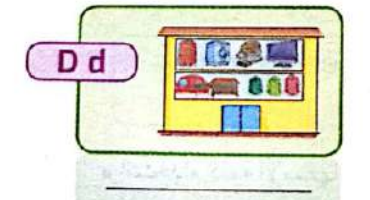
Bb


____________ ____________

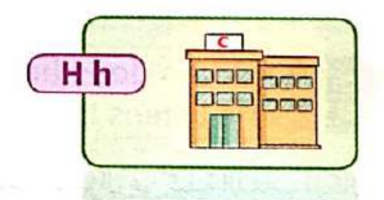
Cc



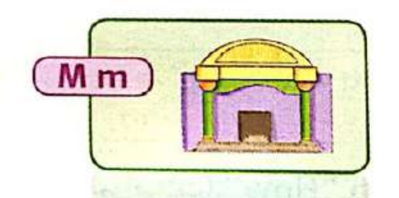
____________ ____________

Dd


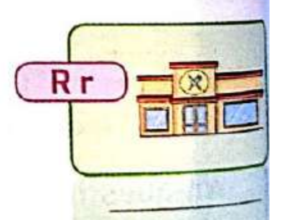
____

Hh


____

Mm


____

Rr


____

Let's say it right



- لاحظ أن حرف (h) فى (When) "silent" لا ينطق.
- لاحظ أن حرف (t) فى (listen) "silent" لا ينطق.
- لاحظ أن حرفى (ck) فى (ticket) ينطقان /k/ (ك).



Workbook

Word Time

A Read and match.

1. 

2. 

3. 

4. 

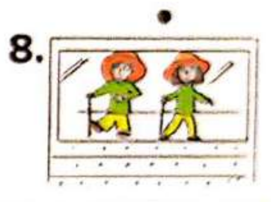
restaurant | department store | bakery | cinema

museum | hospital | chemist's | bookshop

5. 

6. 

7. 

8. 

B Read and write.

1. Is this a restaurant?



No, it isn't. It's a ____________________

____________________.

2. Is this a museum?



____

____

3. Is this a bookshop?



____

____

4. Is this a bakery?



____

____

Word Time

Exercise

1 Listen and complete with one word:

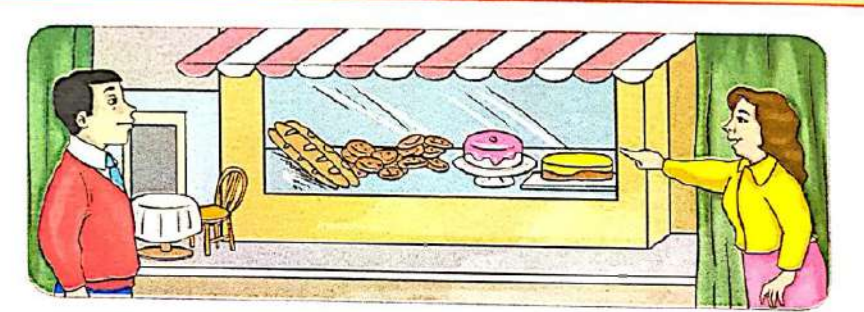
للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب.

Listen

1. I .... in the morning.
2. I .... to work by bus.
3. When .... you listen to music?
4. .... I help you?

2 Read and write (True "T" or False "F"):

2015



		True	False
1.	This is a museum.	[....................]	[....................]
2.	There is a cake.	[....................]	[....................]
3.	There are some books.	[....................]	[....................]
4.	There are some cookies.	[....................]	[....................]

3 Read and circle the odd one:

1.	I	you	they	music	2015
2.	cinema	watch	department store	hospital	2014
3.	spider	bakery	cinema	department store	2017
4.	ticket	listen	exercise	start	2015

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c:

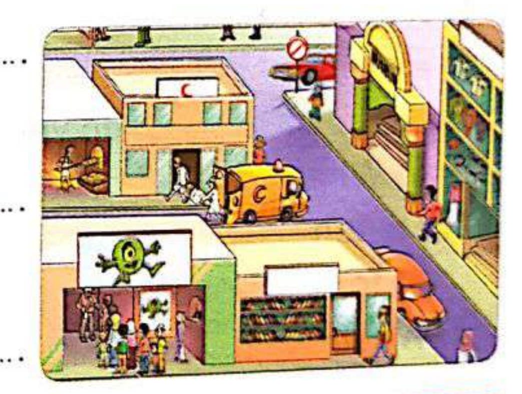
1. I go to work .... aeroplane.
   a) in b) on c) by

2. I'm hungry. Let's go to the .... إدارة الدلنجات 2017
   a) hospital b) restaurant c) cinema

3. I listen to music .... the evening.
   a) on b) in c) at

4. When .... they exercise? إدارة روض الفرج 2015
   a) do b) does c) are

5 Look and write THREE sentences:



• ....

• ....

• ....

6 Punctuate the following:

• let s go to the cinema on monday/

....

إدارة القناطر 2014

Cumulative Exercise (Lessons 1 & 2)

1 Listen and circle the word with the short vowel:

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب.

a. ticket - time b. thank – great c. please – help d. shop - store

2 Read and circle the odd one:

1.	go	play	work	school
2.	morning	museum	night	evening
3.	in	on	by	do
4.	does	Whose	When	Where

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c:

1. Whose wallet is .... ?
   a) these b) this c) those
2. .... do you go to work? - On foot.
   a) When b) What c) How
3. I listen .... music.
   a) to b) on c) by
4. What .... does it start?
   a) colour b) time c) much

4 Look and answer the questions:

1. A : Where are they?
   B : ....
2. A : Is it a chemist's?
   B : ....
3. A : When does he listen to music?
   B : ....
4. A : Whose purse is this?
   B : ....



SB/ WB: P. (17)





A Listen and repeat.

استمع وردد.

I was / They were	at the bookshop.

I wasn't / They weren't	at the hospital.

لاحظ الاختصارات

wasn't = was not
weren't = were not

STRUCTURE

Expressing past location using verb to "be" in the past simple tense:

التعبير عن التواجد فى مكان ما باستخدام فعل "يكون" فى زمن الماضى البسيط:

Affirmative:

الإثبات:

I/He/ She/It/ اسم مفرد	was	at	the place. (المكان)
We/You/They/ اسم جمع	were		

e.g.
- I was at the bookshop.
- We were at the museum.

Negative:

النفى:

I/He/ She/It/ اسم مفرد	was not (wasn't)	at	the place. (المكان)
We/You/They/ اسم جمع	were not (weren't)		

e.g.
- I wasn't at the restaurant.
- We weren't at the hospital.

Note

- دائمًا ما نستخدم الكلمات الآتية للدلالة على الماضى:

- yesterday أمس
- ago منذ
- once ذات مرة
- last (week / month / year ..... etc.) (الأسبوع - الشهر - العام ... إلخ) الماضى

e.g.
- He was at the cinema yesterday.
- They were at the bookshop two days ago.



Choose the correct answer from a, b or c:

1. They .... at the restaurant.
   a) was b) is c) were
2. .... was at the bakery.
   a) They b) She c) We
3. Kareem was .... the chemist's.
   a) at b) to c) on
4. You .... at the bookshop.
   a) wasn't b) weren't c) isn't

B Listen and repeat. Then practise with a partner.

استمع وردد، ثم تدرب مع زميل.

1. We **were** at the museum.
   We **weren't** at the bakery.

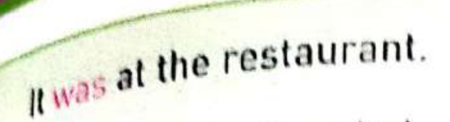


2. He **was** at the bakery.
   He **wasn't** at the museum.



3. They **were** at the hospital.
   They **weren't** at the restaurant.





It was at the restaurant.

4 It wasn't at the hospital.



She was at the cinema.

5 She wasn't at the bookshop.



I was at the bookshop.

6 I wasn't at the cinema.



You were at the department store.

7 You weren't at the chemist's.



I was at the chemist's.

8 I wasn't at the department store.



C Look at page 16. Point to the picture and practise with a partner:

انظر صفحة 16 بالكتاب المدرسى. أشر إلى الصورة وتدرب مع زميل كما فى المثال الآتى:

S1: He was at the chemist's.

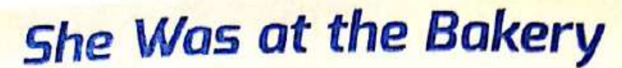
S2: They were at the restaurant.





Listen and chant.

استمع وغنِّ.



She Was at the Bakery



I wasn't at the museum.
She wasn't at the museum.
I wasn't at the hospital.
She wasn't at the hospital.
I wasn't at the bookshop.
She wasn't at the bookshop.
I was at the bakery.
She was at the bakery.
Mm. That sounds good.

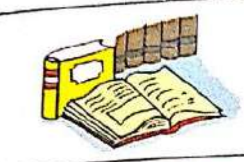
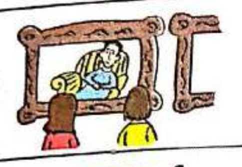
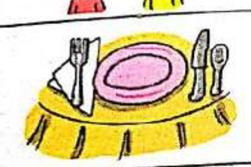
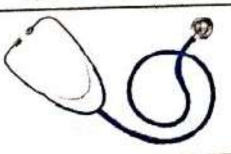


I wasn't at the cinema.
He wasn't at the cinema.
I wasn't at the department store.
He wasn't at the department store.
I wasn't at the chemist's.
He wasn't at the chemist's.
I was at the restaurant.
He was at the restaurant.
Mm. That sounds good.





A Look at the chart. Write.

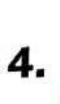
	 9:00	 12:00	 now
			
			
			



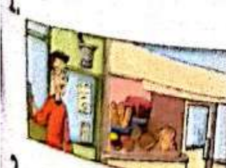
1.  12:00 He was at ________________ the ________________.

2.  9:00 They were ________________ ________________.

3.  now She is ________________ ________________.

4.   9:00 ________________ ________________.

B Look and write.

1.  He was ________________.
He wasn't ________________.

2.  She ________________.
________________.

3.  They ________________.
________________.

4.  She ________________.
________________.

Practice Time
Exercise

1 Read and write (True "T" or False "F"):



		True	False
1.	The girl is carrying two books.	(........)	(........)
2.	She's reading.	(........)	(........)
3.	There are many books.	(........)	(........)
4.	She is at the cinema.	(........)	(........)

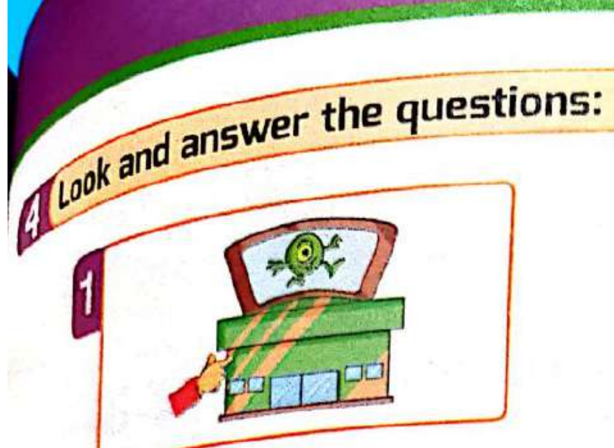
2 Read and circle the odd one:

1.	go	see	cinema	help	2015
2.	English	museum	school	bakery	2017
3.	listen	start	was	exercise	2016
4.	bookshop	chemist's	hospital	play	2016

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c:

1. We .... at the bookshop.
   a) is b) were c) was
2. .... were at the department store. 2017
   a) He b) You c) I
3. She .... at home.
   a) wasn't b) aren't c) weren't
4. .... was at the restaurant. 2017
   a) They b) We c) I

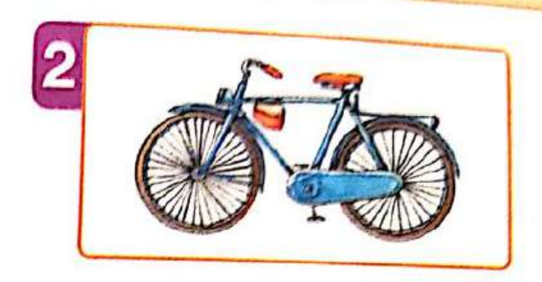
4 Look and answer the questions:



A : Is this a cinema?

B : ....

إدارة المراغة 2015



A : How do you go to school?

B : ....

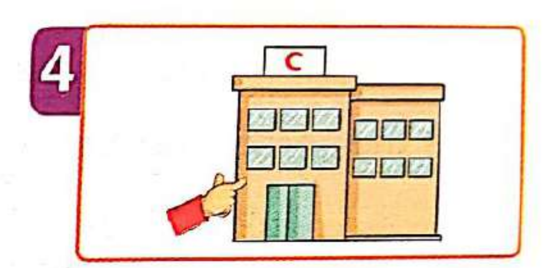
إدارة مصر القديمه 2015



A : Where are they?

B : ....

إدارة وسط الإسكندرية 2015



A : What's this?

B : ....

إدارة المعادى 2017

5 Look and write THREE sentences:



- ....
- ....
- ....

6 Punctuate the following:

- no it wasn t/

....

إدارة السلام 2017

For more exercises لمزيد من التدريبات



Cumulative Exercise
(Lessons 1 → 3)

1 Listen and circle the word with the short vowel:

للاجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب.

a. this - these b. go - on c. hospital - Whose d. see - cinema

2 Listen and complete with one word:

للاجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب.

1. I'm .... now.
2. She .... at the cinema.
3. They were at the ....
4. Is .... your purse?

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c:

1. .... do you go to work? -By car.
   a) Who b) How c) When
2. .... book is mine .
   a) This b) These c) Those
3. What time .... it start?
   a) do b) does c) doing
4. .... I help you?
   a) May b) Are c) Is

4 Look and answer the questions:

1. A : What are these ?
   B : ....
2. A : How much are these?
   B : ....
3. A : Where is he?
   B : ....
4. A : When do you exercise?
   B : ....





SB/ WB: P. (18)

Vocabulary المفردات اللغوية



لاحظ نطق حرفى الـcr فى الكلمات الآتية:




crab كابوريا


cry يبكى


cracker بسكويتة رقيقة


crayon قلم ألوان شمع


cross يعبُر


creek جدول مائى


crane رافعة (ونش)

لاحظ نطق حرفى الـdr فى الكلمات الآتية:

dr /dr/

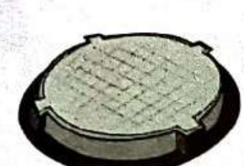

dream حلم/ يحلم

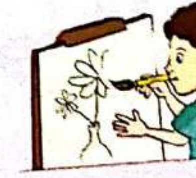

dress فستان


drum طبلة

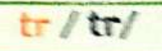

drive يقود


drink يشرب

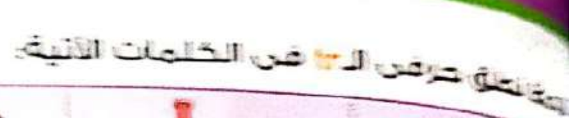

drain بالوعة


draw يرسم



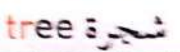


tr /tr/



نطق حرفى الـ tr فى الكلمات الآتية:





tree شجرة



truck شاحنة صغيرة



trade يتبادل





train قطار

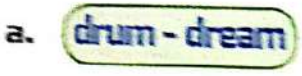


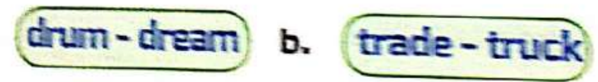
true صحيح



Check-point

Listen and circle the word with the short vowel:





a. drum - dream   b. trade - truck   c. creek - drink   d. crane - cross

A Listen and repeat.

استمع وردد

استمع ولاحظ الفرق بين نطق الـ (cr, dr, tr) فى الكلمات الآتية:



/kr/, /dr/, /tr/



crab



cry



dream



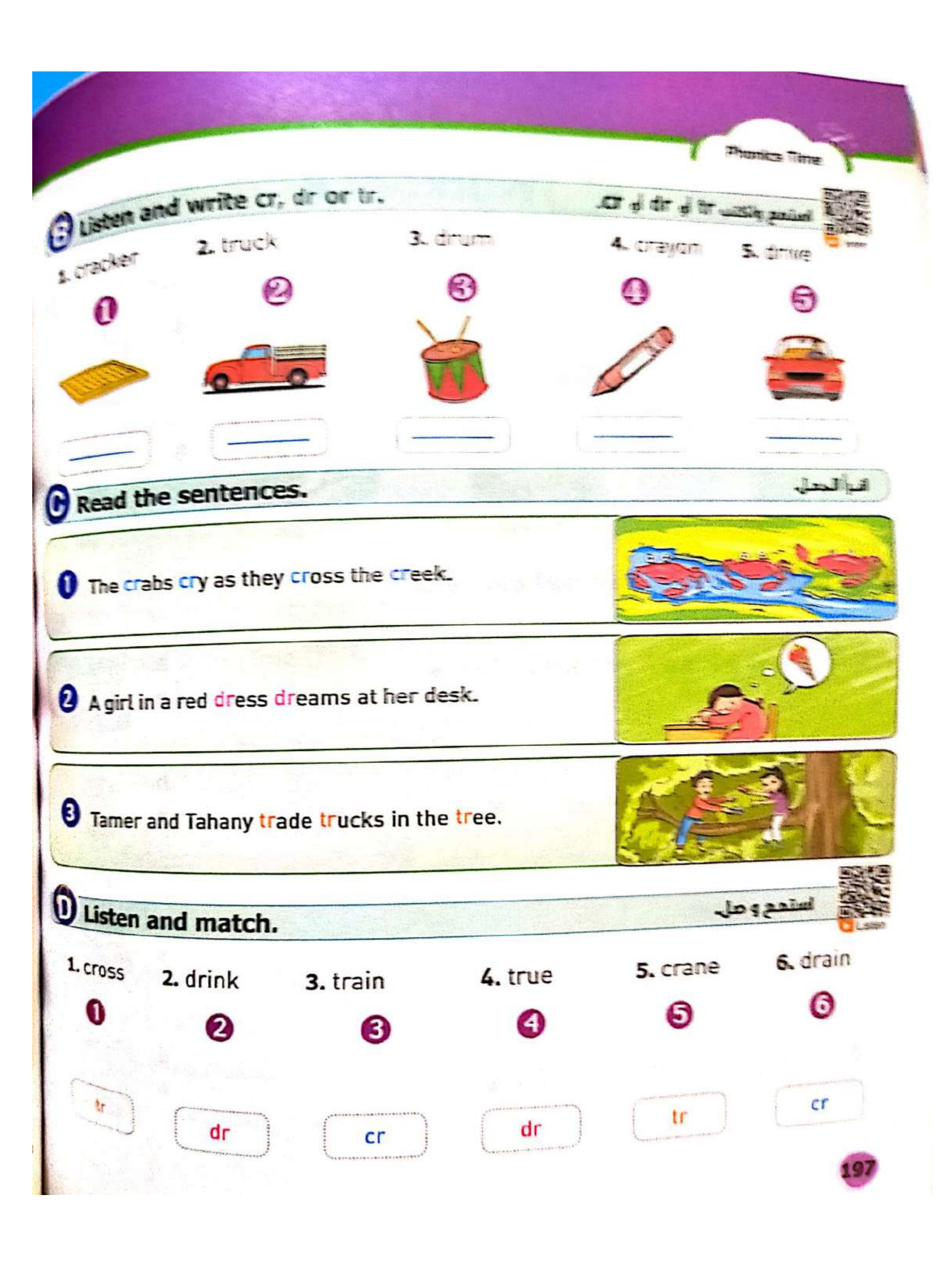
dress



tree



truck



Phonics Time
B Listen and write cr, dr or tr.
استمع واكتب tr أو dr أو cr.
1. cracker
2. truck
3. drum
4. crayon
5. drive
C Read the sentences.
اقرأ الجمل
1 The crabs cry as they cross the creek.
2 A girl in a red dress dreams at her desk.
3 Tamer and Tahany trade trucks in the tree.
D Listen and match.
استمع و صل
1. cross
2. drink
3. train
4. true
5. crane
6. drain
tr
dr
cr
dr
tr
cr
197



Workbook
Phonics Time

A Look and write cr, dr or tr.

1.  ___uck
2.  ___eam
3.  ___ess
4.  ___ee
5.  ___y
6.  ___eek
7.   ___ain
8.  ___aw

B Write cr, dr or tr. Then read and match.

1. The ___ab wants a ___uck and a ___ain. ●
2. The ___ee is next to the ___ain. ●
3. I ___y on my ___ess. ●
4. That's a ___ee. This is a ___eek. ●

a. ●  

b. ●   

c. ●  

d. ●  

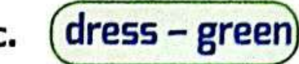
Phonics Time Exercise



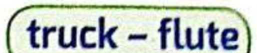
1 Listen and circle the word with the short vowel:

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب.

a. dream – desk
إدارة منشأة القناطر 2016

b. 

إدارة أبو المطامير 2015

c. 

إدارة أبو المطامير 2015

d. truck – flute

2 Listen and complete with one word:

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب.

1. There is a girl in a red ....
2. The .... is green.
3. Ali and Sarah trade ....
4. The .... cross the creek.

3 Read and write (True "T" or False "F"):



	True	False
1. I can see a tree.	(..................)	(..................)
2. The girl is drawing.	(..................)	(..................)
3. I can see two crabs.	(..................)	(..................)
4. There are two boys.	(..................)	(..................)

4 Read and circle the odd one:

1.	dream	dress	drink	drive
2.	bus	cracker	car	truck
3.	trade	drive	cross	drain
4.	creek	ferry	train	underground

5 Look and answer the questions:

1



A : What is it?

B : ....

إدارة [illegible] 2015

2



A : Can you eat it?

B : ....

إدارة [illegible] 2016

3



A : Is it a dress?

B : ....

إدارة فارسكور 2017

4



A : What is she doing?

B : ....

6 Look and write THREE sentences:



- ....
- ....
- ....



For more exercises لمزيد من التدريبات

Cumulative Exercise

(Lessons 1 → 4

1 Read and write (True "T" or False "F"):



	True	False
1. They are at the cinema.	(..............)	(..............)
2. There is a doctor.	(..............)	(..............)
3. The man is sick.	(..............)	(..............)
4. The man is sleeping.	(..............)	(..............)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c:

1. Let's .... to the cinema.
   a) go b) goes c) going
2. Is this .... purse?
   a) you b) yours c) your
3. .... much is that?
   a) What b) How c) Who
4. I go to school .... foot.
   a) on b) in c) by

3 Look and write THREE sentences:



- ....
- ....
- ....

4 Punctuate the following:

- soha and amir weren t at the bakery/ ....



Unit 10 Revision

Conversation Time

Sarah : Look! Whose purse is this? — انظر! لمن حافظة النقود هذه؟

Ali : Maybe it's hers. Let's ask. — ربما تكون ملكها. هيا بنا نسأل.

Sarah : Excuse me. — معذرة.

A woman : Yes? — نعم؟

Sarah : Is this your purse? — هل حافظة النقود هذه تخصك؟

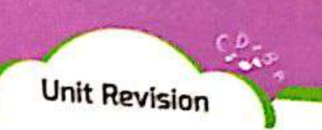
A woman : Yes, it is. Thank you so much. — نعم، إنها كذلك. شكراً جزيلاً.

Sarah : You're welcome. — على الرحب والسعة / العفو.

Word Time

Vocabulary — المفردات اللغوية

museum	متحف	cinema	[illegible]
department store	متجر متعدد الأقسام	hospital	ـشفى
restaurant	مطعم	bookshop	ـبيع كتب
bakery	مخبز	chemist's	[illegible]



Practice Time

Expressing past location using verb to "be" in the past simple tense:

التعبير عن التواجد فى مكان ما باستخدام فعل "يكون" فى زمن الماضى البسيط:

Affirmative: الإثبات:

I /He/ She/It/ اسم مفرد	was	at	the (place). (المكان)
We/You/They/ اسم جمع	were		

e.g.
- I was at the bakery.
- They were at the cinema.

Negative: النفى:

I / He/ She/It/ اسم مفرد	was not (wasn't)	at	the (place). (المكان)
We/You/They/ اسم جمع	were not (weren't)		

e.g.
- He wasn't at the chemist's.
- We weren't at the department store.

Phonics Time

cr/kr/		dr/dr/		tr/tr/	
crab	كابوريا	dream	حلم/ يحلم	tree	شجرة
cry	يبكى	dress	فستان	truck	شاحنة صغيرة
cracker	بسكويتة رقيقة	drum	طبلة	trade	يتبادل
crayon	قلم ألوان شمع	drive	يقود	train	قطار
cross	يعبُر	drink	يشرب	true	صحيح
creek	جدول مائى	drain	بالوعة		
crane	رافعة (ونش)	draw	يرسم		

Writing Time

1 Look and answer the questions: (Answered examples):

هذه الجزئية تساعدك على إجابة السؤال السادس داخل الورقة الامتحانية.

1



A : What is this?

B : It's a drum.

2



A : Where was he?

B : He was at the chemist's.

3



A : Whose purse is this?

B : It's hers.

4



A : What is she wearing?

B : She is wearing a dress.

2 Look and write THREE sentences: (Answered examples):

هذه الجزئية تساعدك على إجابة السؤال السابع داخل الورقة الامتحانية.

a
- They're at the cinema.
- They're watching a film.
- They're happy.



b
- A boy and his mother are in the park.
- The boy wants to buy ice cream.
- It's two pounds each.



c
- There are three red crabs.
- They are crying.
- They are crossing the creek.



Practise Writing

1 Look and answer the questions:

(مجاب عنه)



A : What do you want?

B : ....



A : What can you see?

B : ....



A : Where are they?

B : ....

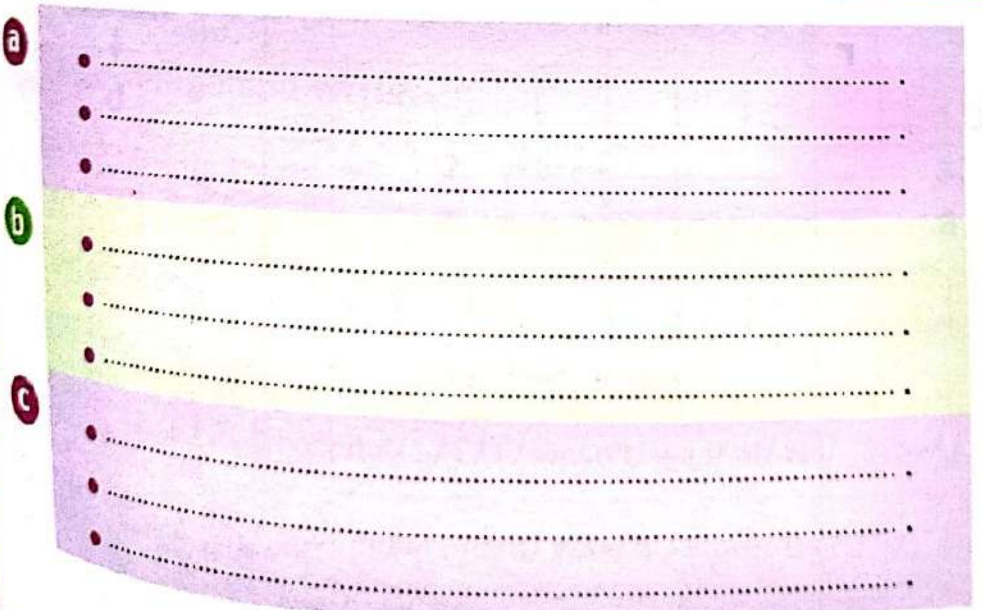


A : What is it?

B : ....

2 Look and write THREE sentences:

(مجاب عنه)



a
- ....
- ....
- ....



b
- ....
- ....
- ....



c
- ....
- ....
- ....



Check Your Vocabulary

Give the meanings in English:

....	يعبُر	....	متحف	....	وسط المدينة
....	قطار	....	مستشفى	....	ملكها
....	يرسم	....	صيدلية	....	يجيب
....	يشرب	....	مخبز	....	يسأل
....	فستان	....	سينما	....	يشكر
....	طبلة	....	متجر متعدد الأقسام	....	لمن/ ملك من....؟
....	رافعة	....	بسكويتة رقيقة	....	قلم ألوان شمع

Complete the puzzle:

r m h b b

c

d



UNIT (10) Test

A Listen and number the pictures.



للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب.





B Does it have cr, dr or tr? Listen and match.

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب.

1. 


2. 

3. 


4. 

5. 


6. 

C Unscramble and write.

1. mmseuu ____________
2. ykbrea ____________
3. shopiatl ____________
4. hmceits's ____________
5. hokobsop ____________
6. rsrnttuaae ____________

D Unscramble and write.

1. 

Were/you/the/cinema/ at/?
____

hospital/ . / I / I / wasn't/ was/ at/ No/ , / the/./
____

2. 

she/ department/ Was/ at/ store/ the/ ?
____

she / , / Yes/ was/ .
____

Unit (10) Test (1)



A. Listening

1 Listen and circle the word with the short vowel:

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب.

a. trade – bag b. truck – museum c. drive – cinema d. creek – help

2 Listen and complete with one word:

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب.

1. I was at the ....
2. The young boy wants ....
3. .... I help you?
4. Thank you so ....

B. Reading

3 Read and write (True "T" or False "F"):

		True	False
1.	There is a girl.	(..........)	(..........)
2.	It's a bakery.	(..........)	(..........)
3.	I can see books.	(..........)	(..........)
4.	We can buy bread at the bakery.	(..........)	(..........)

4 Read and circle the odd one:

1.	great	thank	draw	drive
2.	my	I	his	its
3.	bookshop	restaurant	bakery	drink
4.	When	How	cross	Where

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c:

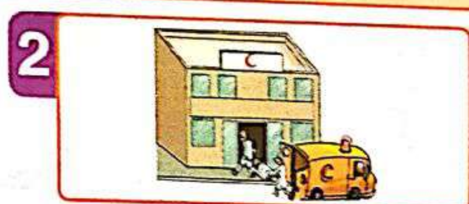
1. I go to work .... foot.
   a) in b) on c) by
2. He .... at the museum.
   a) were b) was c) weren't
3. .... does it start? – 1 : 15
   a) Where b) What c) What time
4. They .... at the bookshop.
   a) weren't b) was c) wasn't

C. Writing

6 Look and answer the questions:

1

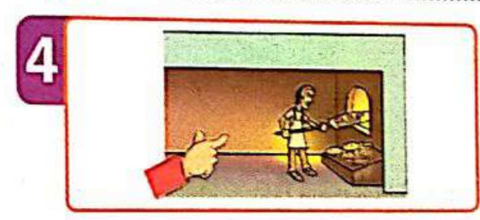

A : What's this?
B : ....

2


A : Where are they?
B : ....

3


A : When does he exercise?
B : ....

4


A : Is this a bakery?
B : ....

7 Look and write THREE sentences:





- ....
- ....
- ....

8 Punctuate the following:

- how do you go to work aliaa/ ....

Unit (10) Test (2)

Selected from Schools' Examinations



A. Listening

1 Listen and circle the word with the short vowel:

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب.

a. dream – dad (إدارة غرب الإسكندرية 2015)   b. green – cap (إدارة نجع حمادى 2015)   c. pen – tree (إدارة نجع حمادى 2015)   d. crab – crane (إدارة بنى سويف 2015)

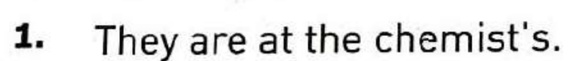
2 Listen and complete with one word:

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب.

1. We buy medicine at the .... (2017)
2. It's two .... (2015)
3. She .... at home. (2017)
4. I'll .... three. (2015)

B. Reading

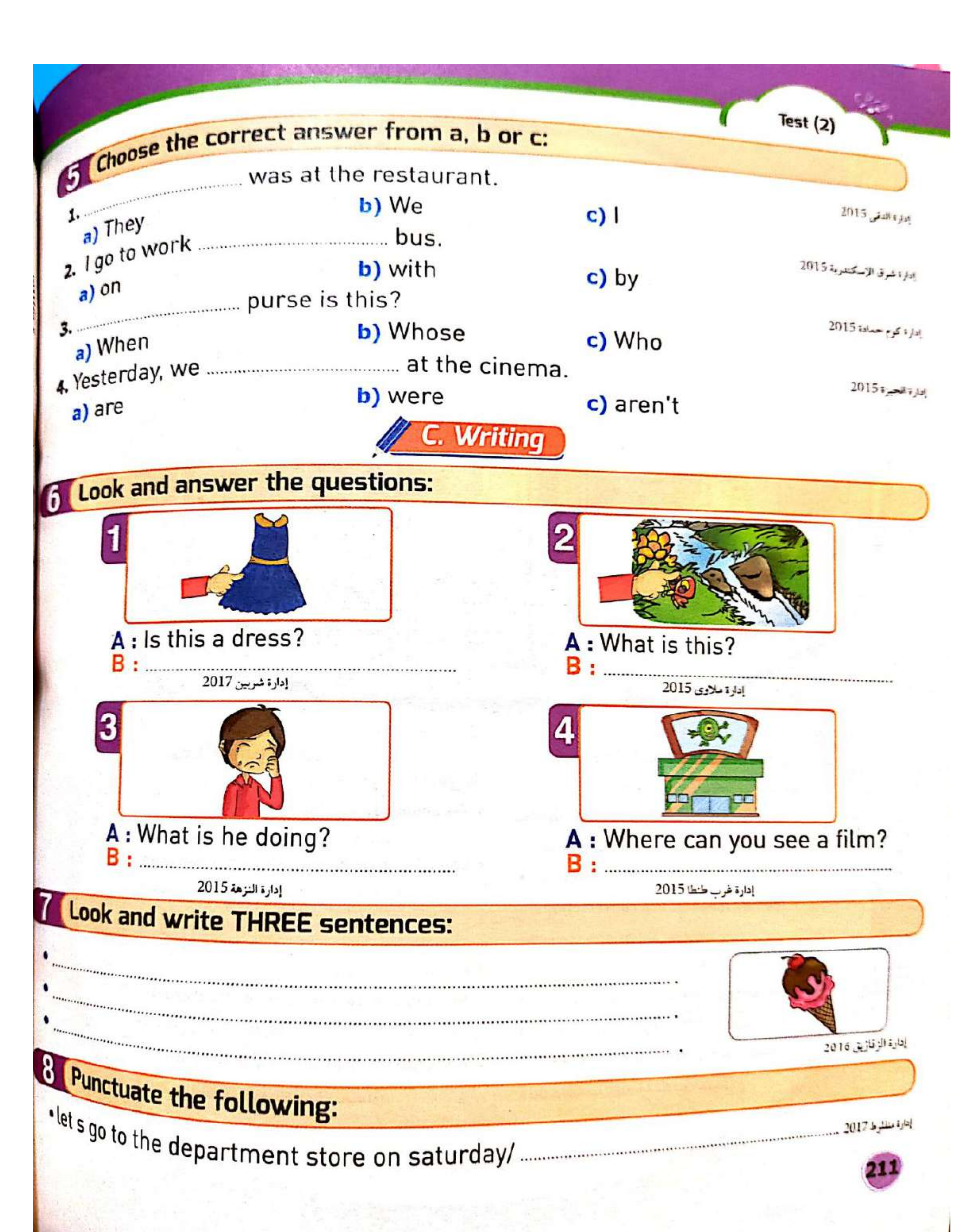
3 Read and write (True "T" or False "F"): (2017)



		True	False
1.	They are at the chemist's.	(..................)	(..................)
2.	I can see some vegetables.	(..................)	(..................)
3.	There is some medicine.	(..................)	(..................)
4.	There are three people.	(..................)	(..................)

4 Read and circle the odd one:

1.	He	Your	She	They
2.	work	listen	cinema	go
3.	What	Whose	Where	this
4.	English	school	cinema	bakery



5 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c:

1. .... was at the restaurant. إدارة الدقي 2015
   a) They b) We c) I
2. I go to work .... bus. إدارة شرق الإسكندرية 2015
   a) on b) with c) by
3. .... purse is this? إدارة كوم حمادة 2015
   a) When b) Whose c) Who
4. Yesterday, we .... at the cinema. إدارة البحيرة 2015
   a) are b) were c) aren't

C. Writing

6 Look and answer the questions:

1. A : Is this a dress?
   B : ....
   إدارة شربين 2017
2. A : What is this?
   B : ....
   إدارة ملاوي 2015
3. A : What is he doing?
   B : ....
   إدارة النزهة 2015
4. A : Where can you see a film?
   B : ....
   إدارة غرب طنطا 2015

7 Look and write THREE sentences:

- ....
- ....
- ....

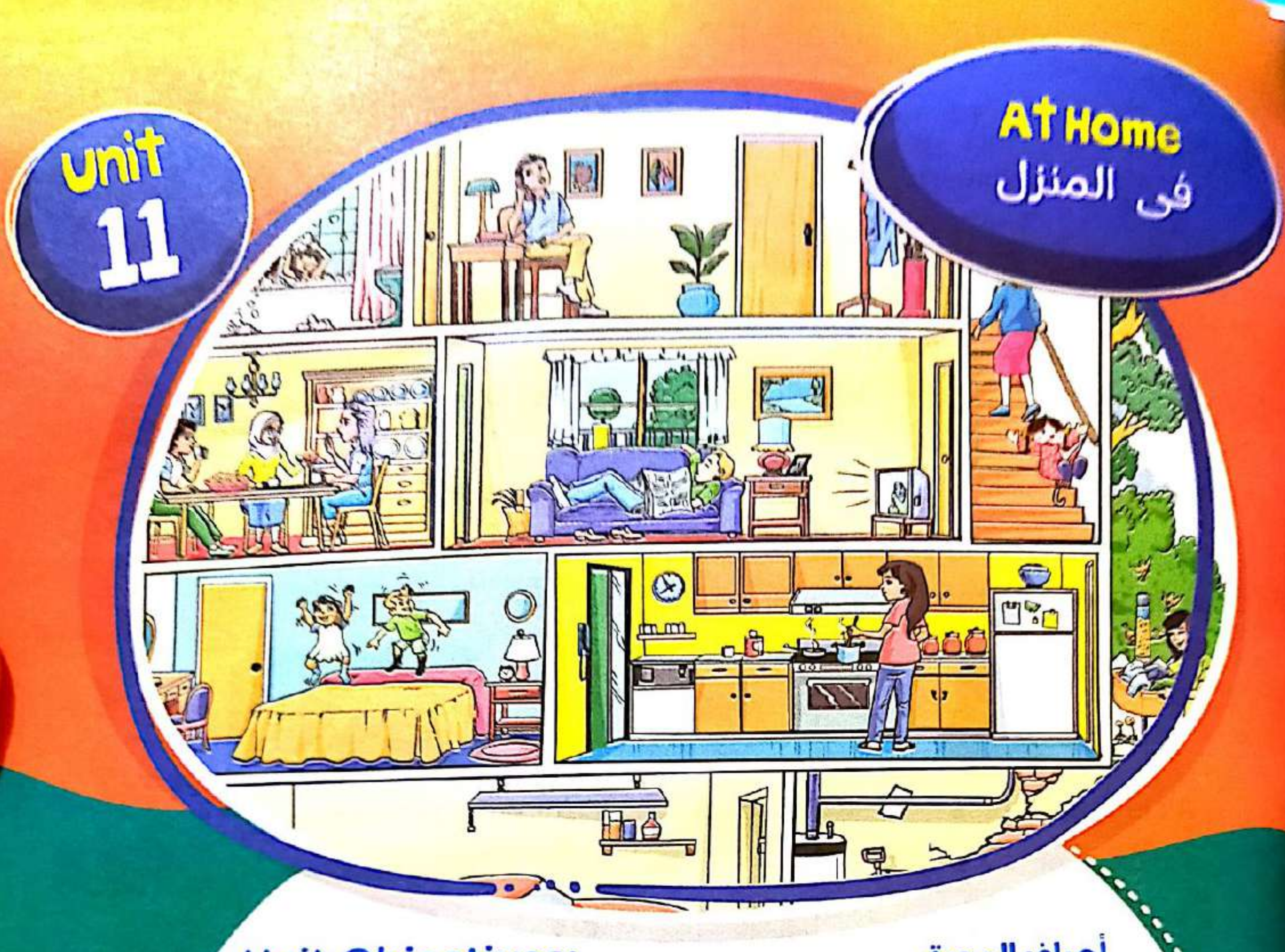
إدارة الزقازيق 2016

8 Punctuate the following:

- let s go to the department store on saturday/ .... إدارة منفلوط 2017

Unit 11

At Home
فى المنزل



Unit Objectives:

أهداف الوحدة:

Conversation Time:

- Express feelings, warnings and wishes.
  - التعبير عن المشاعر والتحذيرات والأمنيـات.
- Make a suggestion. • عمل اقـتراح.
- Identify speakers in a conversation.
  - التعرف إلى المتحدثين فى محادثة.

Word Time:

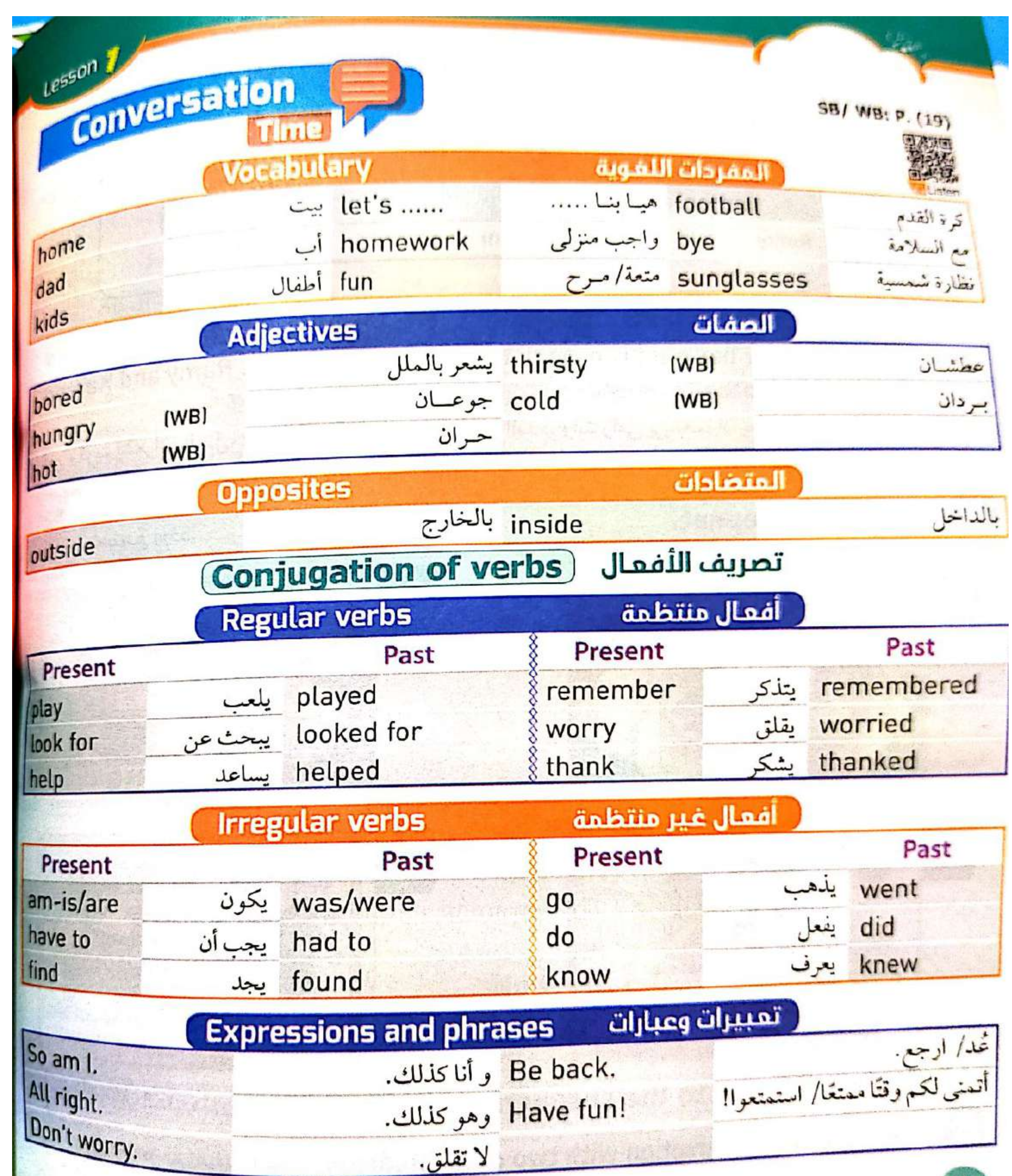
- Write short sentences. • كتابة جمل قصيرة.
- Read short sentences. • قراءة جمل قصيرة.
- Learn vocabulary: Places at home.
  - تعلم المفردات اللغوية : أماكن بالمنزل.

Practice Time:

- Ask about past location.
  - السؤال عن التواجد فى مكان ما فى الماضى.
- Learn Yes/No questions with the simple past tense.
  - تعلم السؤال بـ "هل" فى زمن الماضى البسيط.

Phonics Time:

- Distinguish between sounds of (fl, pl and sl).
  - التمييز بين أصوات "fl, pl, sl".
- Associate sound of letters with written form.
  - الربط بين أصوات الحروف وطريقة كتابتها.



Lesson 1

Conversation Time

SB/ WB: P. (19)

Vocabulary المفردات اللغوية

English	Arabic	English	Arabic	English	Arabic
home	بيت	let's	هيا بنا	football	كرة القدم
dad	أب	homework	واجب منزلي	bye	مع السلامة
kids	أطفال	fun	متعة/ مرح	sunglasses	نظارة شمسية

Adjectives الصفات

English		Arabic	English		Arabic
bored		يشعر بالملل	thirsty	(WB)	عطشان
hungry	(WB)	جوعان	cold	(WB)	بردان
hot	(WB)	حران			

Opposites المتضادات

English	Arabic	English	Arabic
outside	بالخارج	inside	بالداخل

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
play	يلعب	played	remember	يتذكر	remembered
look for	يبحث عن	looked for	worry	يقلق	worried
help	يساعد	helped	thank	يشكر	thanked

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
am-is/are	يكون	was/were	go	يذهب	went
have to	يجب أن	had to	do	يفعل	did
find	يجد	found	know	يعرف	knew

Expressions and phrases تعبيرات وعبارات

English	Arabic	English	Arabic
So am I.	و أنا كذلك.	Be back.	عُد/ ارجع.
All right.	وهو كذلك.	Have fun!	أتمنى لكم وقتًا ممتعًا/ استمتعوا!!
Don't worry.	لا تقلق.		





• Ramy and Kareem are bored. They want to go outside to play football. Ramy's dad wants them to be back at six o'clock to do their homework. Ramy and Kareem are leaving to play football.

• رامى وكريم يشعران بالملل. هما يريدان أن يخرجا ليلعبا كرة القدم. والد رامى يريدهما أن يعودا الساعة السادسة تمامًا لأداء واجبهما المنزلى. رامى وكريم يغادران ليلعبا كرة القدم.

A Listen and repeat.

استمع وردِّد.









B Listen and point to the speakers.

استمع وأشر إلى المتحدثين.

C Role-play the conversation with two other students.

تبادل الأدوار للمحادثة مع زميلين آخرين.



Language Functions

1 Expressing feelings: التعبير عن المشاعر:

Subject (الفاعل) + v. to "be" (am/is/are) + adj. (صفة)

e.g.
A : I'm bored. أنا أشعر بالملل.
B : So am I. وأنـا كذلك.

Note

- للموافقة على الاشتراك فى « صفة » معينة:

So + v. to "be" (am/is/are) + subject (الفاعل)

e.g.
A : I'm bored.
B : So am I.

- So am I. = Me, too.

2 Suggestion: الاقتراح:

Let's + (inf.) مصدر الفعل .... هيا بنا

- Let's play football. هيا بنا نلعب كرة القدم.

3 Giving instructions: إعطاء التعليمات:

لإعطاء التعليمات بفعل شيء ما نبدأ الجملة بمصدر الفعل:

(Inf.) مصدر الفعل ....

e.g.
- Remember, you have to do your homework. تذكر، يجب أن تؤدى/ تقوم بعمل واجبك المنزلى.
- Be back at six. عُد فى الساعة السادسة تمامًا.

Note

have to + (inf.) مصدر الفعل .... يجب أن

e.g.
- You have to do your homework.

4 Expressing wishes:

التعبير عن الأمنيات:

e.g.
- Have fun!

- أتمنى لكم وقتا ممتعاً/ استمتعوا!

5 Asking about information:

السؤال عن معلومة:

e.g.
A : What are you looking for?
B : My sunglasses! I can't find them.

عم تبحث؟
نظارتى! لا أستطيع أن أجدها.

6 Offering help:

عرض المساعدة:

e.g.
A : Don't worry. I'll help you look for them.
B : Okay. Thanks.

لا تقلق. سأساعدك فى البحث عنها.
حسنًا. شكرًا.



Listen and complete with one word:

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب.

1. Dad! We're going .... (2016)
2. .... back at six. (2017)
3. You have to .... your homework. (2016)
4. I'm .... Let's play football. (2017)





Review. Listen and repeat.

راجع. استمع وردد.



 What are you looking for?

 My sunglasses! I can't find them.



 Don't worry. I'll help you look for them.

 Okay. Thanks.





- لاحظ أن حرف (k) فى (know) "silent" لا ينطق.
- لاحظ أن حرفى (ck) فى (back) ينطقان /k/ (ك).
- لاحظ أن حرفى (gh) فى (right) "silent" لا ينطقان.



A Read and write the letter.

____ 1. I'm bored.
So am I. Let's play football.


a.

____ 2. Dad! We're going outside.
Remember, you have to do your homework.


b.

____ 3. I know, Dad.
Be back at six.


c.

____ 4. All right. Bye!
Bye, kids. Have fun!


d.

B Look and write.

thirsty
hungry
cold
hot

1.


2.


3.


4.


Conversation Time

Exercise

1 Listen and complete with one word: 



للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب.

1. All .... Bye! — إدارة منشأة القناطر 2015
2. What .... you looking for? — إدارة روض الفرج 2015
3. Don't .... I'll help you look for them.
4. .... Thanks.

2 Read and write (True "T" or False "F"):

إدارة منشأة القناطر 2015



	True	False
1. The boys are doing their homework.	(..................)	(..................)
2. The man is using the computer.	(..................)	(..................)
3. They're at the park.	(..................)	(..................)
4. The boys are going to play football.	(..................)	(..................)

3 Read and circle the odd one:

1. busy	bad	bored	play	إدارة الشرابية 2017
2. Where	homework	When	What	إدارة نبروه 2017
3. study	tennis	football	basketball	إدارة شبرا 2015
4. watch	help	room	wash	إدارة أكتوبر 2016



4 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c:

1. Let's .... football.
   a) played   b) playing   c) play
2. You .... to do your homework.
   a) have   b) has   c) having
3. I can't .... them.
   a) finding   b) finds   c) find
4. .... fun!
   a) Has   b) Have   c) Are

5 Look and write THREE sentences:

- ....
- ....
- ....

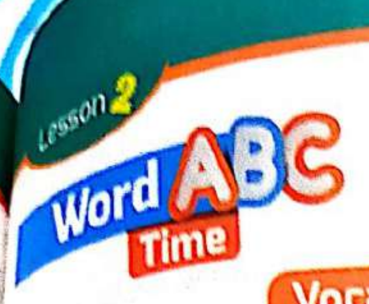
6 Punctuate the following:

- dad! i m going outside/

....

For more exercises لمزيد من التدريبات





Vocabulary المفردات اللغوية



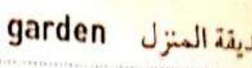
Places at home: أماكن بالمنزل:


bathroom حمَّام


dining room غرفة الطعام


bedroom غرفة النوم

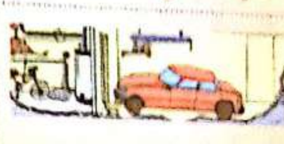

garden حديقة المنزل




hall طرقة (صالة)


living room غرفة المعيشة


kitchen مطبخ


garage جراج

Other words كلمات أخرى

cookie	رقاقة بسكويت	cake	تورتة/ كيك
bed	سرير	please	من فضلك
sure	بالتأكيد		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
want	يريد	wanted	jump	يقفز	jumped

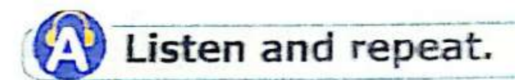
Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past
speak	يتحدث	spoke

Expressions and phrases تعبيرات وعبارات

Sounds good.	يبدو جيدًا.	Sure. Hold on.	بالتأكيد. انتظر على الهاتف.
No problem.	لا توجد مشكلة.		





A Listen and repeat.

استمع وردد.

1. bathroom
2. dining room
3. bedroom
4. garden
5. hall
6. living room
7. kitchen
8. garage

B Point and say the words.

أشر إلى الكلمات وانطقها.



Check-point

Read and circle the odd one:

1.	garage	hall	garden	dad	إدارة مدينة نصر 2016
2.	play	bathroom	kitchen	living room	إدارة أبو النمرس 2016
3.	foot	leg	garage	hand	إدارة شبين الكوم 2017
4.	garden	football	dining room	bedroom	إدارة القناطر 2017

C Listen and point. استمع وأشر.



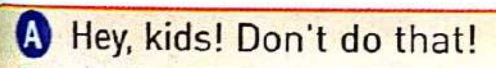
8 Now, listen and point to the speakers. الآن، استمع وأشر إلى المتحدثين.



Watch



A Do you want a cookie?
B No, thanks.
A What about some cake?
B Mm! That sounds good.





A Hey, kids! Don't do that!
B What, Mum?
A Don't jump on the bed!
B Sorry!



A Hello?
B May I speak to Sameh, please?
A Sure. Hold on.
B No problem.





Polite request:

اطلب بطريقة مهذبة:

May I + (inf.) مصدر الفعل .... , **please?** هل يمكنني أن .... ، من فضلك؟

e.g.

A : May I speak to Sameh, please? هل يمكنني أن أتحدث إلى سامح، من فضلك؟

B : Sure. Hold on. بالتأكيد. انتظر على الهاتف.

A : No problem. لا توجد مشكلة.

Check-point

Listen and complete with one word:

للمراجعة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب.

1. What .... some cake?
2. .... I speak to Sameh, please?
3. That .... good.
4. Do you want a ....?

D Write the words. (See pages 33 - 34)

اكتب الكلمات.

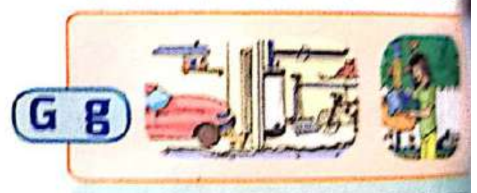
انظر الصفحات (33 - 34) بالكتاب المدرسي.

B b

....

D d

....

G g

....

H h

....

K k

....

L l

....

Let's say it right



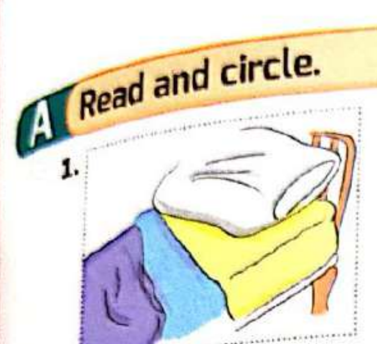
• لاحظ أن حرف (g) فى (garage) ينطق / ʒ / (جـ) أو / dʒ / (دجـ).

• لاحظ أن حرفى (th) فى (bathroom) ينطقان / θ / (ث).

Workbook
Word Time

A Read and circle.

1.



bathroom
garden
bedroom

2.



dining room
garage
hall

3.

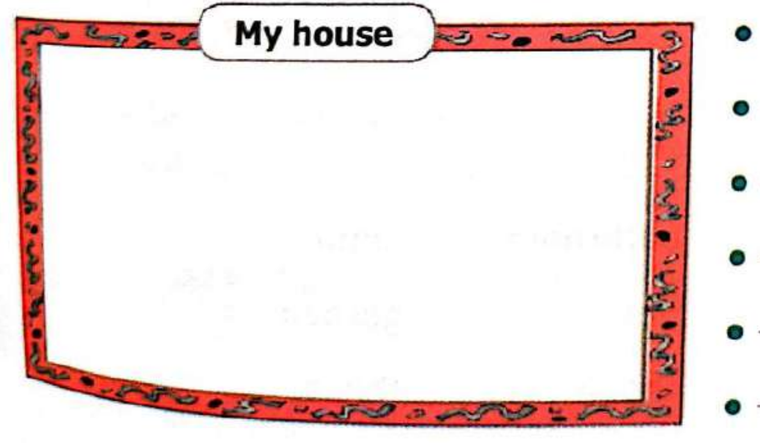


kitchen
living room
bathroom

B Look at Kareem's house. Label the rooms.



C Your turn. Draw your house. Label the rooms.



- ____
- ____
- ____
- ____
- ____
- ____

Word Time

Exercise

1 Listen and complete with one word:

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب.

1. .... jump on the bed!
2. Sure. .... on.
3. Hey! Don't do .... !
4. No ....

2 Read and write (True "T" or False "F"):



		True	False
1.	There is a woman.	(..................)	(..................)
2.	She is watching TV.	(..................)	(..................)
3.	She is cooking.	(..................)	(..................)
4.	She is in the kitchen.	(..................)	(..................)

3 Read and circle the odd one:

1.	kitchen	garden	bathroom	jump
2.	garage	hall	pen	garden
3.	this	they	these	those
4.	cookie	want	speak	jump

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c:

1. Don't .... on the bed!

   a) jumps b) jumping c) jump

2. .... I speak to Sameh, please?

   a) Does b) May c) Are

3. Do you .... a cookie?

   a) want b) play c) help

4. What .... some cake?

   a) of b) about c) on

5 Look and write THREE sentences:



- ....
- ....

- ....

إدارة نبروة 2017

6 Punctuate the following:

- may i speak to mona, please/

....

إدارة الخليفة 2015

Cumulative Exercise

(Lessons 1 & 2)

1 Listen and circle the word with the short vowel:

a. bed - feet b. home - box c. like - kids d. dad - plane

2 Read and circle the odd one:

1.	living room	dining room	kids	bathroom
2.	bored	eat	thirsty	hungry
3.	film	bedroom	garden	living room
4.	Sameh	Khaled	Ali	Manar

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c:

1. Be back .... six.
   a) in b) on c) at
2. We eat in the ....
   a) bedroom b) garage c) dining room
3. You have to .... the kitchen.
   a) cleans b) clean c) cleaning
4. A: I'm .... B: So am I. Let's play football.
   a) bored b) hungry c) thirsty

4 Look and answer the questions:

1 A: Where was he?
B: ....

2 A: What is he doing?
B: ....

3 A: Is it a kitchen?
B: ....

4 A: Where do you sleep?
B: ....



SB/ WB: P. (21)



A Listen and repeat.

استمع وردد.

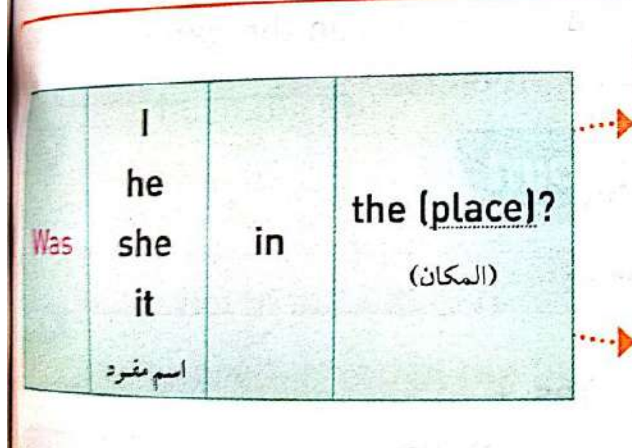
Was she Were they	in the garden?

Yes,	she was. they were.	
No,	she wasn't. She was they weren't. They were	in the hall.

STRUCTURE

Asking about past location using verb to "be" in the past simple tense:

السؤال عن التواجد فى مكان ما باستخدام فعل «يكون» فى زمن الماضى البسيط:



Was	I he she it اسم مفرد	in	the (place)? (المكان)

للإجابة بالإثبات

Yes,	I he she it	was.

للإجابة بالنفى

الإجابة باختصار:

No,	I he she it	wasn't.

الإجابة الكاملة:

No,	I he she it	wasn't.	I He She It	was in the ..(مكان آخر)..

e.g.

A : Was he in the garage?

B : Yes, he was.

e.g.

A : Was she in the garden?

الإجابة المختصرة:

B : No, she wasn't.

or

الإجابة الكاملة:

B : No, she wasn't. She was in the hall.



Were	we you they اسم جمع	in	the (place)? (المكان)

الإجابة بالإثبات: Yes, we / they were.

الإجابة بالنفى:

الإجابة بالاختصار: No, we / they weren't.

الإجابة الكاملة: No, we / they weren't. We / They were in the (مكان آخر).

e.g.
A : Were you in the kitchen?
B : Yes, I was.

e.g.
A : Were they in the dining room?
B : No, they weren't. الإجابة المختصرة:

or

B : No, they weren't. They were in the living room. الإجابة الكاملة:

Note

- لاحظ تحول "Were you" فى السؤال إلى "I was" أو "We were" فى الإجابة.

e.g.
A : Were you in the hall?
B : Yes, I was.

e.g.
A : Were you in the garden?
B : Yes, we were.



Choose the correct answer from a, b or c:

1. Were you in the bathroom this morning? - Yes, I ....
   a) were   b) was   c) am
2. Was she in the garden? - Yes, she ....
   a) was   b) wasn't   c) were
3. .... they in the hall?
   a) Is   b) Were   c) Was
4. Was .... in the bathroom?
   a) they   b) you   c) he



B Listen and repeat. Then practise with a partner. استمع وردد. ثم تدرب مع زميل.



1. Were they in the bathroom?
   Yes, they were.



2. Was she in the living room?
   No, she wasn't. She was in the kitchen.



3. Was it in the garage?
   Yes, it was.



4. Were they in the dining room?
   Yes, they were.



5. Was he in the hall?
   Yes, he was.



6. Were you in the kitchen?
   No, I wasn't. I was in the living room.



7. Were you in the bedroom?
   Yes, we were.



8. Was she in the bathroom?
   No, she wasn't. She was in the garden.



C Look at page 20. Point to the picture and practise with a partner:

انظر صفحة 20 بالكتاب المدرسى. أشر إلى الصورة وتدرب مع زميل كما فى المثال الآتى:

e.g.

S1: Were they in the bathroom?

S2: Yes, they were.



D Listen and sing along.

استمع وغن.

Were You in the Living Room?

Were you in the living room?
The living room? The living room?
Were you in the living room?
No, I wasn't. I was in the garden!
Was he in the living room?
The living room? The living room?
Was he in the living room?
No, he wasn't. He was in the garden!

Were you in the dining room?
The dining room? The dining room?
Were you in the dining room?
No, we weren't. We were in the hall!
Were they in the dining room?
The dining room? The dining room?
Were they in the dining room?
No, they weren't. They were in the hall!







Workbook
Practice Time

A Read and write.

1. Were they in the garden?
Yes, they were.

2. Was she in the bathroom?

3. Was he in the kitchen?

4. Was she in the hall?

B Write the questions and answers.

1. Was she in the bedroom?

2. Was he in the hall?

3. Was she in the kitchen?

4. Was he in the garden?

5. Yes, ________.

6. Yes, ________.

Practice Time
Exercise

1 Read and write (True "T" or False "F"):



		True	False
1.	She is in the living room.	[..........]	[..........]
2.	She is cooking.	[..........]	[..........]
3.	She is watching TV.	[..........]	[..........]
4.	She is in the kitchen.	[..........]	[..........]

إدارة شربين 2017

2 Read and circle the odd one:

1.	dad	boy	find	girl
2.	piano	bathroom	bedroom	living room
3.	go	garden	run	sleep
4.	What	Where	How	were

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c:

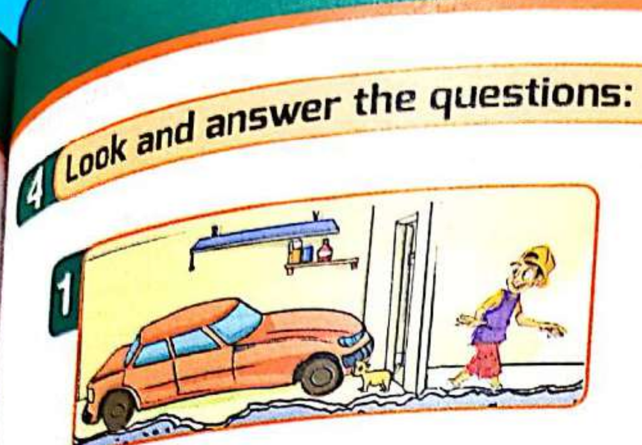
1. .... was in the restaurant.
   a) They b) We c) She

2. Was she in the garden? - Yes, she ....
   a) were b) was c) wasn't

3. .... you at the cinema?
   a) Was b) Were c) Is

4. No, I wasn't. I .... in the kitchen.
   a) isn't b) wasn't c) was

4 Look and answer the questions:



1

A : Where was he?

B : ....



2

A : Were they in the living room?

B : ....



3

A : Was she in the dining room?

B : ....



4

A : Was he in the kitchen?

B : ....

5 Look and write THREE sentences:

إدارة سمالوط 2017



- ....
- ....
- ....

6 Punctuate the following:

- i met fatma on monday/

....

إدارة شرق المنصورة 2017

For more exercises لمزيد من التدريبات





Cumulative Exercise
(Lessons 1 → 3

1 Listen and circle the word with the short vowel:

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب.

a. ox - home b. kite - kitchen c. garden - bed d. room - bored

2 Listen and complete with one word:

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب.

1. Was she in the .... room?
2. I ....football on Friday.
3. We're .... outside.
4. May I ....to Ali, please?

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c:

1. Hey! Don't do .... !
   a) that b) these c) those
2. We .... in the dining room.
   a) eat b) cook c) wash
3. She was .... the garden.
   a) of b) on c) in
4. We sleep in the ....
   a) bathroom b) bedroom c) garage

4 Look and answer the questions:

1
A : Were they in the bathroom?
B : ....

2
A : Where can you see it?
B : ....

3
A : Is this a living room?
B : ....

4
A : Was he in the hall?
B : ....



SB/ WB: P. (22)

Vocabulary المفردات اللغوية



لاحظ نطق حرفى الـ (fl) فى الكلمات الآتيـة:

fl /fl/



flag علم



flea برغوث



flat شقة



fly ذبابة/ يطير



float يطفو



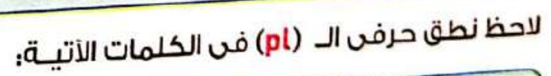
flower زهرة



flute فلوت (آلة نفخ موسيقية)



flake قشرة



لاحظ نطق حرفى الـ (pl) فى الكلمات الآتيـة:

pl /pl/



play يلعب



plums برقـوق

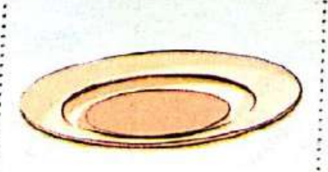


plate طبـق



plant نبـات

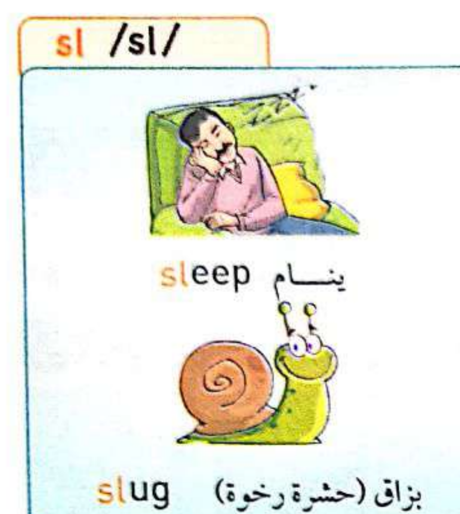


aeroplane طائرة



sl /sl/

لاحظ نطق حرفى الـ (sl) فى الكلمات الآتيـة:



sleep ينـــام

slug بزاق (حشرة رخوة)



slide زحليقة

slow بطـــىء

slipper شبشب

sleeve كُم (الرداء)



Listen and circle the word with the short vowel:

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب.

a. film - slide (إدارة الشرابيــة 2016)

b. sleeve - hen (إدارة أجــا 2017)

c. play - flag (إدارة الشرابية 2017)

d. gum - flute (إدارة شمال 2016)



Listen and repeat.

استمع وردد.

استمع ولاحظ الفرق بين نطق الـ(sl - pl - fl) فى الكلمات الآتية:



/fl/, /pl/, /sl/



flag

fly



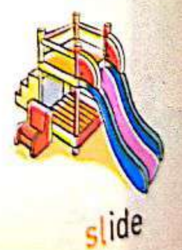
play



plum



sleep



slide



B Listen and circle fl, pl or sl.

استمع وضع دائرة حول sl أو pl أو fl.

1. plate
2. flute
3. sleep
4. plant
5. flea

1  fl pl sl

2   fl pl sl

3  fl pl sl

4  fl pl sl

5 fl pl sl

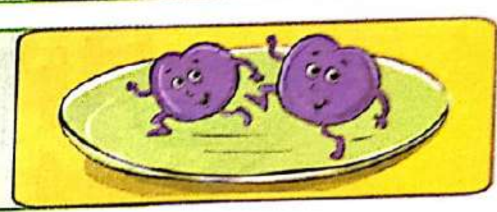
C Read the sentences.

اقرأ الجمل.

1. The fly and the flea float on the flag.



2. The plums play on the plate.



3. The slug sleeps on the slide.





D Listen and write fl, pl or sl.

استمع واكتب sl أو pl أو fl.

1. play
2. slow
3. flake
4. sleeve
5. flat

1. ______ay
2. ______ow
3. ______ake
4. ______eeve
5. ______at



Phonics Time

A Circle and write.

1.


sl

pl

__eep

2.


fl

pl

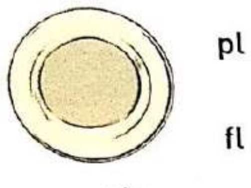
aero__ane

3.


fl

sl

__oat

4.


pl

fl

__ate

5.


fl

sl

__ide

6.


pl

fl

__ag

B Look, read and tick "True or False".



	True	False
1. The cat is playing with a slug.	☐	☐
2. The man is sleeping.	☐	☐
3. There are flowers on the table.	☐	☐
4. There is a plate on the slide.	☐	☐

Now write your own sentence. Then tick "True or False".

____ ☐ ☐

Phonics Time
Exercise

1 Listen and circle the word with the short vowel:



للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب.



a. prune - plum — إدارة منشأة القناطر 2015

b. slide - slipper — إدارة الهرم 2016

c. slug - float — إدارة عزبة البرج 2015

d. smell - smile — إدارة بنى مزار 2015

2 Listen and complete with one word:

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب.

1. The ship and the boat .... on the sea.
2. The plums play on the ....
3. The slug sleeps on the ....
4. The man is ....

Read and write (True "T" or False "F"):



	True	False
1. There is a flea.	(..................)	(..................)
2. There is a cat on the flag.	(..................)	(..................)
3. There is a fly.	(..................)	(..................)
4. There are two books.	(..................)	(..................)

4 Read and circle the odd one:

1.	eat	fly	flag	play
2.	sleep	flower	tree	grass
3.	smell	speak	spell	spring
4.	slug	slippers	flea	fly

5 Look and answer the questions:

1

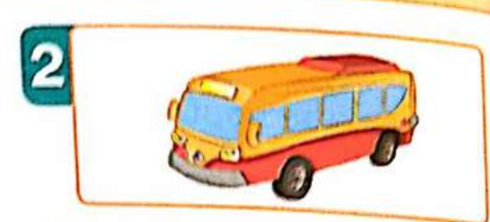


A : What is this?

B : ....

إدارة الوايلى 2016

2



A : Is it an aeroplane?

B : ....

إدارة هليوبلس 2016

3



A : Is this a flea?

B : ....

إدارة طلخا 2017

4



A : What is he doing?

B : ....

إدارة الجمرك 2017

6 Look and write THREE sentences:

- ....
- ....
- ....



For more exercises لمزيد من التدريبات



Cumulative Exercise
Lessons 1 → 4

1 Read and write (True "T" or False "F"):



	True	False
1. There are two windows.	(..................)	(..................)
2. The man is watching TV.	(..................)	(..................)
3. There are two pictures.	(..................)	(..................)
4. There is a table.	(..................)	(..................)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c:

1. He .... at home.
   a) were b) was c) weren't
2. A: I am bored. B: So .... I.
   a) is b) are c) am
3. .... you in the garden?
   a) Were b) Was c) Is
4. A: Where do you .... ? B: In the bedroom.
   a) sleep b) cook c) play

3 Look and write THREE sentences:



- ....
- ....
- ....

4 Punctuate the following:

- were hani and abeer in the kitchen/ ....



Unit 11 Revision

Conversation Time

Ramy	:	I'm bored	- أنا أشعر بالملل.
Kareem	:	So am I. Let's play football.	- وأنا كذلك. هيا بنا نلعب كرة القدم.
Ramy	:	Dad! We're going outside.	- أبي! نحن ذاهبين للخـارج.
Ramy's dad	:	Remember, you have to do your homework.	- تذكر، يجب أن تؤدى واجبك المنزلى.
Ramy	:	I know, Dad	- أنا أعرف، يا أبى.
Ramy's dad	:	Be back at six.	- عُدْ فى الساعة السادسة تمامًا.
Ramy	:	All right. Bye!	- وهو كذلك. مع السلامة!
Ramy's dad	:	Bye, kids. Have fun!	- مع السلامة، يا أطفال. استمتعوا!

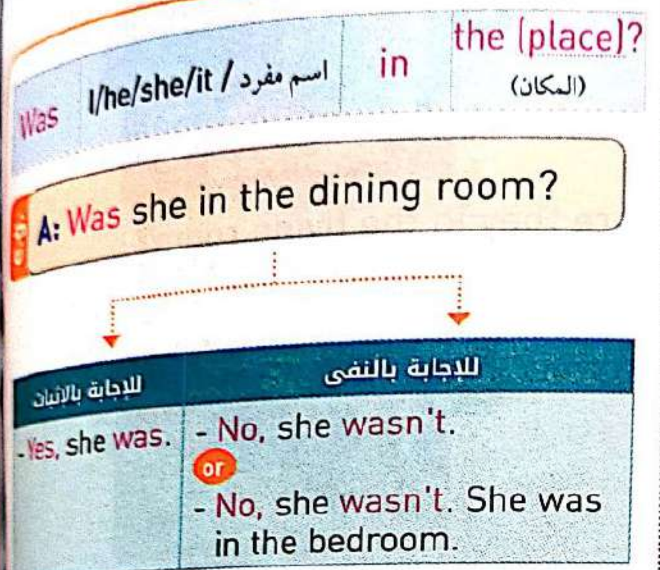
Word Time

Vocabulary	المفردات اللغوية		
bathroom	حمَّـــام	dining room	ة الطعـام
bedroom	غرفـة النـوم	garden	بة المنزل
hall	طرقة (صالة)	living room	ة المعيشة
kitchen	مطبخ	garage	

Practice Time

Asking about past location using verb to "be" in the past simple tense:

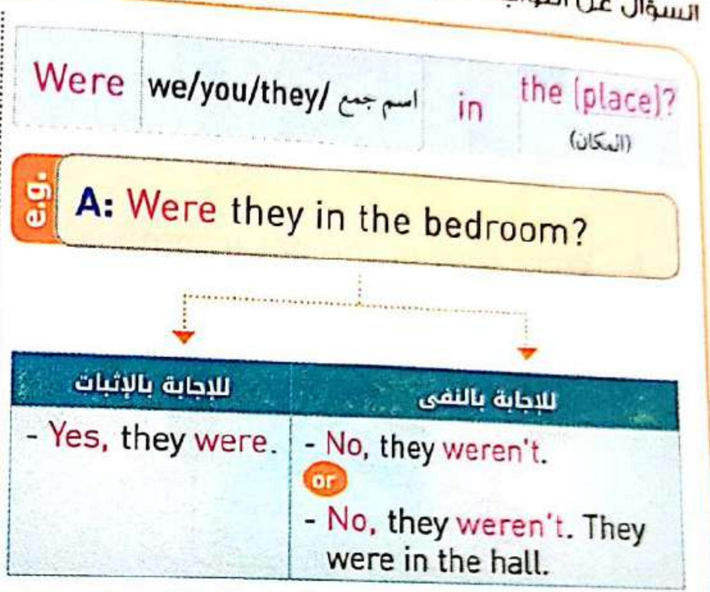
السؤال عن التواجد في مكان ما باستخدام فعل «يكون» في زمن الماضي البسيط:



Was	I/he/she/it / اسم مفرد	in	the (place)? (المكان)

e.g. A: Was she in the dining room?

للإجابة بالإثبات	للإجابة بالنفي
- Yes, she was.	- No, she wasn't. or - No, she wasn't. She was in the bedroom.



Were	we/you/they/ اسم جمع	in	the (place)? (المكان)

e.g. A: Were they in the bedroom?

للإجابة بالإثبات	للإجابة بالنفي
- Yes, they were.	- No, they weren't. or - No, they weren't. They were in the hall.

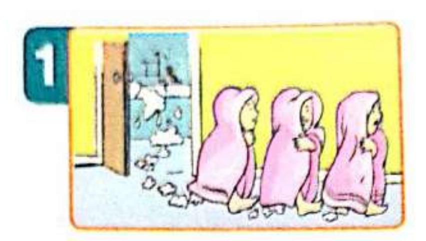
Phonics Time

fl /fl/		pl /pl/		sl /sl/	
ag	علم	play	يلعب	sleep	ينام
y	ذبابة/ يطير	plums	برقوق	slide	زحليقة
ute	فلوت (آلة نفخ موسيقية)	plate	طبق	slipper	شبشب
ea	برغوث	plant	نبات	slug	بزاق (حشرة رخوة)
oat	يطفو	aeroplane	طائرة	slow	بطيء
ake	قشرة			sleeve	كم (الرداء)
at	شقة				
ower	زهرة				

Writing Time

1 Look and answer the questions: (Answered examples):

... الحرفية تساعدك على إجابة السؤال السادس داخل الورقة الامتحانية



A : Were they in the bathroom?

B : Yes, they were.



A : Are they in the living room?

B : No, they aren't. They're in the bedroom.



A : What is this?

B : It's a flag.



A : Where are they?

B : They're at home.

2 Look and write THREE sentences: (Answered examples):

... تساعدك على إجابة السؤال السابع داخل الورقة الامتحانية.



a
- They're in the dining room.
- They're eating cookies.
- They're happy.



b
- There is a boy in the living room.
- He is watching TV.
- He is eating pizza.



c
- There is a man using the computer.
- Ramy and Kareem are bored.
- They want to play football.

Practise Writing

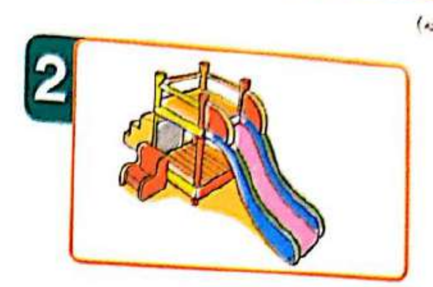
1 Look and answer the questions:

(مجاب عنه)



A : Where were they?

B : ....



A : What can you see?

B : ....



A : What is this?

B : ....

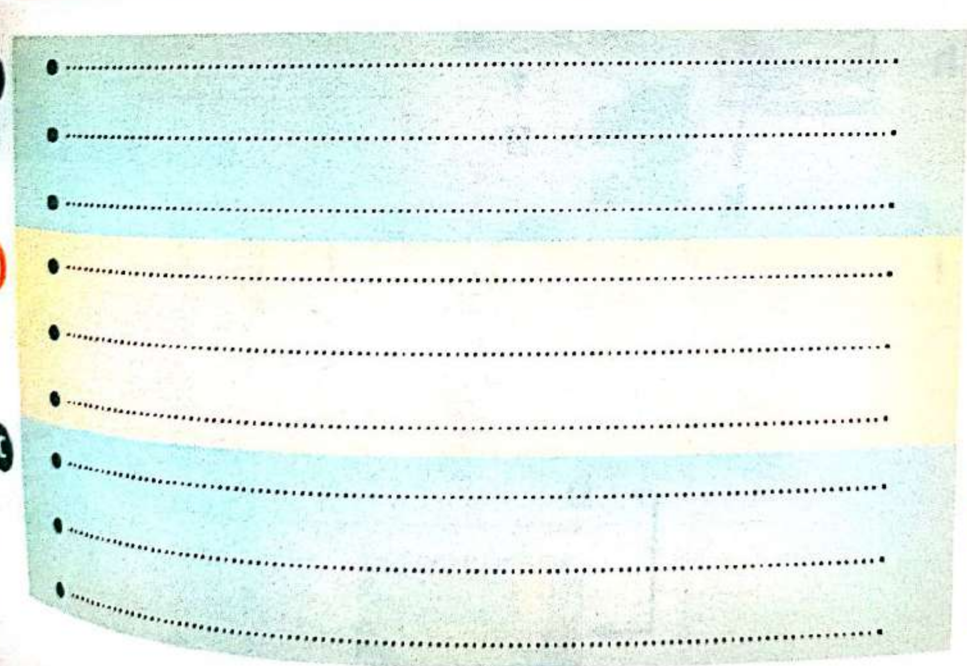


A : Was he in the garage?

B : ....

2 Look and write THREE sentences:

(مجاب عنه)



a
- ....
- ....
- ....

b
- ....
- ....
- ....

c
- ....
- ....
- ....





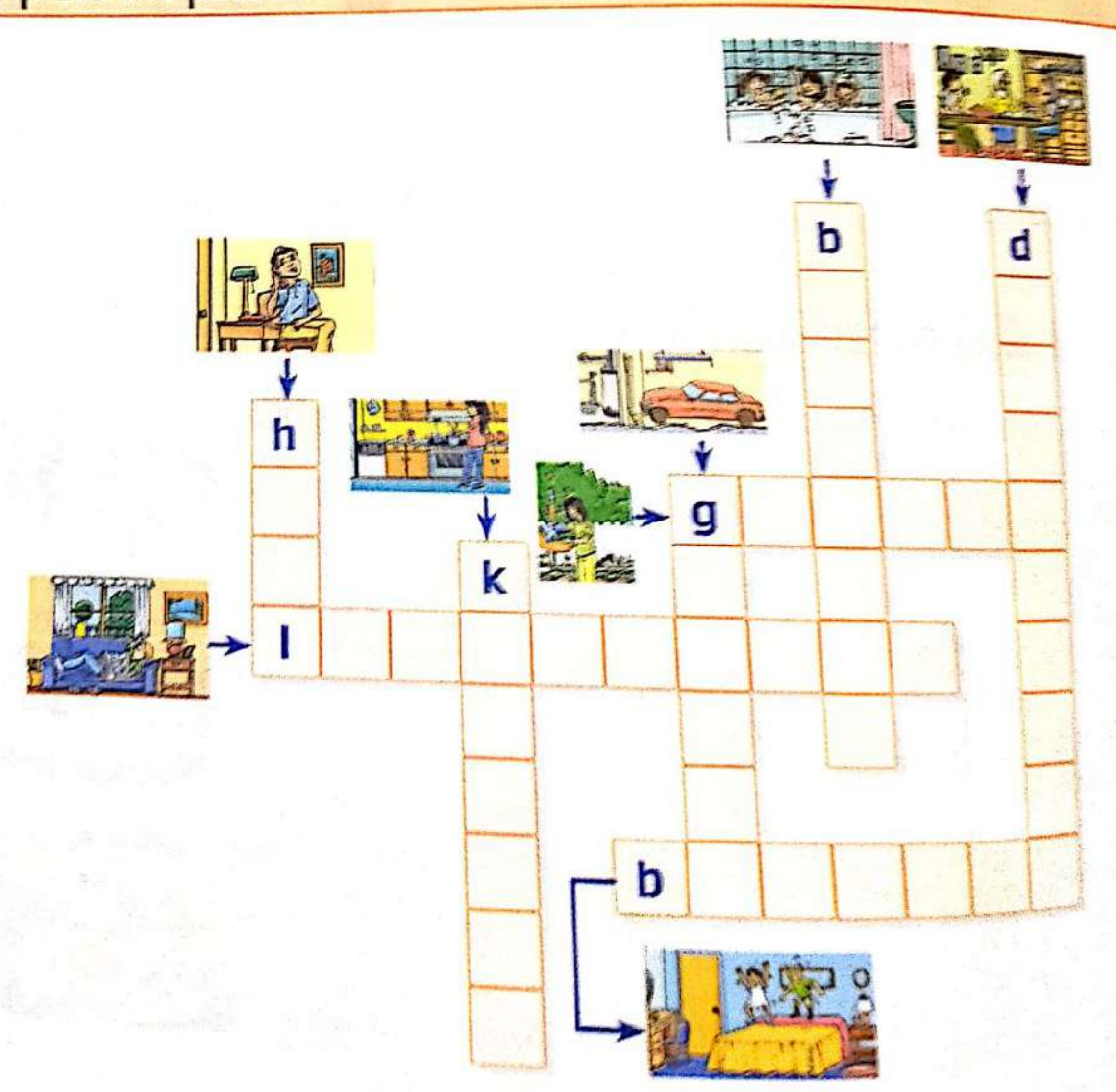


Check Your Vocabulary

Give the meanings in English:

....	يلعب كرة القدم	....	يشعر بالملل	....	[illegible]
....	يبحث عن	....	استمتعوا !	....	[illegible]
....	مطبخ	....	رحلة	....	[illegible]
....	علم	....	حديقة المنزل	....	[illegible]
....	يطفو	....	صالة (طرقة)	....	[illegible]
....	طائرة	....	ضيق	....	[illegible]
....	حمّام	....	فلوت (آلة نفخ موسيقية)	....	[illegible]

Complete the puzzle:



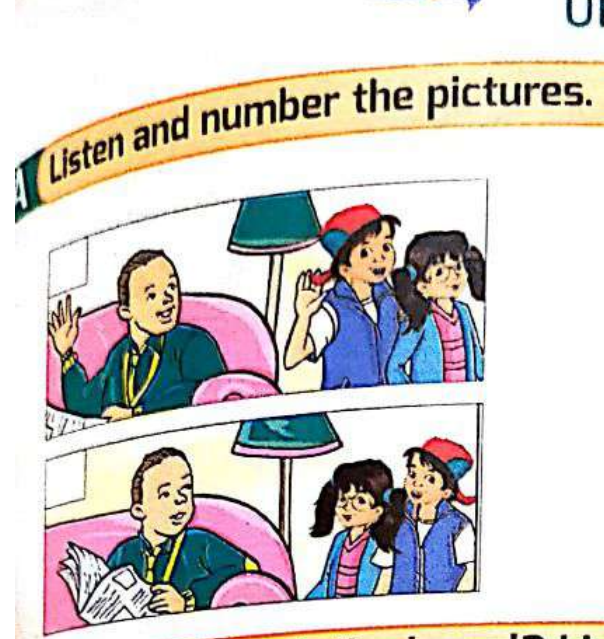


UNIT (11) Test

A Listen and number the pictures.











B Does it begin with fl, pl or sl? Listen and write.

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب.

1. ________ 2. ________ 3. ________ 4. ________ 5. ________ 6. ________

C Unscramble and write.

1. nindgi orom ________________
2. moobarth ________________
3. bodmoer ________________
4. niilvg moor ________________
5. chkenit ________________
6. ragega ________________
7. allh ________________
8. drnega ________________

D Look and write.

1. 

________ bedroom?

____

____

2. 

____

____

Yes, ________________.

3. 

________________ kitchen?

____

____

Unit (11) Test (1)

A. Listening

1 Listen and circle the word with the short vowel:

للاجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب

a. slide - kitchen b. flute - slug c. hot - float d. sleep - bed

2 Listen and complete with one word:

للاجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب

1. .... Kareem and Ramy bored?
2. My father's car is in the ....
3. Mona is .... in the bedroom.
4. .... play football.

B. Reading

3 Read and write (True "T" or False "F"):



	True	False
1. She is cooking.	(..........)	(..........)
2. She is in the kitchen.	(..........)	(..........)
3. There are two fridges.	(..........)	(..........)
4. There is a clock on the wall.	(..........)	(..........)

4 Read and circle the odd one:

1.	bedroom	slide	living room	bathroom
2.	play	sleep	know	sleeve
3.	good	bored	jump	hungry
4.	plate	aeroplane	bus	taxi

Unit (11) Test (1)

A. Listening

1 Listen and circle the word with the short vowel:

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب.

a. slide - kitchen b. flute - slug c. hot - float d. sleep - bed

2 Listen and complete with one word:

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب.

1. .... Kareem and Ramy bored?
2. My father's car is in the ....
3. Mona is .... in the bedroom.
4. .... play football.

B. Reading

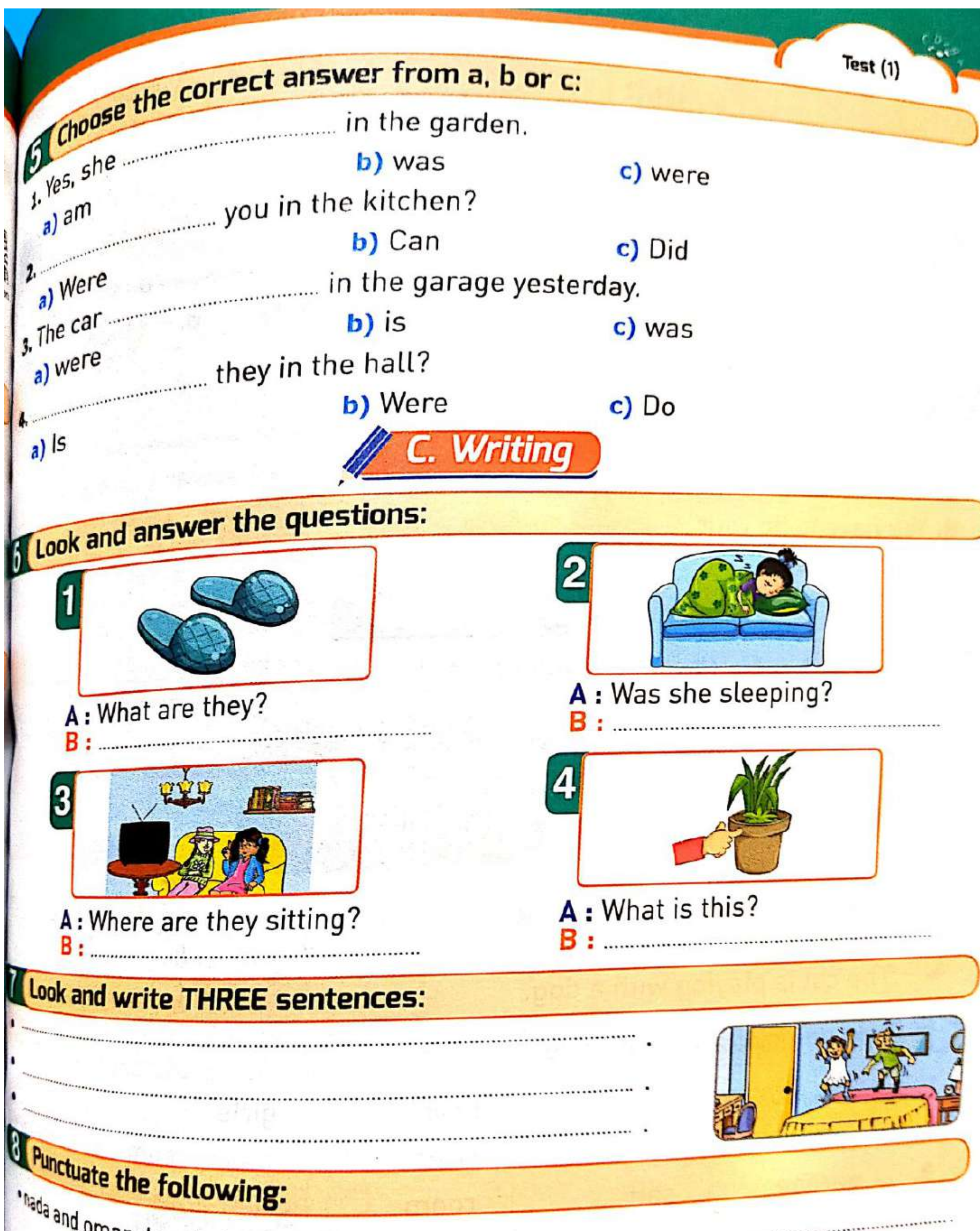
3 Read and write (True "T" or False "F"):



		True	False
1.	She is cooking.	(..........)	(..........)
2.	She is in the kitchen.	(..........)	(..........)
3.	There are two fridges.	(..........)	(..........)
4.	There is a clock on the wall.	(..........)	(..........)

4 Read and circle the odd one:

1.	bedroom	slide	living room	bathroom
2.	play	sleep	know	sleeve
3.	good	bored	jump	hungry
4.	plate	aeroplane	bus	taxi



5 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c:

1. Yes, she .... in the garden.
   a) am   b) was   c) were
2. .... you in the kitchen?
   a) Were   b) Can   c) Did
3. The car .... in the garage yesterday.
   a) were   b) is   c) was
4. .... they in the hall?
   a) Is   b) Were   c) Do

C. Writing

6 Look and answer the questions:

1
A : What are they?
B : ....

2
A : Was she sleeping?
B : ....

3
A : Where are they sitting?
B : ....

4
A : What is this?
B : ....

7 Look and write THREE sentences:

- ....
- ....
- ....

8 Punctuate the following:

- nada and omar don t play football/ ....

Unit (11) Test (2)

Selected from Schools' Examinations

A. Listening

1 Listen and circle the word with the short vowel:

للاجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب.

a. plum - blue (إدارة النزهة 2016) b. cake - slipper (إدارة الدقي 2015) c. kid - play (إدارة غرب طنطا 2016) d. look - know



2 Listen and complete with one word:

للاجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب.

1. She .... at home.
2. I'm watching TV in the .... room.
3. You have to do your ....
4. That sounds ....

B. Reading

3 Read and write (True "T" or False "F"):



		True	False
1.	The boy is sleeping.	(..........)	(..........)
2.	There are flowers on the table.	(..........)	(..........)
3.	There is a book on the chair.	(..........)	(..........)
4.	The cat is playing with a dog.	(..........)	(..........)

4 Read and circle the odd one:

1.	kids	flag	boys	girls
2.	bathroom	bedroom	river	dining room
3.	garage	salt	room	hall
4.	train	aeroplane	bus	garage

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c:

1. .... was in the garage. إدارة 2015
   a) They b) We c) I
2. May I .... to Hoda, please? إدارة 2015
   a) speak b) speaks c) speaking
3. My mother .... in the kitchen. إدارة شبين الكوم 2015
   a) are b) is c) were
4. Was he in the school? - Yes, he .... إدارة الزقازيق 2015
   a) were b) was c) wasn't

C. Writing

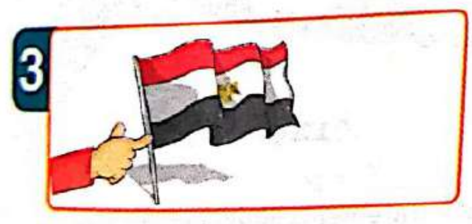
6 Look and answer the questions:

1

A : What are they doing?
B : ....
إدارة الجيزة 2016

2

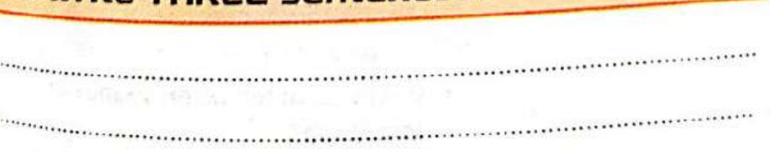
A : What is that?
B : ....
إدارة سيدى سالم 2015

3

A : What's this?
B : ....
إدارة طلخا 2017

4


A : Was the slug in the bed?
B : ....
إدارة غرب المنصورة 2015

7 Look and write THREE sentences:



- ....
- ....
- ....


إدارة المنتزه 2017

8 Punctuate the following:

- was ahmed at the living room, nour/ .... إدارة شبرا 2015



Unit 12

Around the House

فى أنحاء المنزل



Unit Objectives:

أهداف الوحدة:

Conversation Time:

- Ask for and give information on the phone.
- السؤال عن و إعطاء معلومات على الهاتف.
- Identify speakers in a conversation.
- التعرف الى المتحدثين فى محادثة.

Word Time:

- Write short sentences.
- كتابة جمل قصيرة.
- Read short sentences.
- قراءة جمل قصيرة.
- Learn vocabulary: Daily activities.
- تعلم المفردات اللغوية: الأنشطة اليومية.

Practice Time:

- Make statements about past actions.
- عمل جمل خبرية عن أحداث فى الماضى.
- Use the simple past with regular verbs (positive and negative)
- إستخدام الماضى البسيط مع الافعال المنتظمة فى (الإثبات و النفى).

Phonics Time:

- Distinguish between sounds of (sm,sn,sp).
- التمييز بين أصوات "sm, sn, sp".
- Associate sound of letters with written form.
- الربط بين أصوات الحروف و طريقة كتابتها.

Conversation Time

SB/ WB: P. (23)

Vocabulary المفردات اللغوية

around	حول	house	منزل	Hello.	مرحبًا.
please	من فضلك	number	رقم	okay	حسنًا
museum	متحف	Monday	يوم الاثنين	cinema	سينما
idea	فكرة	pencil (WB)	قلم رصاص		

adjectives الصفات

sorry	آسف	bored	يشعر بالملل

Opposites المتضادات

there	هناك	here	هنا
wrong (adj.)	خطأ	right (adj.)	صحيح
good (adj.)	جيد	bad (adj.)	سيئ

Expressions and phrases تعبيرات و عبارات

That's okay.	حسنًا، لا عليك.	Good-bye.	مع السلامة.
How about ...?	ما رأيك فى / ماذا عن ...؟	Good idea!	فكرة جيدة!

Characters of the conversation شخصيات المحادثة


Mona


A man


Mona's dad


Mona's mum

Story of the conversation قصة المحادثة

- Mona's mum and dad are in the kitchen. Mona is in the kitchen talking on the phone. She wants to talk to Kareem, but she calls a wrong number. She'll try to call him a gain.

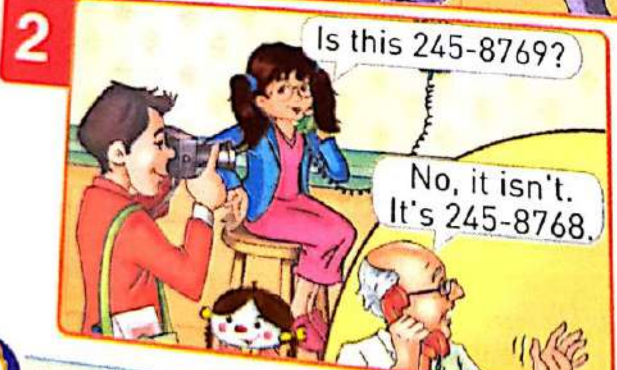
والدة ووالد منى في المطبخ .منى فى المطبخ تتحدث فى الهاتف . هى تريد التحدث إلى كريم ولكنها تطلب رقم خطأ. هى ستحاول الاتصال به مرة أخرى.

A Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.

1



2



3



B Listen and point to the speakers. استمع وأشر إلى المتحدثين.

C Role-play the conversation with a partner. تبادل الأدوار للمحادثة مع زميل.





1 Asking about and giving information on the phone:
السؤال عن و إعطاء معلومات على الهاتف:

Hello. Is ....(إسم الشخص).......... there, please? — مرحبًا. هل.... موجود، من فضلك؟

A: Hello. Is Kareem there, please? — مرحبًا. هل كريم موجود، من فضلك؟
B: I'm sorry. You have the wrong number. — آسف. لقد اتصلتِ بالرقم الخطأ.

2 Apologizing:
الاعتذار:

A: Sorry. — آسفة.
B: That's okay. Good-bye. — حسناً لا عليكِ. مع السلامة.

3 Expressing feelings:
التعبير عن المشاعر :

Subject (الفاعل) + v. to "be" (am/is/are) + adj. (صفة)

• I'm bored. — أنا أشعر بالملل.

4 Suggestion :
الإقتراح :

Let's + (inf.) مصدر الفعل ... هيا بنا .....

A: Let's go to the museum. — هيا بنا نذهب إلى المتحف.
B: No, I was at the museum on Monday. — لا، أنا كنت بالمتحف يوم الإثنين.

Note
• on Monday • on Wednesday — • نستخدم "on" قبل أيام الأسبوع :

How about + noun (اسم) / (inf.) مصدر الفعل + ing....? — ما رأيك في ....؟

A: How about the cinema? — ما رأيك في السينما؟
B: Good idea! — فكرة جيدة !



Listen and complete with one word:

للاجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب.

1. You .... the wrong number.
2. That's .... .Good-bye.
3. Is Kareem here, ... ?
4. Is .... 245-8768?

D Review. Listen and repeat.

راجع. استمع وردد.

I'm bored. Let's go to the museum.

No, I was at the museum on Monday.

How about the cinema?

Good idea!



Let's say it right



• لاحظ أن حرف (w) فى (wrong) "silent" لا ينطق.

• لاحظ أن حرف (c) دائمًا ما ينطق /s/ إذا أتى بعده (e-i-y) كما فى (cinema).

• لاحظ أن حرفى (th) فى (there/this) ينطقان /ð/ (ذ).

• لاحظ أن حرف (s) فى (please) ينطق /z/ (ز).



A Unscramble, write and number.



this	245-8769	Is	?

___ ______________________________

okay	That's	,	.	Good-bye

___ ______________________________



___ ______________________________

Is	,	Hello	Kareem	please	?	there	.

___ ______________________________

sorry	,	I'm	You	number	have	wrong	the	.

___ ______________________________

it	isn't	,	No	.	is	This	245-8768	.

___ ______________________________

B Read and match.

1. What are you looking for?
   My pencil.



2. Is this your pencil?
   No, it isn't. It's hers.



3. How about this pencil? Is this your pencil?
   Yes, it is. Thanks.





Conversation Time

Exercise

1 Listen and complete with one word: 

للاجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب.

1. I'm ....
2. I was at the .... on Monday. 2016
3. How .... the cinema? 2016
4. .... idea! 2015

2017

2 Read and write (True "T" or False "F"):



		True	False
1.	The boy is taking a photo.	[..........]	[..........]
2.	The man is jumping.	[..........]	[..........]
3.	The woman is washing the dishes.	[..........]	[..........]
4.	They are in the kitchen.	[..........]	[..........]

3 Read and circle the odd one:

1.	hungry	shampoo	hot	bored
2.	play	Monday	Tuesday	Friday
3.	museum	bakery	number	cinema
4.	sorry	wrong	happy	let

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c:

1. .... this 245-78234?
   a) Are b) Is c) Does
2. I'm .... .You have the wrong number.
   a) happy b) sorry c) going
3. Let's .... football.
   a) playing b) play c) plays
4. .... Kareem there, please?
   a) Were b) Are c) Is

5 Look and write THREE sentences:

- ....
- ....
- ....

6 Punctuate the following:

- let s go to the park on monday/

....

For more exercises لمزيد من التدريبات





SB/ WB: P. (24)

Vocabulary المفردات اللغوية



Daily activities:





wash my hands
أغسل يدى



brush my teeth
أغسل أسنانى بالفرشاة



clean my room
أنظف حجرتى



call a friend
تتصل بصديق



practise the piano
تتدرب على عزف البيانو



dance
ترقص



play video games
يلعب ألعاب الفيديو



bake cookies
يخبز رقائق البسكويت

Other words كلمات أخرى

milk	لبن	pickles	مخلل
Whose....?	لمن / ملك من......؟	keys	مفاتيح
music	موسيقى		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
wash	يغسل	washed	brush	يغسل بالفرشاة	brushed
clean	ينظف	cleaned	call	يتصل / ينادى	called
practise	يتدرب	practised	dance	يرقص	danced
play	يلعب	played	bake	يخبز	baked
look	ينظر	looked	listen	يستمع	listened
watch (WB)	يشاهد	watched			

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
am-is/are	يكون	was/were	do	يفعل / يعمل	did
know	يعرف	knew	ride (WB)	يركب	rode
make (WB)	يصنع	made			

Expressions and phrases تعبيرات و عبارات

I don't know.	أنا لا أعرف.	Let's look.	هيا بنا نظر.
wash the car (WB)	يغسل السيارة	watch videos (WB)	يشاهد أفلام فيديو
play basketball (WB)	يلعب كرة السلة	make a sandwich (WB)	يعمل ساندوتش
ride a bike (WB)	يركب دراجة	do homework (WB)	يؤدى/ يقوم بعمل الواجب المنزلي

Unit 12



Listen and repeat.

استمع وردد.

1. wash my hands
2. brush my teeth
3. clean my room
4. call a friend
5. practise the piano
6. dance
7. play video games
8. bake cookies



Point and say the words.

أشر إلى الكلمات وانطقها.

























Read and circle the odd one:

(مجاب عنه)

1.	talk	cookies	watch	ride	إدارة إهناسيا 2016
2.	hands	teeth	arms	shoes	إدارة منفلوط 2016
3.	wash	clean	room	dance	إدارة دمياط 2017
4.	piano	bike	bus	train	إدارة كفر الدوار 2017

C Listen and point.

استمع وأشر.

Now, listen and point to the speakers.

الآن، استمع وأشر إلى المتحدثين.



A Is there any milk? Are there any pickles?

B I don't know. Let's look.



A Whose keys are these?

B I don't know.



A What are you doing?

B What?

A What are you doing?

B I'm listening to music.





Asking about what someone is doing : السؤال عما يفعله شخص ما:

e.g.
A : What are you doing? ماذا تفعل؟
B : I'm listening to music. أستمع إلى الموسيقى.



Listen and complete with one word:

للاجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب.

1. I'm .... to music. 2016
2. Whose .... are these? 2017
3. Are.............................. any pickles? 2017
4. What are you ....? 2015

D Write the words. (See pages 33 - 34) اكتب الكلمات.

انظر إلى الصفحات (34 - 33) بالكتاب المدرسي.

B b





______ ______

C c





______ ______

D d



______

P p





______ ______

W w



______

Let's say it right

- لاحظ أن حرفي [sh] في [wash/brush] ينطقا /ʃ/ (ش).
- لاحظ أن حرفي [th] في [teeth] ينطقان /θ/ (ث).
- لاحظ أن حرف [c] في كل من [clean/call/practise] ينطق /k/ (ك).
- لاحظ أن حرف [c] دائمًا ما ينطق /s/ إذا أتى بعده [e-i-y] كما في [dance].
- لاحظ أن حرفي [ck] في [pickles] ينطقان /k/ (ك).



A Read and circle.

1.


brush my teeth
wash my hands
wash the car

2.


watch videos
play basketball
play video games

3.


bake cookies
make a sandwich
call a friend

4.


dance
practise the piano
brush my teeth

5.


wash my hands
practise the piano
ride a bike

6.


call a friend
clean my room
do homework

7.


bake cookies
dance
play video games

8.


watch TV
practise the piano
call a friend

B Write the questions and answers.





1. What's she doing?
She's baking cookies.

2.  What's he doing?
____

3. ______________________
____

4.  ______________________
____

Word Time

Exercise

1 Listen and complete with one word:

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب.

1. The man is playing .... games. إدارة قليوب 2016
2. I don't .... cookies. إدارة فارسكور 2016
3. Clean the room and .... your hands. إدارة بلقاس 2015
4. I brush my .... after meals. إدارة شرق طنطا 2017

2 Read and write (True "T" or False "F"):

إدارة المطرية 2015



		True	False
1.	The boy is sleeping.	[..................]	[..................]
2.	I can see a girl.	[..................]	[..................]
3.	There is a window.	[..................]	[..................]
4.	He is in the bedroom.	[..................]	[..................]

3 Read and circle the odd one:

1.	video	good	bad	sad	2015
2.	wash	eat	dance	friend	2016
3.	call	watch	garden	bake	2014
4.	cake	bake	chocolate	cookie	

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c:

1. .... there any milk?

a) Is b) Are c) Were

2. .... there any pickles?

a) Is b) Are c) Was

3. I don't know. Let's ....

a) looking b) looks c) look

4. Whose .... are these?

a) key b) keys c) book

5 Look and write THREE sentences:



- ....
- ....
- ....

6 Punctuate the following:

- i didn t clean my room on friday/

....

إدارة قسيس الكوم 2016

Cumulative Exercise
(Lessons 1 & 2)

1 Listen and circle the word with the short vowel:

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب.

a. good - house b. room - look c. milk - call d. teeth - brush

2 Read and circle the odd one:

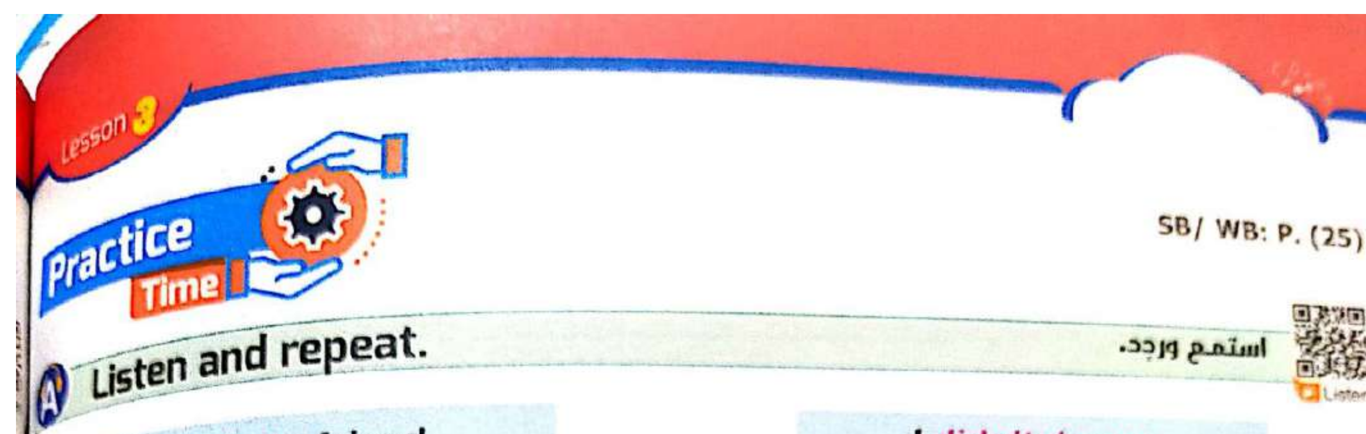
1.	call	dance	clean	teeth
2.	games	museum	cinema	restaurant
3.	bored	Monday	good	bad
4.	mushrooms	pickles	keys	spaghetti

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c:

1. How .... the cinema?
   a) about b) but c) boat
2. I.................................... my hands.
   a) brush b) wash c) play
3. I want to .... some cookies.
   a) bake b) dance c) watch
4. .... Kareem there?
   a) Are b) Am c) Is

4 Look and answer the questions:

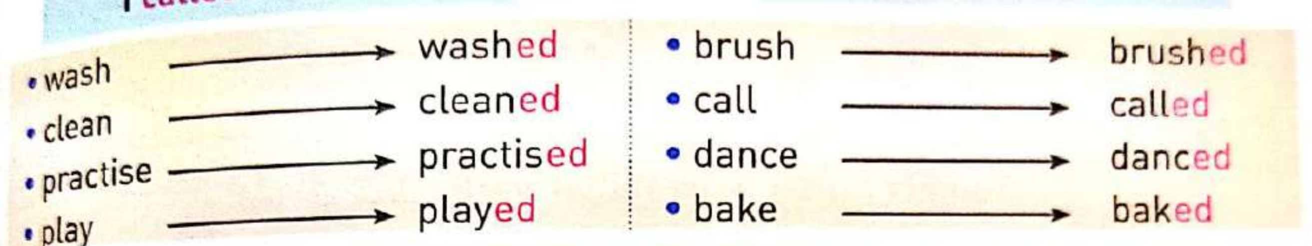
1. A : What's she doing?
   B : ....
2. A : Where are they going?
   B : ....
3. A : What's he doing?
   B : ....
4. A : What are they doing?
   B : ....



SB/ WB: P. (25)



A Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.



I called a friend. | **I didn't dance.**

- wash → washed
- clean → cleaned
- practise → practised
- play → played
- brush → brushed
- call → called
- dance → danced
- bake → baked

STRUCTURE

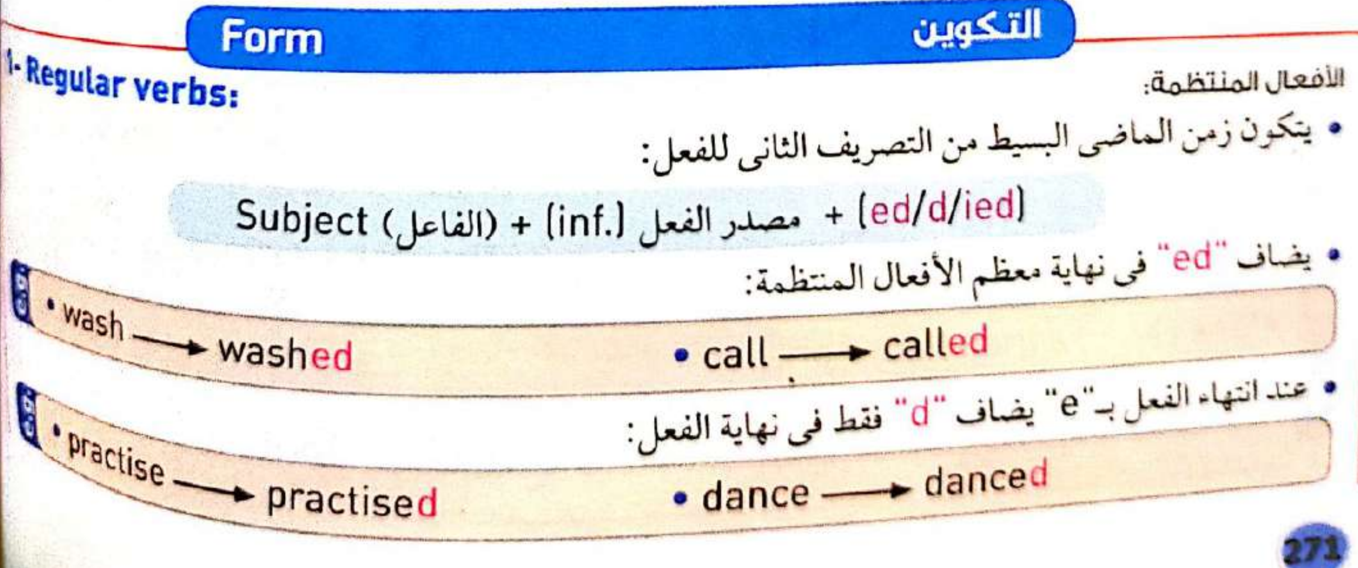
The past simple tense: زمن الماضى البسيط:

Usage الاستخدام

- The past simple tense is used for expressing an action that happened and ended in the past at a certain time.

- يستخدم زمن الماضى البسيط للتعبير عن فعل حدث فى الماضى وانتهى فى وقت محدد.

- I brushed my teeth yesterday.
- She cleaned her room two days ago.



Form التكوين

1- Regular verbs: الأفعال المنتظمة:

- يتكون زمن الماضى البسيط من التصريف الثانى للفعل:

Subject (الفاعل) + (inf.) مصدر الفعل + (ed/d/ied)

- يضاف "ed" فى نهاية معظم الأفعال المنتظمة:
  - wash → washed
  - call → called
- عند انتهاء الفعل بـ"e" يضاف "d" فقط فى نهاية الفعل:
  - practise → practised
  - dance → danced

• إذا انتهى الفعل بـ"y" مسبوقة بحرف ساكن يحذف حرف الـ "y" ويضاف "ied":

e.g. • cry ⟶ cried • study ⟶ studied

• أما إذا انتهى الفعل بـ"y" مسبوقة بحرف متحرك "a - e - i - o - u" فيضاف "ed" فى نهاية الفعل:

e.g. • play ⟶ played • stay ⟶ stayed

• عند انتهاء بعض الأفعال بحرف ساكن مسبوق بحرف متحرك يضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير عند إضافة "ed":

e.g. • stop ⟶ stopped • drop ⟶ dropped

2- Irregular verbs:

الأفعال غير المنتظمة: (تحفظ)

Subject (الفاعل) + irregular verb (فعل غير منتظم)

e.g. • know ⟶ knew • make ⟶ made • ride ⟶ rode

Key words الكلمات الدالة

• yesterday أمس • ago منذ • once ذات مرة

• last (week / month / year ..... etc.) الأسبوع - الشهر - العام ... إلخ) الماضى

e.g. • We washed our hands three hours ago. • He baked cookies last Friday.

Negative النفـى

Subject (الفاعل) + didn't + (inf.) مصدر الفعل ....

• عند النفى نضيف "didn't" قبل التصريف الأول للفعل (مصدر الفعل):

e.g.

• They practised the piano yesterday.

Neg. النفى ⟶ They didn't practise the piano yesterday.

• She called a friend last April.

Neg. النفى ⟶ She didn't call a friend last April.

Yes/No questions السؤال بـ "هل"

Did + subject (الفاعل) + (inf.) مصدر الفعل ..... ?

للإجابة بالإثبات	للإجابة بالنفى
- Yes,+subject (الفاعل) + did.	الاجابة المختصرة: - No, + subject (الفاعل) + didn't. or الاجابة الكاملة: - No, + subject (الفاعل) + didn't. Subject (الفاعل) + التصريف الثانى للفعل.

e.g. **A:** Did you dance yesterday?

للإجابة بالإثبات	للإجابة بالنفى
B: Yes, I did.	**B:** No, I didn't. or **B:** No, I didn't. I cleaned my room.

• لاحظ عند الإجابة تحول "you" إلى "we" أو "I".

e.g. **A:** Did Mona play video games five days ago?

للإجابة بالإثبات	للإجابة بالنفى
B: Yes, she did.	**B:** No, she didn't. or **B:** No, she didn't. She practised the piano five days ago.

Note

• لاحظ عند الإجابة تحول الأسماء إلى ضمائر: "Mona" فى السؤال، تحول إلى "she" فى الإجابة.



Wh-questions السؤال بـ"كلمة الاستفهام"

Question word (كلمة الإستفهام) + did + subject (الفاعل) + [inf.] مصدر الفعل..... ?

للإجابة:

Subject (الفاعل) + التصريف الثانى للفعل.........

e.g.
A : What did he do yesterday?
B : He practised the piano yesterday.

e.g.
A : What did they do two days ago?
B : They played video games two days ago.

Note

Emphatic pronouns ضمائر التوكيد

Subject pronouns ضمائر الفاعل		Possessive adjectives صفات الملكية		
I	أنا	my	noun + الشيء المملوك	ملكي
He	هو	his		ملكه
She	هى	her		ملكها
It	هو / هى (لغير العاقل)	its		ملكه / ملكها (لغير العاقل)
We	نحن	our		ملكنا
You	أنت / أنتما / أنتم / أنتن	your		ملكك / ملككم
They	هم / هُن	their		ملكهم / ملكهن

• لاحظ استخدام صفات الملكية قبل الأسماء "nouns" للتعبير عن الملكية:

e.g.
• I brushed my teeth.
• She washed her hands.



Choose the correct answer from a, b or c:

1. He didn't .... his room. (إدارة 2016)

   a) dance   b) call   c) clean

2. He .... his hands yesterday. (إدارة 2016)

   a) washes   b) washed   c) wash

3. I .... call a friend yesterday. (إدارة 2017)

   a) don't   b) doesn't   c) didn't

4. She .... cookies yesterday. (إدارة 2015)

   a) baked   b) bakes   c) bake

B Listen and repeat. Then practise with a partner. استمع وردد، ثم تدرب مع زميل.

Watch

1. He **brushed** his teeth.

   He **didn't wash** his hands.



2. I **washed** my hands.

   I **didn't brush** my teeth.



3. She practised the piano.

   She didn't bake cookies.



4. We baked cookies.

   We didn't practise the piano.



5. You cleaned your room.

   You didn't play video games.



6. They played video games.

   They didn't clean their room.



C Look at page 24. Point to the picture and practise with a partner:

ر صفحة 24 بالكتاب المدرسى. أشر إلى الصورة وتدرب مع زميل كما فى المثال الآتى:

e.g.

S_1: They danced.

S_2: They didn't bake cookies.





6 Listen and sing along. استمع وغنِّ.

Today Is Monday



Today is Monday.
Today is Monday.
I brushed my teeth.
I didn't clean my room.
He didn't clean his room.
Today is Tuesday.
Today is Tuesday.
I brushed my teeth.
I washed my hands.
I didn't clean my room.
He didn't clean his room.
Today is Wednesday.
Today is Wednesday.
I brushed my teeth.
I washed my hands.
I called a friend.
I didn't clean my room.
He didn't clean his room.
Today is Thursday.
Today is Thursday.
I brushed my teeth.
I washed my hands.
I called a friend.
I practised the piano.
I didn't clean my room.
He didn't clean his room.



Today is Friday.
Today is Friday.
I brushed my teeth.
I washed my hands.
I called a friend.
I practised the piano.
I played video games.
I didn't clean my room.
He didn't clean his room.



Today is Saturday.
Today is Saturday.
I brushed my teeth.
I washed my hands.
I called a friend.
I practised the piano.
I played video games.
I baked cookies.
I didn't clean my room.
He didn't clean his room.



Today is Sunday.
Today is Sunday.
I brushed my teeth.
I washed my hands.
I called a friend.
I practised the piano.
I played video games.
I baked cookies.
I danced and danced.
I didn't clean my room.
He didn't clean his room.



Days of the week أيام الأسبوع

Saturday
Tuesday
Friday

	السبت	Sunday	الأحد	Monday	الاثنين
	الثلاثاء	Wednesday	الأربعاء	Thursday	الخميس
	الجمعة				



A Write.

1. call a friend → called a friend
2. bake cookies → ______ cookies
3. wash my hands → ______ my hands
4. brush my teeth → ______ my teeth
5. practise the piano → ______ the piano
6. play video games → ______ video games
7. clean my room → ______ my room
8. dance → ______

Now circle the words.

c	b	t	u	p	r	a	c	t	i	s	e	d
l	a	e	i	p	g	h	i	c	f	e	n	a
e	b	l	m	l	e	a	s	h	e	o	k	n
a	y	s	w	a	s	h	e	d	p	c	l	c
n	p	q	e	y	w	h	f	j	u	a	v	e
e	s	g	a	e	i	w	a	s	l	l	g	d
d	n	u	y	d	o	m	e	r	k	l	b	x
a	b	r	u	s	h	e	d	i	a	e	j	r
y	s	o	r	r	i	y	c	k	o	d	a	p
r	t	v	w	b	a	k	e	d	z	i	t	n

B Your turn. Read and write.

What did you do yesterday?

____

____

Practice Time
Exercise

1 Read and write (True "T" or False "F"):

إدارة كرم حمادة 2019

	True	False
1. There are three boys.	[..........]	[..........]
2. They are baking cookies.	[..........]	[..........]
3. The girl is eating fish.	[..........]	[..........]
4. She is opening the fridge.	[..........]	[..........]

2 Read and circle the odd one:

1.	dance	call	cookies	bake
2.	yesterday	Wednesday	Tuesday	Saturday
3.	hand	wash	eye	ear
4.	played	brushed	watched	milk

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c:

1. He .... his hands yesterday. إدارة المنتزه 2015
   a) washes b) wash c) washed
2. She didn't .... her teeth two hours ago. إدارة القناطر 2015
   a) brush b) brushes c) brushed
3. Laila .... her room last Friday. إدارة الوايلي 2015
   a) cleans b) cleaned c) cleaning
4. I .... call a friend yesterday . إدارة منوف 2015
   a) didn't b) don't c) doesn't

4 Look and answer the questions:



1

A : What did he do yesterday?

B : ....



2

A : Did she practise the piano two weeks ago?

B : ....



3

A : Did they clean their room yesterday?

B : ....

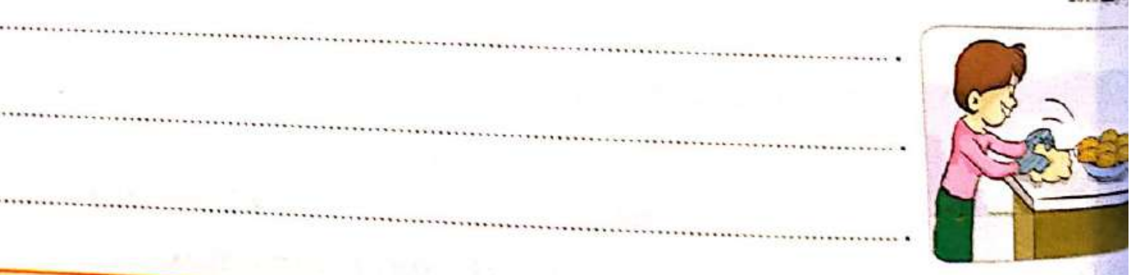


4

A : What did they do last Monday ?

B : ....

5 Look and write THREE sentences:



- ....
- ....
- ....

6 Punctuate the following:

- she didnt bake cookies on thursday/...

For more exercises لمزيد من التدريبات



Cumulative Exercise

Lessons 1 → 3



1 Listen and circle the word with the short vowel:

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب.

a. cookie - know   b. right - look   c. key - pickle   d. play - hand

2 Listen and complete with one word:

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب.

1. They played.................................. games.
2. You have the.................................. number.
3. He is .... to music.
4. Let's ....

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c:

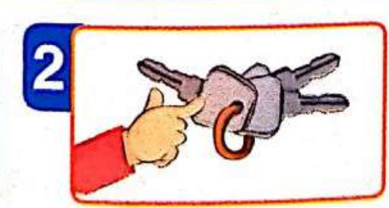
1. He.................................. cookies yesterday.
   a) baked   b) bakes   c) bake
2. .... about the cinema?
   a) How   b) When   c) Where
3. She .... videos games last week.
   a) cleaned   b) danced   c) played
4. .... Kareem there?
   a) Were   b) Was   c) Are

4 Look and answer the questions:

1 

A : Did they play video games last Monday?

B : ....

2 

A : What are these?

B : ....

3 

A : What did she do yesterday?

B : ....

4 

A : Was she at the cinema?

B : ....

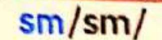


Phonics Time

SB/ WB: P. (26



Vocabulary المفردات اللغوية



ـظ نطق حرفى الـ "sm" فى الكلمات الآتية:

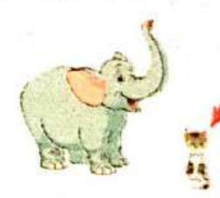

smell يشم


smile يبتسم


smoke دخان

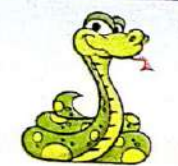

Smith سميث(اسم ولد)


smash يسحق/ يحطم


small صغير الحجم

sn/sn/

ـظ نطق حرفى الـ " sn" فى الكلمات الآتية:


snake ثعبان

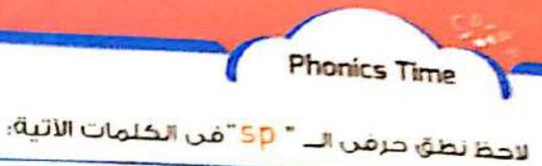

sneeze يعطس


snail حلزون (قوقع)


snow جليد


snatch ينتزع / يخطف


sniff يشمشم



لاحظ نطق حرفي الـ " sp " في الكلمات الآتية:

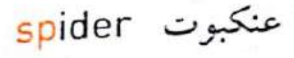
sp/sp/













spell يتهجى — spider عنكبوت — spaghetti مكرونة إسباجتي — Spain إسبانيا



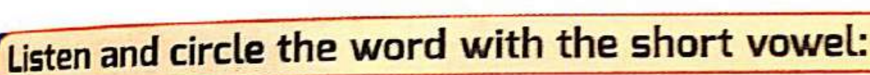




speak يتحدث — spring فصل الربيع — hospital مستشفى



Check-point

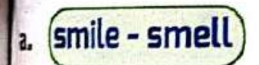


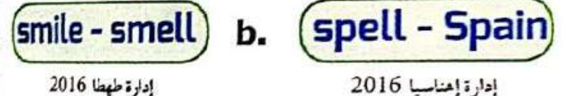


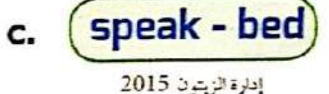
Listen and circle the word with the short vowel:

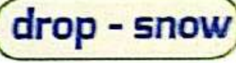
Listen

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب.









a. smile - smell (إدارة طهطا 2016)
b. spell - Spain (إدارة إهناسيا 2016)
c. speak - bed (إدارة الزيتون 2015)
d. drop - snow (إدارة التبين 2017)











A Listen and repeat.

استمع وردد.

Listen

استمع و لاحظ الفرق بين نطق (sp – sn – sm) في الكلمات الآتية:









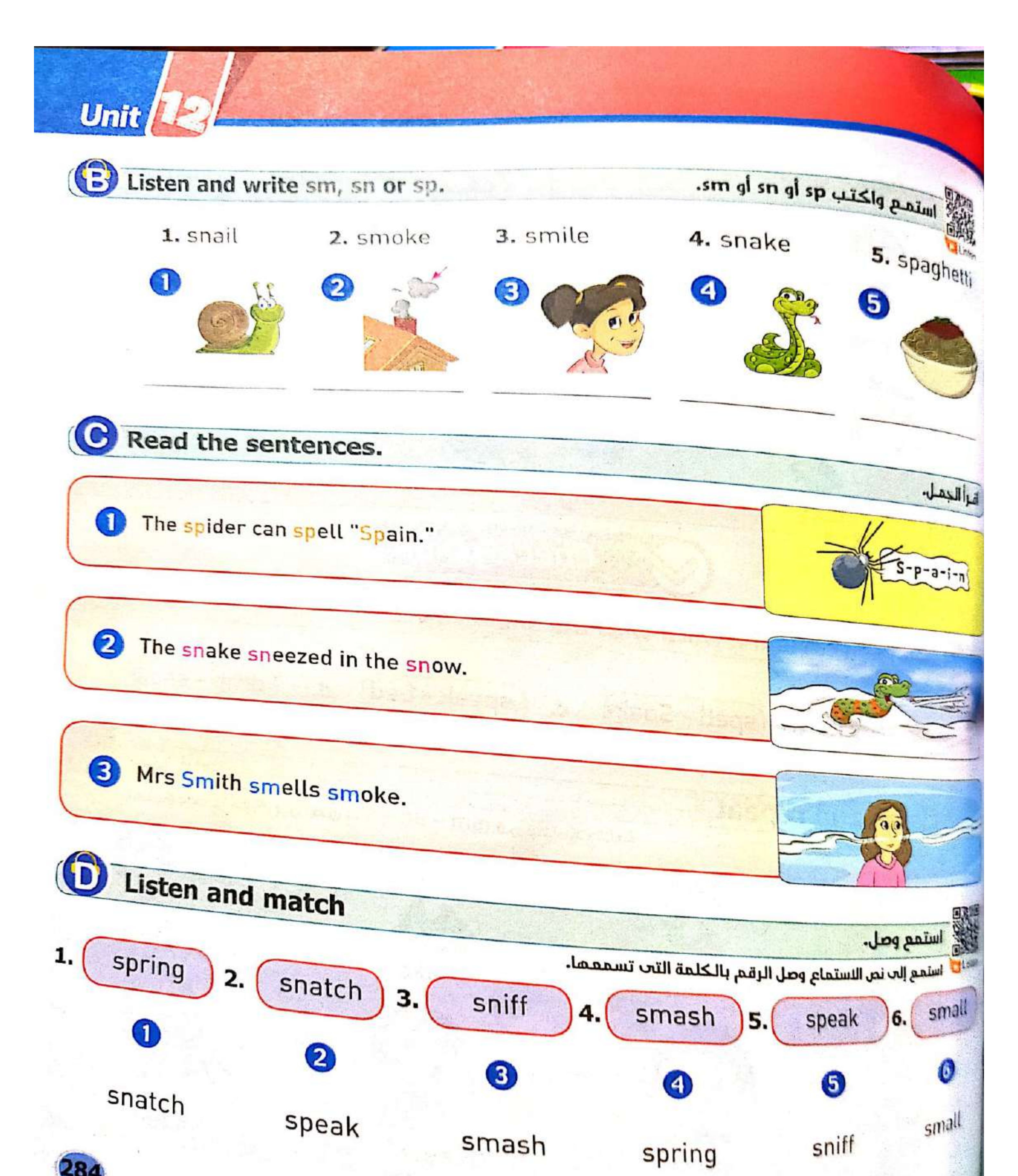


smell — snake — spell





smile — sneeze — spider



Unit 12

B Listen and write sm, sn or sp.

استمع واكتب sp أو sn أو sm.

1. snail
2. smoke
3. smile
4. snake
5. spaghetti

1 ______ 2 ______ 3 ______ 4 ______ 5 ______

C Read the sentences.

اقرأ الجمل.

1. The spider can spell "Spain."
2. The snake sneezed in the snow.
3. Mrs Smith smells smoke.

D Listen and match

استمع وصل.

استمع إلى نص الاستماع وصل الرقم بالكلمة التى تسمعها.

1. spring 2. snatch 3. sniff 4. smash 5. speak 6. small

1 snatch

2 speak

3 smash

4 spring

5 sniff

6 small



A Look and write sm, sn or sp.



1. _____ ake



2. _____ oke



3. _____ eeze



4. _____ ider



5. _____ ell



6. _____ ile



7. _____ ell



8. _____ ow

B Write sm, sn or sp. Then read and number the pictures.

1. The _____ake and the _____ider are _____eaking English.
2. Mr _____ith _____eezed at the ho_____ital.
3. Amira is eating _____aghetti in the _____ow.
4. Hisham _____elled the rose and _____iled.







Phonics Time
Exercise

1 Listen and circle the word with the short vowel:

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب.

a. spell – sneeze
إدارة وسط 2015

b. smile - sniff
إدارة فاقوس 2016

c. snow – smell
إدارة المنتزه 2015

d. sneeze - wet
إدارة روض الفرج 2017

2 Listen and complete with one word:

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب.

1. The spider can spell ....
2. The snake .... in the snow.
3. Mrs Smith smells ....
4. Hisham smelled the rose and ....

3 Read and write (True "T" or False "F"):



	True	False
1. The boy sneezed.	(..................)	(..................)
2. He is sick.	(..................)	(..................)
3. He is at the cinema.	(..................)	(..................)
4. He is at the hospital.	(..................)	(..................)

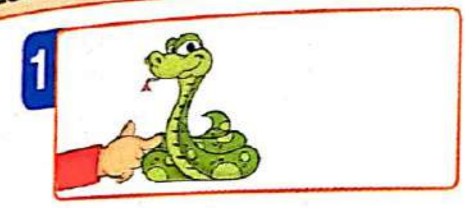
4 Read and circle the odd one:

1.	Spain	school	shop	hospital
2.	smile	snow	snatch	sniff
3.	watch	call	snake	sneeze
4.	mushroom	spaghetti	bread	spider

إدارة القناطر 2015

إدارة أبو النمرس 2015

5 Look and answer the questions:

1


A : What is this?

B : ....

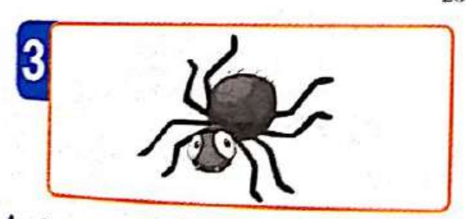
2


A : Is it a snail?

B : ....

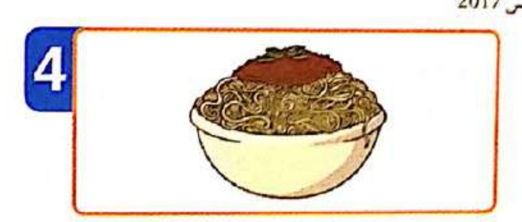
إدارة طهطا 2016

إدارة هليوبليس 2017

3


A : What can you see?

B : ....

4


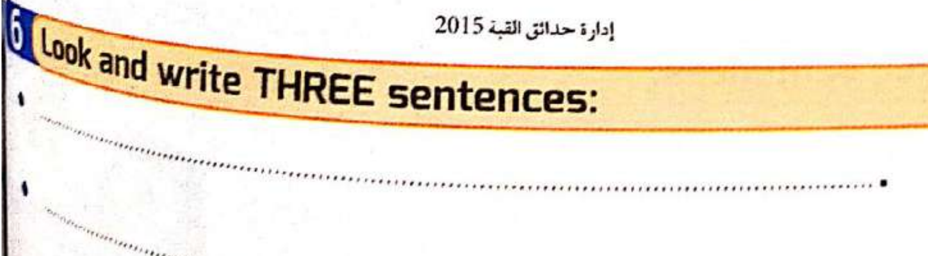
A : Do you like spaghetti?

B : ....

إدارة حدائق القبة 2015

إدارة عابدين 2016

6 Look and write THREE sentences:



• ....

• ....

• ....



For more exercises لمزيد من التدريبات



Cumulative Exercise
(Lessons 1 → 4)

1 Read and write (True "T" or False "F"):



		True	False
1.	The mother is in the kitchen.	(..................)	(..................)
2.	The mother is baking cookies.	(..................)	(..................)
3.	The boy and the girl are dancing.	(..................)	(..................)
4.	They are sad.	(..................)	(..................)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c:

1. Let's .... to the cinema.
   a) going b) go c) goes
2. My sister is eating ....
   a) spaghetti b) snail c) snow
3. My brother .... the piano yesterday.
   a) practising b) practise c) practised
4. Good .... !
   a) bored b) bad c) idea

3 Look and write THREE sentences:



....

....

....

4 Punctuate the following:

- she didn t go to the cinema on monday/ ....

Unit 12 Revision

Conversation Time

Mona : Hello. Is Kareem there, please?
A man : I'm sorry. You have the wrong number.
Mona : Is this 245-8769?
A man : No, it isn't. It's 245-8768.
Mona : Sorry.
A man : That's okay. Good-bye.

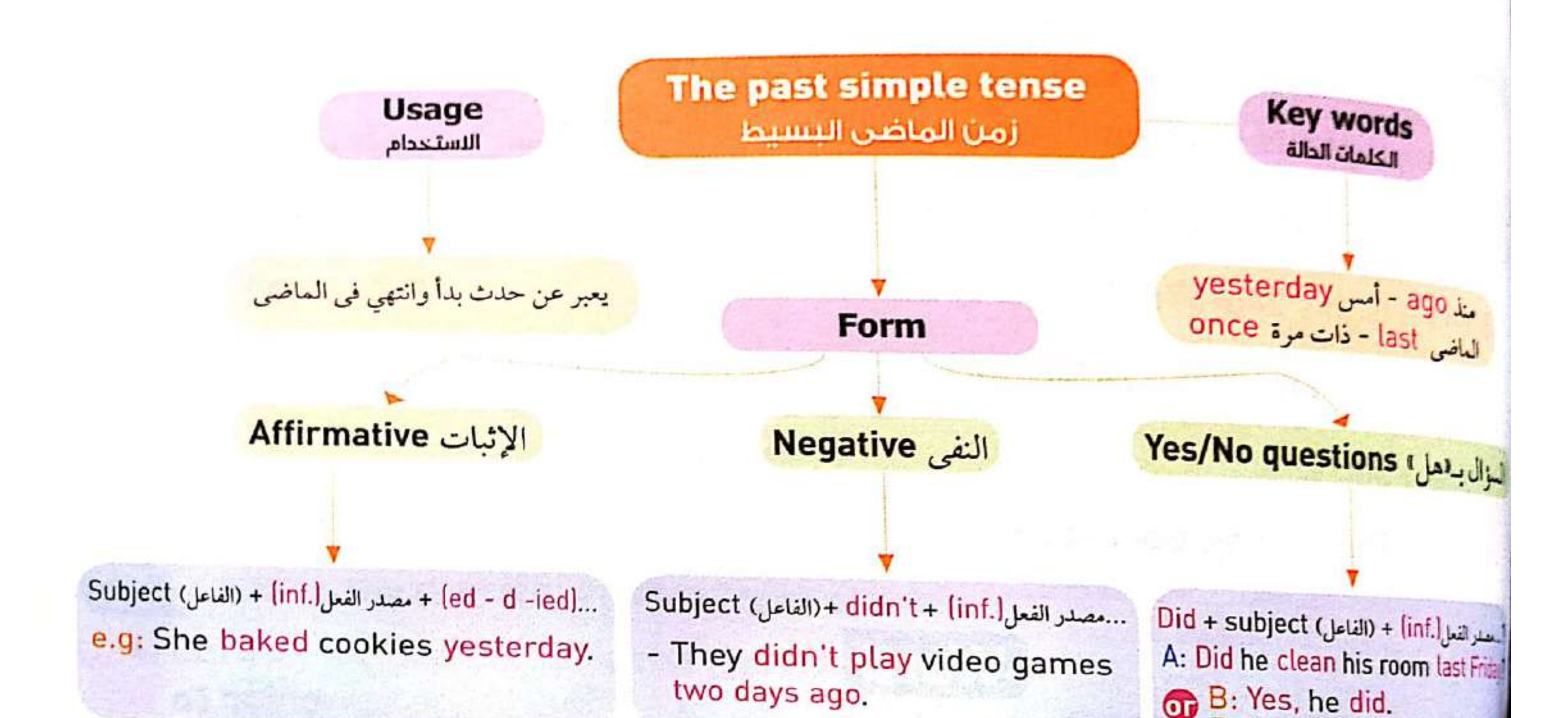
- مرحباً. هل كريم موجود ،من فضلك؟
- آسف. لقد اتصلتِ بالرقم الخطأ.
- هل هذا ٨٧٦٩-٢٤٥؟
- لا، إنه ٨٧٦٨-٢٤٥.
- آسفة.
- حسناً، لا عليكِ. مع السلامة.

Word Time

Phrases عبارات

wash my hands	أغسل يدى	brush my teeth	أغسل أسنانى بالفرشاه
clean my room	أنظف حجرتى	call a friend	يتصل بصديق
practise the piano	يتدرب على عزف البيانو	dance	يرقص
play video games	يلعب ألعاب الفيديو	bake cookies	يخبز رقائق البسكويت

Practice Time



Phonics Time

sm/sm/		sn/sn/		sp/sp/	
smell	يشم	snake	ثعبان	spell	يتهجى
smile	يبتسم	sneeze	يعطس	spider	عنكبوت
smoke	دخان	snail	حلزون (قوقع)	spaghetti	مكرونة اسباجتى
Smith	سميث (اسم ولد)	snow	جليد	Spain	إسبانيا
smash	يسحق / يحطم	snatch	ينتزع/ يخطف	speak	يتحدث
small	صغير الحجم	sniff	يشمشم	spring	فصل الربيع
				hospital	مستشفى

Writing Time

1 Look and answer the questions: (Answered examples):

ذه الجزئية تساعدك على إجابة السؤال السادس داخل الورقة الامتحانية .

1



A : What did he do yesterday?

B : He brushed his teeth yesterday.

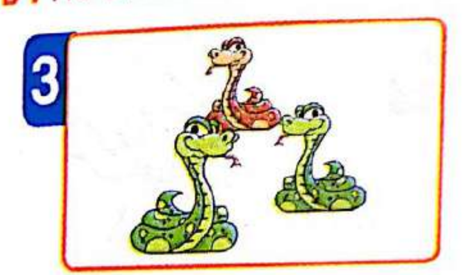
2



A : Is she at the cinema?

B : No, she isn't.

3



A : How many snakes are there?

B : There are three snakes.

4



A : What is this?

B : It's a museum.

2 Look and write THREE sentences: (Answered examples):

هذه الجزئية تساعدك على إجابة السؤال السابع داخل الورقة الامتحانية .

a
- The boy is at the hospital.
- The boy is sick.
- The doctor is helping the boy.



b
- The boy and the girl are in the garden.
- The boy is listening to music.
- The girl is practising the piano.



c
- Hoda is sitting on the snow.
- She is eating spaghetti.
- She is happy.





Practise Writing

1 Look and answer the questions:

1



A : What is she doing?

B : ....

2



A : What did they do three hours ago?

B : ....

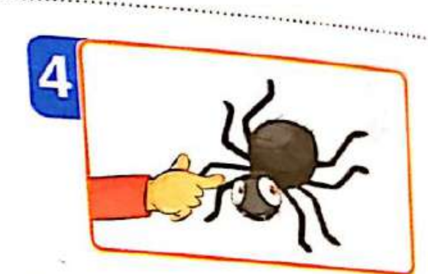
3



A : What did he bake yesterday?

B : ....

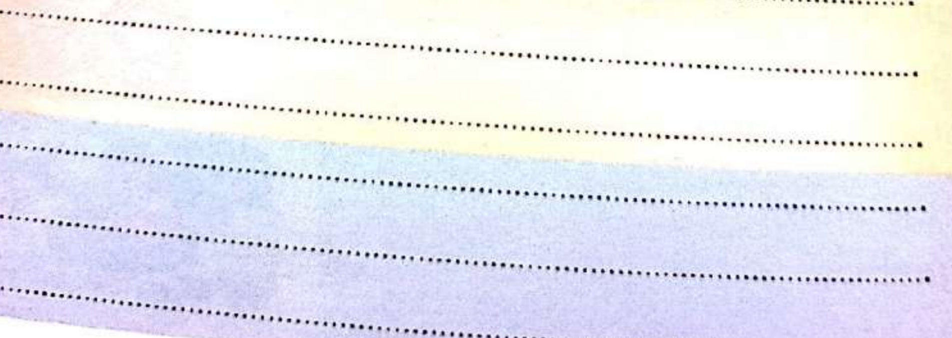
4



A : What is this?

B : ....

2 Look and write THREE sentences:



a

- ....
- ....
- ....



b

- ....
- ....
- ....



c

- ....
- ....
- ....

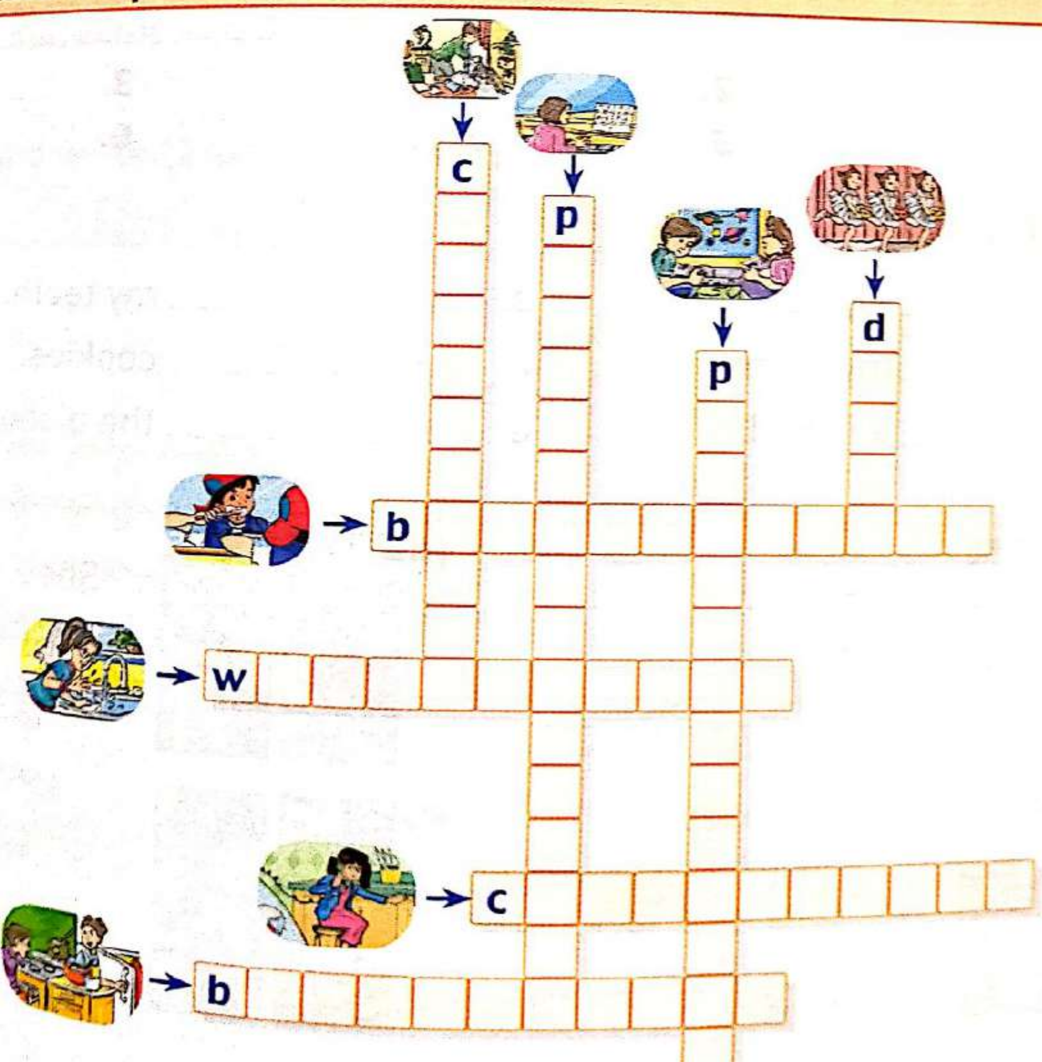


Check Your Vocabulary

Give the meanings in English:

حول	....	أنظف حجرتي	....	يشم	....
هناك	....	يرقص	....	حلزون (قوقع)	....
خطأ	....	يتصل بصديق	....	رقم	....
يلعب ألعاب الفيديو	....	من فضلك	....	يخبز رقائق البسكويت	....
دخان	....	يبتسم	....	يسحق/ يحطم	....
جليد	....	ثعبان	....	يعطس	....
فصل الربيع	....	عنكبوت	....	مستشفى	....

Complete the puzzle:





Workbook
UNIT (12) Test

A Listen and write.

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب.

1. ________ . Is ________ , please?
2. I'm ________ . ________ wrong number.
3. Is this ________?
4. ________ . It's 245-8768.
5. ________________ .
6. That's okay. ________

B Does it have sm, sn or sp? Listen and write.

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب.

1. ________ell.
2. ________ile.
3. ________ider.
4. ________eeze.
5. ________ake.
6. ________ell.

C Read and write.

1. ________________ my hands.
2. ________________ my teeth.
3. ________________ my room.
4. ________________ cookies.
5. ________________ a friend.
6. ________________ the piano.

D Look and write.

1. He ________________ .
He ________________
________________ .

2. She ________________ .
________________ .
________________ .

3. ________________ .
________________ .
________________ .

4. ________________ .
________________ .
________________ .

Unit (12) Test (1)

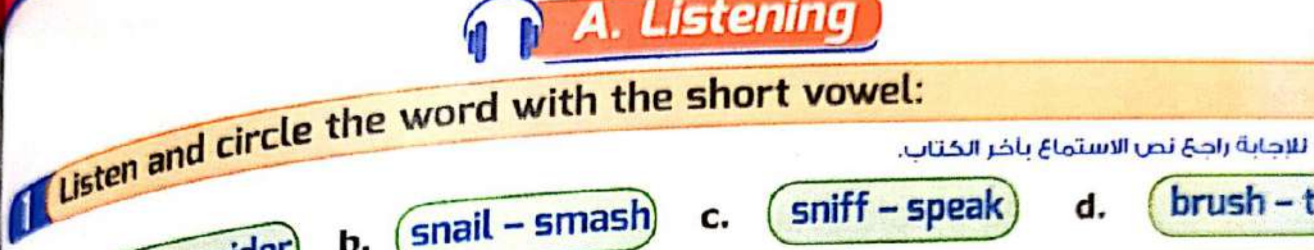


A. Listening



1 Listen and circle the word with the short vowel:

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب.



a. spell – spider b. snail – smash c. sniff – speak d. brush – true

2 Listen and complete with one word:

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب.

1. Is Kareem .... , please?
2. I'm sorry. You have the .... number.
3. The snake sneezed in the ....
4. I'm listening to ....

B. Reading

3 Read and write (True "T" or False "F"):



	True	False
1. There are two chairs.	(..........)	(..........)
2. He is cleaning the room.	(..........)	(..........)
3. The door is open.	(..........)	(..........)
4. There is no mess.	(..........)	(..........)

4 Read and circle the odd one:

1.	Monday	Friday	Tuesday	cinema
2.	piano	bake	practise	wash
3.	spell	speak	spaghetti	sniff
4.	small	snail	bored	hungry

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c:

1. .... keys are these? - They're mine.
   a) Who b) How c) Whose
2. What did you .... ?
   a) baked b) baking c) bake
3. I .... to music yesterday.
   a) listening b) listened c) listens
4. I ....play games last week.
   a) didn't b) don't c) wasn't

C. Writing

6 Look and answer the questions:

1
A : Do you want milk?
B : ....

2
A : Did he bake cookies?
B : ....

3
A : What did he do last Monday?
B : ....

4
A : What is he doing?
B : ....

7 Look and write THREE sentences:

- ....
- ....
- ....

8 Punctuate the following:

- no, i was at the cinema on tuesday/ ....



Unit (12) Test (2)

Selected from Schools' Examinations





1 Listen and circle the word with the short vowel:

للاجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب.

a. number - museum b. teeth – spell (إدارة المقطم 2015) c. snatch – bake (إدارة الزقازيق 2015) d. milk – idea

2 Listen and complete with one word:

للاجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب.

1. Is there any .... ?
2. They .... their teeth yesterday.
3. .... keys are these?
4. I don't ....

B. Reading

3 Read and write (True "T" or False "F"):



	True	False
1. There are two girls.	[..........]	[..........]
2. A boy is playing video games.	[..........]	[..........]
3. A girl is calling a friend.	[..........]	[..........]
4. They are sitting in the kitchen.	[..........]	[..........]

4 Read and circle the odd one:

1.	bus	car	truck	smile
2.	snail	spider	spaghetti	snake
3.	cookies	bake	cake	ice cream
4.	car	smell	smile	sneeze



5 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c:

1. I .... my hands every day.
   a) wash b) washed c) washes
2. He .... his room yesterday.
   a) cleans b) cleaned c) clean
3. I .... call a friend two days ago.
   a) doesn't b) didn't c) don't
4. What .... you do yesterday?
   a) do b) are c) did

C. Writing

6 Look and answer the questions:

1



A : What is she doing?
B : ....

إدارة شبين الكوم 2015

2



A : Do you like spaghetti?
B : ....

إدارة غرب طنطا 2015

3



A : What is he doing?
B : ....

إدارة شبين الكوم 2015

4



A : What do you like?
B : ....

إدارة شرق 2015

7 Look and write THREE sentences:



- ....
- ....
- ....

8 Punctuate the following:

- did you wash your hands rana/ ....



Objectives:

Listening/Speaking:

- Participate in a conversation.
- المشاركة في محادثة.
- Identify meaning of a conversation.
- التعرف على معنى محادثة.

Reading/Writing:

الأهداف:

- Recognise and produce words (vocabulary).
- التعرف على الكلمات (المفردات اللغوية) واستخدامها.

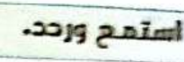
SB/ WB: P. (27)





A Listen and repeat.

استمع وردد.

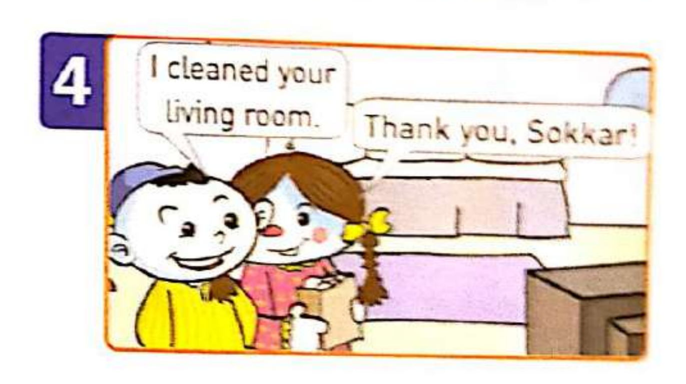






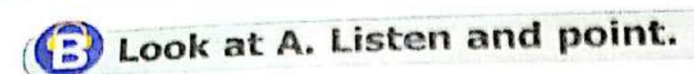












B Look at A. Listen and point. انظر إلى التمرين A . استمع وأشر.

C Listen. Circle True or False. استمع، وضع دائرة حول صح أو خطأ.

1. Sokkara was at the museum. True - False

2. Sokkar cleaned the bedroom. True - False

3. Sokkar didn't practise the piano. True - False

4. Sokkar watched TV. True - False

5. Sokkar didn't clean the living room. True - False

D Role-play these scenes.

الأدوار في هذه المشاهد.

Activity Time

A Read and match. اقرأ وصل.

a snake on a slide • a spider with a plum • a tree in a truck • a sleeping crab • a fly in a dress

1. •
2. •
3. •
4. •
5. •

B Read and fill in the blanks. Then complete the puzzle. اقرأ، واملأ الفراغات. ثم أكمل اللغز.

↓ **Down**

1. You want bread. You go to a ________ .
3. You wash your hands in a ________ .
4. You want to see a film. You go to a ________ .

Across →

2. You bake cookies in a ________ .
5. Your foot hurts. You go to a ________ .
6. You want a book. You go to a ________ .

C What did you do yesterday? Put ✓. Then ask your partner. ماذا فعلت بالأمس؟ ضع علامة ✓ ثم اسأل زميلك.

	brushed my teeth	called a friend	cleaned my room	played video games
me				
my partner				



Review (2)

A Choose the correct answer from a, b or c:

1. There isn't .... sand in the park.
   a) any b) some c) much
2. There .... many trees in the park.
   a) is b) are c) isn't
3. I was .... the bookshop yesterday.
   a) on b) under c) at
4. They .... at the hospital.
   a) was b) were c) wasn't
5. Was she in the garden? – Yes, she ....
   a) were b) was c) wasn't
6. We .... cookies yesterday.
   a) baking b) baked c) bakes
7. .... did you do yesterday?
   a) How b) What c) When
8. She has some toothpaste in .... bag.
   a) his b) her c) my

B Circle the odd words. There is one in each line.

1.	museum	bakery	chemist's	money
2.	make-up	bedroom	garden	dining room
3.	call a friend	watch videos	bake cookies	garden
4.	cinema	watch TV	department store	hospital
5.	garage	bathroom	living room	film
6.	bedroom	garden	bathroom	dance



A Read and tick True or False.







		True	False
1.	She was at the museum. She practised the piano.	[.........]	[.........]
2.	He was in the bathroom. He brushed his teeth.	[.........]	[.........]
3.	I was at the cinema. I called a friend.	[.........]	[.........]
4.	She was in the bedroom. She baked cookies.	[.........]	[.........]

B Read and circle the odd one:

a.	bedroom	dining room	garage	sand
b.	wildlife	trees	mountains	kitchen
c.	toothpaste	shampoo	car	soap
d.	museum	bakery	mushrooms	cinema
e.	restaurant	salt	hospital	bookshop
f.	carrots	butter	truck	cheese
g.	foot	ear	cake	eye
h.	grass	wildlife	trees	leg

Units (10 , 11 & 12) General Exercises



A. Listening

1 Listen and circle the word with the short vowel:

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب.

A

a. cap – bake b. cut – flute c. slide - slipper d. book – moon

B

a. glue – up b. bed – feet c. hot – boat d. bike – bin

C

a. plate - cat b. dress – tree c. kite – kit d. flake - flat

2 Listen and complete with one word:

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب.

A

1. I .... my teeth after meals.
2. I clean my ....
3. I .... with my eyes.
4. Let's ....

B

1. I .... football on Friday.
2. I was at the .... on Monday.
3. What .... you looking for?
4. We are sleeping in the ....

C

1. .... you so much.
2. They were at the ....
3. Is this .... purse?
4. Whose .... is it?

B. Reading

3 Read and write True "T" or False "F":

A



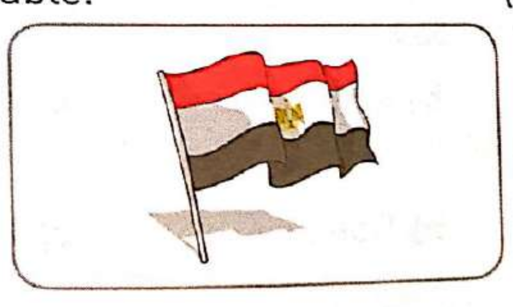
	True	False
1. They are at the chemist's	[..........]	[..........]
2. I can see some medicine.	[..........]	[..........]
3. The boy is sick.	[..........]	[..........]
4. There are three people.	[..........]	[..........]

B



	True	False
1. The boy is watching TV.	[..........]	[..........]
2. There are flowers on the table.	[..........]	[..........]
3. There is a woman on the TV.	[..........]	[..........]
4. There's a cat under the table.	[..........]	[..........]

C



	True	False
1. It is a slide.	[..........]	[..........]
2. It is a flag.	[..........]	[..........]
3. It has three colours.	[..........]	[..........]
4. We can see it in our school.	[..........]	[..........]

4 Read and circle the odd one:

A

1.	bakery	cinema	thirsty	museum
2.	cat	drum	lion	dog
3.	When	Whose	Where	were
4.	truck	purse	train	car

B

1.	kitchen	garden	jump	bathroom
2.	four	eight	one	duck
3.	play	crab	sleep	go
4.	pretty	Sunday	Monday	Friday

C

1.	bake	wash	salad	play
2.	clean	wash	brush	bedroom
3.	spaghetti	soup	cat	pepper
4.	piano	dance	wash	call

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c:

A

1. I .... a friend yesterday.

   a) calling b) call c) called

2. .... this a bakery?

   a) Are b) Does c) Is

3. I .... my hands every day.

   a) wash b) washed c) washing

4. He .... his hands yesterday.

   a) washes b) wash c) washed

B

1. .... was in the restaurant.
   a) They **b)** We **c)** I
2. Don't .... on the bed.
   a) jumps **b)** jumping **c)** jump
3. He .... his room yesterday.
   a) cleans **b)** cleaned **c)** clean
4. .... was in the park.
   a) They **b)** We **c)** He

C

1. I go to work .... bus.
   a) on **b)** with **c)** by
2. I .... at the bookshop yesterday.
   a) am **b)** were **c)** was
3. You have to .... your homework.
   a) did **b)** do **c)** doing
4. My mother .... in the kitchen.
   a) are **b)** is **c)** were

C. Writing

6 **Look and answer the questions:**

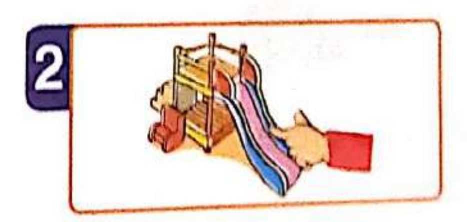
A

1



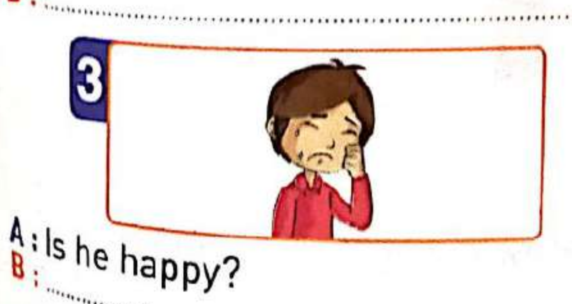
A : Was she in the hall?
B : ....

2



A : What is this?
B : ....

3



A : Is he happy?
B : ....

4





A : Where is she?
B : ....

B

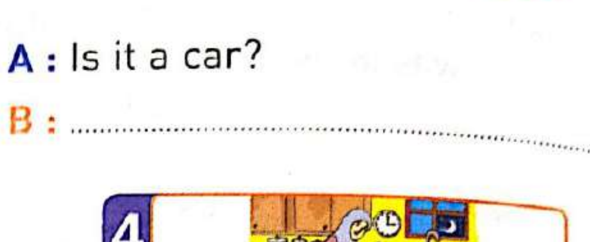
1



A : Is he in the kitchen?

B : ....

2



A : Is it a car?

B : ....

3



A : Where are they?

B : ....

4

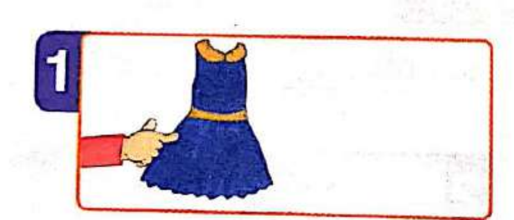
A : What is she doing?

B : ....



C

1



A : Is this a dress?

B : ....

2



A : What is this?

B : ....

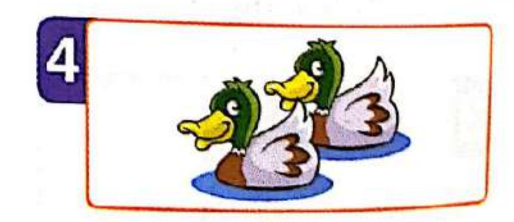
3



A : What did they do yesterday?

B : ....

4



A : How many ducks can you see?

B : ....

7 Look and write THREE sentences:

A

- ....
- ....
- ....

B

- ....
- ....
- ....

C

- ....
- ....
- ....

8 Punctuate the following:

A

- let s go to the zoo on monday/

....

B

- Ok that s three pounds/

....

C

- no she wasn t\

....



- Vocabulary
- Conversations
- Structure
- Graded Exams
- Workbook Sample Tests
- Final Exams
- Tape scripts & Answers
- Workbook Answer Key

- جميع المفردات اللغوية التى وردت على مدار المنهج.
- أهم المحادثات التى وردت على مدار المنهج.
- جميع القواعد النحوية التى وردت على مدار المنهج.
- اختبارات متدرجة الصعوبة (سهل-متوسط-صعب).
- اختبارات كتاب التدريبات.
- اختبارات نهائية من الإدارات والمحافظات.
- جميع نصوص الاستماع التى وردت على مدار الكتاب
- والإجابات الخاصة بجزئيتى (Check-points & Practise Writing).
- جميع إجابات كتاب التدريبات.

Second Term
Final Revision

Chemist's items — أغراض فى الصيدلية

soap	صابون	shampoo	شامبو	make-up	مكياج	perfume	برفان (عطر)
medicine	دواء	toothpaste	معجون أسنان	sunscreen	كريم واقي من الشمس		

Nature — الطبيعة

grass	حشائش	sand	رمال	snow	جليد	wildlife	حياه برية
pond(s)	بركة ماء (برك ماء)	tree(s)	شجرة (أشجار)	river(s)	نهر (أنهار)		

Food and drinks — أطعمة و مشروبات

salt	ملح	pepper	فلفل	cheese	جبنة/ جبن	hot sauce	صلصة حارة
spaghetti	مكرونة إسباجتي	pickles	مخلل	mushrooms	فطر (عش الغراب)	carrots	جزر
salad	سلطة	butter	زبدة	strawberry	آيس كريم	chocolate	رقاقة بسكويت
				ice cream	فراولة	chip cookie	بالشيكولاتة
cake	تورته/ كيك	soup	حساء (شوربة)	candy	حلوى	milk	لبن

Public buildings — مبانى عامة

museum	متحف	cinema	سينما	department store	متجر متعدد الأقسام	hospital	مستشفي
restaurant	مطعم	bookshop	محل بيع كتب	bakery	مخبز	chemist's	صيدلية

Places at home — أماكن بالمنزل

bathroom	حمّام	dining room	غرفة الطعام	bedroom	غرفة النوم	garden	حديقة المنزل
hall	طرقة/ صالة	living room	غرفة المعيشة	kitchen	مطبخ	garage	جراج

Adjectives — الصفات

cheap	رخيص الثمن	expensive	غالى الثمن	green	أخضر/ خضراء	yellow	أصفر/ صفراء
hungry	جوعان	good	جيد	great	عظيم	bored	يشعر بالملل
cold	بردان	hot	حران	thirsty	عطشان	wrong	خطأ

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
hurry	يسرع	hurried	drop	يسقط / يلقى	dropped
use	يستخدم	used	like	يحب	liked
want	يريد	wanted	thank	يشكر	thanked
ask	يسأل	asked	exercise	يتمرن/ يتدرب	exercised
listen	يستمع	listened	help	يساعد	helped
start	يبدأ	started	play	يلعب	played
remember	يتذكر	remembered	worry	يقلق	worried
sound	يبدو	sounded	jump	يقفز	jumped
dance	يرقص	danced	look for	يبحث عن	looked for

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
take	يأخذ	took	forget	ينسى	forgot
can	يستطيع	could	hurt	يؤلم	hurt
do	يفعل	did	see	يرى	saw
have	يملك / يتناول	had	feel	يشعر	felt
find	يجد	found	go	يذهب	went
speak	يتحدث	spoke	know	يعرف	knew

Phrases: عبارات:

wash my hands	أغسل يدى	brush my teeth	اغسل أسنانى بالفرشاة
clean my room	أنظف حجرتى	call a friend	يتصل بصديق
listen to music	يستمع إلى الموسيقى	practise the piano	يتدرب على عزف البيانو
play video games	يلعب ألعاب الفيديو	bake cookies	يخبز رقائق البسكويت
wash the car	يغسل السيارة	watch videos	يشاهد أفلام فيديو
play basketball	يلعب كره السلة	make a sandwich	يعمل ساندوتش
ride a bike	يركب دراجة	do homework	يؤدى/ يقوم بعمل الواجب المنزلى

Phonics Time Revision



Final s /s/

English	Arabic	English	Arabic
caps	قبعات	cats	قطط
ducks	بط	beets	بنجر
bats	خفافيش	cups	فناجين
tops	لعبة النحلة	mats	دواسات (سجاد صغير)
chips	بطاطس الشيبسي	kits	أدوات / عدة
cakes	تورتة / كيك	kites	طائرات ورقية
bikes	دراجات	carts	عربات كارو
socks	جورب	books	كتب
nuts	مكسرات/ بندق	rats	فئران
pots	أوانٍ/ حلل		

Final s /z/

English	Arabic	English	Arabic
bags	حقائب	girls	بنات
peas	بازلاء	dogs	كلاب
bees	نحل	cubs	صغار الحيوانات (خصوصا المفترسة)
pens	أقلام جافة	boys	أولاد
kids	أطفال	pills	حبوب دواء
pins	دبابيس	trees	أشجار
arms	أذرع	eyes	عيون
legs	أرجل	cabs	سيارات أجرة

Unit 8

Final es /Iz/

boxes	صناديق	buses	أتوبيسات
pencil cases	مقلمات	sandwiches	ساندوتشات
nurses	ممرضات	oranges	برتقال
bushes	شجيرات	peaches	خوخ
witches	ساحرات	beaches	شواطئ
foxes	ثعالب	leashes	سلاسل/ قيود/ ألجمة
purses	حافظات نقود للسيدات	kisses	قُبلات
lashes	أسواط/ سياط	matches	أعواد كبريت
glasses	نظارة / نظارات		

Unit 9

br/br/		gr/gr/		pr/pr/	
bread	خبز	grandmother	جدة	present	هدية
brown	بنّي	green	أخضر	prize	جائزة
broom	مقشة	grapes	عنب	pretty	جميلة
bridge	كوبري	grow	يزرع/ ينمو	price	سعر/ثمن
bride	عروس	great	عظيم	Prue	برو (اسم بنت)
brother	أخ	grandfather	جد	prune	برقوق/ خوخ مجفف
brick	قالب طوب				
umbrella	شمسية				

Unit 10

cr /kr/		dr /dr/		tr / tr/	
rab	كابوريا	dream	حلم/ يحلم	tree	شجرة
ry	يبكي	dress	فستان	truck	شاحنة صغيرة
racker	بسكويتة رقيقة	drum	طبلة	trade	يتبادل
rayon	قلم ألوان شمع	drive	يقود	train	قطار
ross	يعبُر	drink	يشرب	true	صحيح
reek	جدول مائي	drain	بالوعة		
rane	رافعة (ونش)	draw	يرسم		

Unit 11

fl /fl/		pl /pl/		sl /sl/	
lag	علم	play	يلعب	sleep	ينام
ly	ذبابة / يطير	plums	برقوق	slide	زحليقة
ute	فلوت (آلة نفخ موسيقية)	plate	طبق	slipper	شبشب
ea	برغوث	plant	نبات	slug	بزاق (حشرة رخوة)
oat	يطفو	aeroplane	طائرة	slow	بطيء
ake	قشرة			sleeve	كم (الرداء)
at	شقة				
lower	زهرة				

Unit 12

sm/sm/		sn/sn/		sp/sp/	
smell	يشم	snake	ثعبان	spell	يتهجى
smile	يبتسم	sneeze	يعطس	spider	عنكبوت
smoke	دخان	snail	حلزون (قوقع)	spaghetti	مكرونه إسباجتي
Smith	سميث (اسم ولد)	snow	جليد	Spain	إسبانيا
smash	يسحق / يحطم	snatch	ينتزع/ يخطف	speak	يتحدث
small	صغير الحجم	sniff	يشمشم	spring	فصل الربيع
				hospital	مستشفى

Conversation Time Revision



A boy : How much are these? - كم ثمن هؤلاء؟

An assistant : They're one pound each. - الواحدة ثمنها جنيه.

A boy : Wow! That's cheap. I'll take three. - واو! إنها رخيصة. سأخذ ثلاثة.

An assistant : Okay. That's three pounds. Hey! Don't forget your change.
- حسناً. إنها بثلاثة جنيهات. مهلاً! لا تنسى الفكة (باقي النقود).

A boy : Oops! Thanks a lot. - عفواً! شكراً جزيلاً.

Unit 8

The ranger : Hey! Don't do that! - مهلًا! لا تفعل ذلك!

A young boy : What? - ماذا؟

The ranger : Don't drop litter! Use the bin.
- لا تلقِ (ترم) القمامة! استخدم سلة المهملات.

A young boy : I'm sorry. Where is it? - أنا أسف. أين هي؟

The ranger : It's over there. It's under the tree. - انها هناك. إنها تحت الشجرة.

A young boy : Oh! I see it. Thanks. - أوه! أراها. شكراً.

Unit 9

Kareem : I'm hungry. - أنا جوعان.

Mona : Me, too. Let's have a snack. Do you want a chocolate chip cookie?
- وأنا، أيضًا. هيا بنا نتناول وجبة خفيفة. هل تريد رقاقة بسكويت بالشيكولاتة؟

Kareem : No, thanks. I don't like cookies. - لا، شكراً. أنا لا أحب رقائق البسكويت.

Mona : What about some strawberry ice cream? - ماذا عن بعض من آيس كريم الفراولة؟

Kareem : Mm! That sounds good. - ممم! ذلك يبدو جيدًا.

Unit 10

Sarah : Look! Whose purse is this?
Ali : Maybe it's hers. Let's ask.
Sarah : Excuse me.
A woman : Yes?
Sarah : Is this your purse?
A woman : Yes, it is. Thank you so much.
Sarah : You're welcome.

- انظر! لمن حافظة النقود هذه؟
- ربما تكون ملكها. هيا بنا نسأل.
- معذرة.
- نعم؟
- هل حافظة النقود هذه تخصك؟
- نعم. أشكرك شكرًا جزيلاً.
- على الرحب و السعة/ العفو.

Unit 11

Ramy : I'm bored.
Kareem : So am I. Let's play football.
Ramy : Dad! We're going outside.
Ramy's dad : Remember, you have to do your homework.
Ramy : I know, Dad.
Ramy's dad : Be back at six.
Ramy : All right. Bye!
Ramy's dad : Bye, kids. Have fun!

- أنا أشعر بالملل.
- وأنا كذلك. هيا بنا نلعب كرة القدم.
- أبى! نحن ذاهبون للخارج.
- تذكر، يجب أن تؤدى واجبك المنزلى.
- أنا أعرف، يا أبى.
- عُد فى الساعة السادسة تمامًا.
- وهو كذلك. مع السلامة!
- مع السلامة، يا أطفال. استمتعوا!



Unit 12

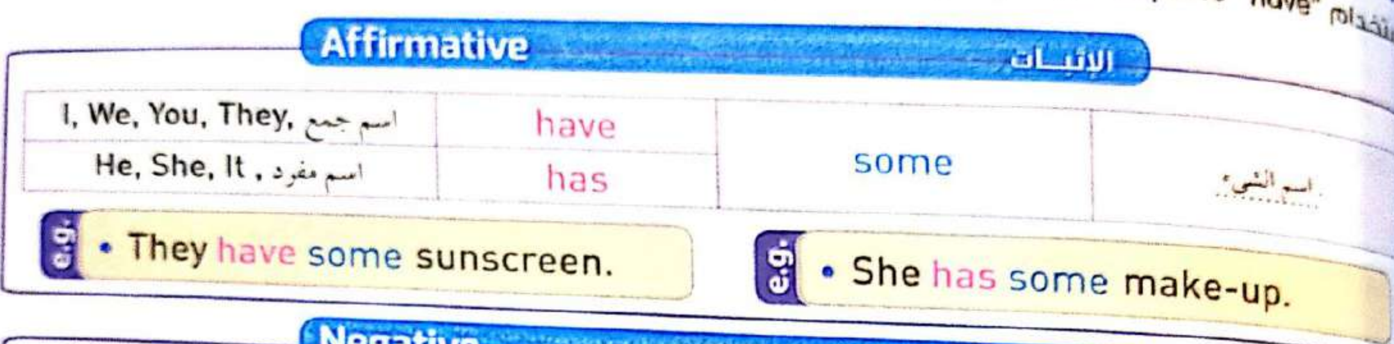
Mona : Hello. Is Kareem there, please?
A man : I'm sorry. You have the wrong number.
Mona : Is this 245-8769?
A man : No, it isn't. It's 245-8768.
Mona : Sorry.
A man : That's okay. Good-bye.

- مرحبًا. هل كريم موجود، من فضلك؟
- آسف. لقد اتصلتِ بالرقم الخطأ.
- هل هذا ٢٤٥-٨٧٦٩؟
- لا، إنه ٢٤٥-٨٧٦٨.
- أسفة.
- حسنًا لا عليكِ. مع السلامة.



Using verb to "have" with "some" & " any" in affirmative and negative statements:

استخدام v. to "have" بمعنى "لديه /يملك" مع "some" & "any" فى الجمل المثبتة و المنفية:



Affirmative الإثبات

Subject	Verb		
I, We, You, They, اسم جمع	have	some	اسم الشيء.
He, She, It , اسم مفرد	has		

e.g. • They have some sunscreen.

e.g. • She has some make-up.

Negative النفى

Subject	Verb		
I, We, You, They, اسم جمع	don't have	any	اسم الشيء.
He, She, It , اسم مفرد	doesn't have		

e.g. • They don't have any toothpaste.

e.g. • She doesn't have any soap.



"There is /There are….." with countable and uncountable nouns:

يوجد...." مع الأسماء المعدودة وغير المعدودة:



Affirmative الإثبات	There is	a/an	اسم مفرد (معدود).	e.g: There is a mountain.
	There is	some	اسم مفرد (غير معدود).	e.g: There is some wildlife.
	There are	some	اسم جمع (معدود).	e.g: There are some ponds.
Negative النفى	There isn't	any	اسم مفرد (غير معدود).	e.g: There isn't any sand.
	There aren't	any	اسم جمع (معدود).	e.g: There aren't any mountains.

• لاحظ الاختصار: There is = There's



Asking about the availability of something using "Is/Are there any........?":

- السؤال عن مدى اتاحة (توافر) شيء ما باستخدام "هل يوجد أى ....؟"

• للسؤال بـ "هل" عن مدى إتاحة (توافر) شيء مفرد غير معدود (طعام):

e.g : A: Is there any	salt pepper cheese hot sauce spaghetti	?

للإجابة بالإثبات
B : Yes, there is.

للإجابة بالنفى
B : No, there isn't.

• للسؤال بـ "هل" عن مدى إتاحة (توافر) أشياء جمع معدودة (أطعمة):

e.g : A: Are there any	pickles mushrooms carrots	?

للإجابة بالإثبات
B : Yes, there are.

للإجابة بالنفى
B : No, there aren't.



Expressing past location using verb to "be" in the past simple tense:

التعبير عن التواجد فى مكان ما باستخدام فعل "يكون" فى زمن الماضى البسيط:

Affirmative: الإثبات

I/He/ She/It/ اسم مفرد	was	at	the (place). (المكان)
We/You/They/ اسم جمع	were		

e.g
• He was at the cinema.
• They were at the chemist's.

Negative: النفى

I/He/ She/It/ اسم مفرد	wasn't	at	the (place). (المكان)
We/You/They/ اسم جمع	weren't		

e.g
• He wasn't at the restaurant.
• They weren't at the bakery.

• لاحظ الاختصارات:

was not = wasn't
were not = weren't



Asking about past location using verb to "be" in the past simple tense:

السؤال عن التواجد فى مكان ما باستخدام فعل "يكون" فى زمن الماضى البسيط:

Was	I/he/ she/it/ اسم مفرد	in	the (place)? (المكان)

للإجابة بالإثبات	للإجابة بالنفى
- Yes, I/he/she/it + was.	الإجابة المختصرة: - No, I/he/she/it + wasn't. or الإجابة الكاملة: - No, I/he/she/it + wasn't. I/He/She/It was in the (مكان آخر).

e.g. A: Was she in the bathroom?

للإجابة بالإثبات	للإجابة بالنفى
B: Yes, she was.	B: No, she wasn't. or B: No, she wasn't. She was in the kitchen.

Were	we/you/they/ اسم جمع	in	the (place)? (المكان)

للإجابة بالإثبات	للإجابة بالنفى
- Yes, we/they + were.	الإجابة المختصرة: - No, we/they + weren't. or الإجابة الكاملة: - No, we/they + weren't. We/They were in the (مكان آخر).

e.g. A: Were they in the bedroom?

للإجابة بالإثبات	للإجابة بالنفى
B: Yes, they were.	B: No, they weren't. or B: No, they weren't. They were in the hall.



The past simple tense:

زمن الماضى البسيط:

Usage الاستخدام

- The past simple tense is used for expressing an action that happened and ended in the past at a certain time.

- يستخدم زمن الماضى البسيط للتعبير عن فعل حدث فى الماضى وانتهى فى وقت محدد.

e.g. • I washed my hands yesterday. • She called a friend last April.

Form التكوين

Regular verbs: الأفعال المنتظمة:

• يتكون زمن الماضى البسيط من التصريف الثانى للفعل:

Subject (الفاعل) + (inf.) مصدر الفعل + (ed/d/ied)

• يضاف "ed" فى نهاية معظم الأفعال المنتظمة:

e.g. • clean → cleaned • brush → brushed

• عند انتهاء الفعل بـ"e" يضاف "d" فقط فى نهاية الفعل:

e.g. • bake → baked • practise → practised

• إذا انتهى الفعل بـ"y" مسبوقة بحرف ساكن يحذف حرف الـ "y" ويضاف "ied":

e.g. • study → studied • cry → cried

• إما إذا انتهى الفعل بـ"y" مسبوقة بحرف متحرك "a - e - i - o - u" يضاف "ed" فى نهاية الفعل:

e.g. • stay → stayed • play → played

• عند انتهاء بعض الأفعال بحرف ساكن مسبوق بحرف متحرك يضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير عند إضافة "ed":

e.g. • drop → dropped • stop → stopped

2- Irregular verbs: الأفعال غير المنتظمة: (تحفظ)

Subject (الفاعل) + irregular verb (فعل غير منتظم)

e.g. • ride → rode • make → made • know → knew

Key words الكلمات الدالة

• once ذات مرة
• ago منذ
• yesterday أمس
• last (week / month / year ..... etc.) (الأسبوع – الشهر – العام ... إلخ) الماضى

e.g. • He played video games last Friday.
• We brushed our teeth three hours ago.

Negative النفى

• عند النفى فى زمن الماضى البسيط نضيف "didn't" قبل التصريف الأول للفعل (مصدر الفعل):

Subject (الفاعل) + didn't + (inf.) مصدر الفعل ....

e.g.
• They baked cookies yesterday.
  Neg. (النفى) → They didn't bake cookies yesterday.
• She cleaned her room two days ago.
  Neg. (النفى) → She didn't clean her room two days ago.

Yes/No questions السؤال بـ "هل"

Did + subject (الفاعل) + (inf.) مصدر الفعل ..... ?

للإجابة بالإثبات	للإجابة بالنفى
- Yes, + subject (الفاعل) + did.	الإجابة المختصرة: - No, + subject (الفاعل) + didn't. or الإجابة الكاملة: - No, + subject (الفاعل) + didn't. Subject (الفاعل) + التصريف الثانى للفعل.

e.g. **A:** Did you wash your hands yesterday?

للإجابة بالإثبات	للإجابة بالنفى
B: Yes, I did.	B: No, I didn't. or B: No, I didn't. I brushed my teeth yesterday.

e.g. **A:** Did Kareem call a friend last week?

للإجابة بالإثبات	للإجابة بالنفى
B: Yes, he did.	B: No, he didn't. or B: No, he didn't. He cleaned his room last week.

Wh-questions السؤال بـ"كلمة الإستفهام"

Question word (كلمة الإستفهام) + did + subject (الفاعل) + (inf.) مصدر الفعل..... ?

للإجابة:

Subject (الفاعل) + التصريف الثانى للفعل........

e.g.
A : What did you do yesterday?
B : I brushed my teeth yesterday.

e.g.
A : What did they do two days ago?
B : They danced two days ago.

Graded Exams اختبارات متدرجة الصعوبة

Exam (1) "Easy"



A. Listening



1 Listen and circle the word with the short vowel:

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب.

a. lute – gum b. blue – duck c. pencil – green d. leg – eat

2 Listen and complete with one word:

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب.

1. Is Kareem there, ...?
2. I'm listening to ....
3. She didn't .... video games.
4. I go to .... by car.

B. Reading

3 Read and write (True "T" or false "F"):



	True	False
1. The mother is eating.	[..........]	[..........]
2. There are four people.	[..........]	[..........]
3. We put food in the fridge.	[..........]	[..........]
4. There aren't any animals.	[..........]	[..........]

4 Read and circle the odd one:

1.	cheese	salt	pepper	green
2.	mushrooms	museum	cinema	hospital
3.	bedroom	bathroom	tree	living room
4.	wash	clean	dance	bus

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c:

1. They .... at the hospital yesterday.
   a) was   b) were   c) isn't
2. Is there .... salt?
   a) any   b) many   c) some
3. He .... his hands yesterday.
   a) washes   b) wash   c) washed
4. I am hungry. Let's have a ....
   a) snack   b) black   c) flag

C. Writing

6 Look and answer the questions:

1

A : Is he sad?
B : ....

2

A : How do you go to school?
B : ....

3

A : What is he doing?
B : ....

4

A : What do you want?
B : ....

7 Look and write THREE sentences:

- ....
- ....
- ....

8 Punctuate the following:

- he s good at english/ ....

Exam (2) " Medium"



A. Listening

1 Listen and circle the word with the short vowel:



للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب Listen

a. red – read   b. true – run   c. kiss – kite   d. ball – wallet

2 Listen and complete with one word:

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب

1. Where's the .... ?
2. I .... like cookies.
3. He was at the ....
4. Is this your.................... ?

B. Reading

3 Read and write (True"T" or False"F"):



		True	False
1.	There are three carrots.	[..........]	[..........]
2.	There isn't any salt.	[..........]	[..........]
3.	There is some cheese.	[..........]	[..........]
4.	There are some pickles.	[..........]	[..........]

4 Read and circle the odd one:

1.	sneeze	smell	smile	car
2.	snail	spaghetti	snake	spider
3.	wash	call	cleaned	practise
4.	it	at	under	on



5 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c:

1. .... was at the bookshop.
   a) I b) We c) They
2. .... much are these?
   a) What b) How c) Whose
3. .... have the wrong number.
   a) You b) She c) He
4. .... there any mushrooms?
   a) Are b) Is c) Was

C. Writing

6 Look and answer the questions:

1

A : What does he want?
B : ....

2

A : Was she in the dining room?
B : ....

3

A : What is he doing?
B : ....

4

A : Where is she?
B : ....

7 Look and write THREE sentences:

- ....
- ....
- ....

8 Punctuate the following:

- let s go to the park Hoda/ ....

Exam (3) " Hard"

A. Listening

1 Listen and circle the word with the short vowel:



للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب

a. plate - plum b. top – snow c. sleeve – slipper d. name – man

2 Listen and complete with one word:

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب

1. I have some ....
2. No, thanks. I don't like ....
3. She .... at home.
4. Don't forget .... change.

B. Reading

3 Read and write (True"T" or False"F"):



	True	False
1. There is a sea.	(..................)	(..................)
2. There are three boats in the sea.	(..................)	(..................)
3. There are two dogs.	(..................)	(..................)
4. The girl is running.	(..................)	(..................)

4 Read and circle the odd one:

1.	mountains	snow	trees	ponds
2.	grow	forget	price	take
3.	my	he	his	her
4.	mushrooms	pickles	carrots	cheese

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c:

1. .... any hot sauce?
   a) Is there   b) There is   c) Are there
2. That .... good.
   a) sound   b) sounds   c) sounding
3. This book is one pound. It's ....
   a) ship   b) cheap   c) chip
4. I .... sick.
   a) feel   b) fill   c) fell

C. Writing

6 Look and answer the questions:

1

A : Do you want to eat?
B : ....

2

A : Where are they?
B : ....

3

A : Does he like TV?
B : ....

4

A : Are they in the bathroom?
B : ....

7 Look and write THREE sentences:

- ....
- ....
- ....

8 Punctuate the following:

- no he doesn t/ ....

Workbook Sample Tests Test (1)



A. Listening

1 Listen and circle the word with the short vowel:



للاجابة راجع نص الاستماع باخر الكتاب

a. spell – sneeze b. bug – blue c. bed – bee d. pin – home

2 Listen and complete with one word:

للاجابة راجع نص الاستماع باخر الكتاب

1. How much are ....?
2. I need some ....
3. There is some ....
4. He is ....

B. Reading

3 Read and write (True "T" or false "F"):



	True	False
1. There's some snow.	[..........]	[..........]
2. The girl is eating.	[..........]	[..........]
3. There are nine trees.	[..........]	[..........]
4. The man is on the boat.	[..........]	[..........]

4 Read and circle the odd one:

1.	trees	bus	ponds	rivers
2.	pepper	hot sauce	cat	salt
3.	father	duck	mother	brother
4.	green	grapes	brown	black

Choose the correct answer from a, b or c:

. Is there .... salt?
a) any b) many c) some

. Was she .... the garden?
a) at b) in c) on

. ... about going to the cinema?
a) Whose b) What c) Where

. I .... call a friend yesterday. I washed my hands.
a) didn't b) don't c) doesn't

C. Writing

Look and answer the questions:

1
: Is he happy?
: ....

2
A : How does she go to school?
B : ....

3
: What is this?
: ....

4
A : What's she doing?
B : ....

Look and write THREE sentences:

....

....

....

Punctuate the following:

kay that s three pounds/ ....



Test (2)

A. Listening

1 Listen and circle the word with the short vowel:



للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب

a.  glue – up b. man – cake c. box – home d. vet – queen

2 Listen and complete with one word:

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب

1. I have some ....
2. They don't .... videos.
3. She practises in the ....
4. Whose wallet is .... ?



B. Reading

3 Read and write (True "T" or false "F"):



	True	False
1. There are two girls.	(..........)	(..........)
2. The boy is playing video games.	(..........)	(..........)
3. They are sitting in the bedroom.	(..........)	(..........)
4. The boy is calling a friend.	(..........)	(..........)

4 Read and circle the odd one:

1.	leg	eye	teacher	ear
2.	underground	ferry	train	butter
3.	parrot	baby	canary	duck
4.	school	museum	English	bakery

Choose the correct answer from a, b or c:

. What .... some strawberry ice cream?
a) on b) about c) for

. Let's .... a friend.
a) call b) calls c) calling

. Hey! Don't do ....
a) that b) this c) those

. ... have the wrong number.
a) You b) She c) He



C. Writing

Look and answer the questions:



A : Where is it?
B : ....



A : How much are those?
B : ....





A : Where is the teacher?
B : ....





A : Do you have a dress?
B : ....

Look and write THREE sentences:

• ....
• ....
• ....



Punctuate the following:

• let s go to the park on monday/ ....



Test (3)



A. Listening

1 Listen and circle the word with the short vowel:



للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب

a. tune – cup b. bed – feet c. night – tin d. fox – coat

2 Listen and complete with one word:

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب

1. .... you so much.
2. They .... their teeth.
3. I .... some money.
4. He doesn't .... cookies.

B. Reading

3 Read and write (True "T" or false "F"):



	True	False
1. They are in the kitchen.	(..........)	(..........)
2. The woman is baking cookies.	(..........)	(..........)
3. There are hot sauce and mushrooms.	(..........)	(..........)
4. The man is eating spaghetti.	(..........)	(..........)

4 Read and circle the odd one:

1.	cookies	cereal	sandwiches	keys
2.	dog	cat	girl	bat
3.	garage	hall	garden	salt
4.	cap	toothpaste	shampoo	soap

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c:

1. Whose wallet .... this?
   a) is b) are c) does
2. He .... his hand yesterday.
   a) washes b) wash c) washed
3. .... was at the restaurant.
   a) They b) We c) I
4. .... much are these?
   a) What b) How c) Whose

C. Writing

6 Look and answer the questions:

1

A : What does he like?
B : ....

2

A : What do you want to eat?
B : ....

3

A : What does he have?
B : ....

4

A : Is it a kitchen?
B : ....

7 Look and write THREE sentences:

- ....
- ....
- ....

8 Punctuate the following:

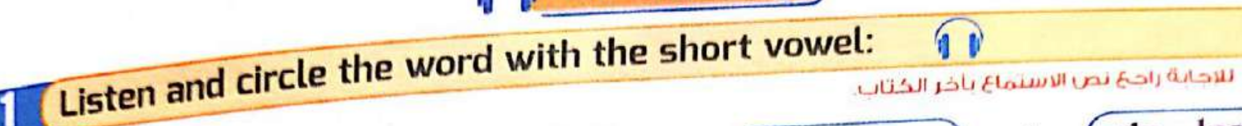
- no it isn t/ ....

امتحانات بعض المدارس والإدارات لعام 2016/2017

١- محافظة القاهرة - إدارة المطرية التعليمية



A. Listening



1 Listen and circle the word with the short vowel:





للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب.

a. boat – pond b. bin – night c. cat – tape d. pin – leash

2 Listen and complete with one word:

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب.

1. I .... with my eyes.
2. Can you .... me?
3. How .... is it?
4. It is seven ....



B. Reading

3 Read and write (True"T" or False"F"):



		True	False
1.	It's a bakery.	(..........)	(..........)
2.	I can see some bread.	(..........)	(..........)
3.	He plays football.	(..........)	(..........)
4.	There is a girl.	(..........)	(..........)

4 Read and circle the odd one:

1.	red	yellow	book	blue
2.	father	duck	mother	brother
3.	cap	jacket	dress	train
4.	leg	eye	ear	teacher

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c:

1. Let's .... football.
   a) play   b) eat   c) sing
2. .... book is this? - It's mine.
   a) Who   b) Whose   c) What
3. No, she ....
   a) is   b) was   c) wasn't
4. He .... his uncle yesterday.
   a) visited   b) visit   c) visiting

C. Writing

6 Look and answer the questions:

1

A : Do you like apples?
B : ....

2

A : Are there any pickles?
B : ....

3

A : Is it a cat?
B : ....

4

A : What is he doing?
B : ....

7 Look and write THREE sentences:

- ....
- ....
- ....

8 Punctuate the following:

- does noha go to school on friday/ ....



A. Listening

1 Listen and circle the word with the short vowel:





للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب.

a. coat – box   b. feet – vet   c. up – tune   d. gum – glue

2 Listen and complete with one word:

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب.

1. Thank you .... much.
2. Don't .... litter.
3. Let's .... to the museum.
4. You .... welcome.

B. Reading

3 Read and write (True"T" or False"F"):



	True	False
1. There is a boy.	(....................)	(....................)
2. He's sleeping.	(....................)	(....................)
3. I can see a woman.	(....................)	(....................)
4. He is in the living room.	(....................)	(....................)

4 Read and circle the odd one:

1.	cinema	hospital	grass	bakery
2.	father	duck	mother	sister
3.	run	ice cream	eat	play
4.	grass	plant	keys	tree

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c:

1. What about .... ice cream?
   a) any b) some c) a
2. They .... a nice film yesterday.
   a) watched b) watch c) watching
3. I .... hungry. Let's have a snack.
   a) is b) am c) are
4. .... were at the bookshop.
   a) They b) She c) It



6 Look and answer the questions:



A : Were they at the hospital?
B : ....



A : What are these?
B : ....



A : What is this?
B : ....



A : Are there any trees?
B : ....

7 Look and write THREE sentences:



- ....
- ....
- ....

8 Punctuate the following:

- what can heba and dina see/ ....

٣- محافظة الإسكندرية - إدارة المنتزه التعليمية



A. Listening

1 Listen and circle the word with the short vowel:





للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب.

a. crab - cry   b. tree - dress   c. plum - flute   d. float - flag

2 Listen and complete with one word:

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب.

1. That sounds ....
2. .... go to the museum.
3. You .... the wrong number.
4. How .... the cinema?



B. Reading

3 Read and write (True"T" or False"F"):



		True	False
1.	There is a girl.	[..................]	[..................]
2.	She bakes cookies.	[..................]	[..................]
3.	She practises the piano.	[..................]	[..................]
4.	She plays video games.	[..................]	[..................]

4 Read and circle the odd one:

1.	grass	tree	mountain	leg
2.	garage	film	living room	bathroom
3.	cheese	brown	pepper	cereal
4.	girl	bookshop	chemist's	hospital

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c:

1. Whose purse .... this?
   a) are b) does c) is
2. There .... any rivers.
   a) isn't b) doesn't c) aren't
3. .... did you do yesterday? - I brushed my teeth.
   a) When b) What c) How
4. .... there any cheese?
   a) Is b) Are c) Do

C. Writing

6 Look and answer the questions:

1

A : Are there any pickles?
B : ....

2

A : Is this a garage?
B : ....

3

A : Do you like fish?
B : ....

4

A : What is this?
B : ....

7 Look and write THREE sentences:

- ....
- ....
- ....

8 Punctuate the following:

- no it isn t/ ....



A. Listening

1 Listen and circle the word with the short vowel:





للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب.

a. kite - sit b. train - car c. fox - home d. boat - box

2 Listen and complete with one word:

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب.

1. Is this your .... ?
2. The .... is over there.
3. They .... video games yesterday.
4. Let's have .... cookies.



B. Reading

3 Read and write (True"T" or False"F"):



		True	False
1.	There is some sunscreen.	[..........]	[..........]
2.	There isn't any toothpaste.	[..........]	[..........]
3.	The woman is buying food.	[..........]	[..........]
4.	The boy has some perfume.	[..........]	[..........]

4 Read and circle the odd one:

1.	garage	garden	truck	hall
2.	wash	bedroom	sleep	play
3.	museum	hospital	chemist's	money
4.	cheese	salt	bathroom	pepper

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c:

1. Is there .... salt?
   a) some b) any c) an
2. They go to the .... to get a book.
   a) bakery b) bookshop c) restaurant
3. .... forget your change.
   a) Didn't b) Isn't c) Don't
4. Mum cooks food in the ....
   a) bedroom b) kitchen c) dining room

C. Writing

6 Look and answer the questions:

1
A : Were they at the museum?
B : ....

2
A : Where is she?
B : ....

3
A : Where is the bin?
B : ....

4
A : What do you want?
B : ....

7 Look and write THREE sentences:

- ....
- ....
- ....

8 Punctuate the following:

- ali went to benha on monday/ ....

٥- محافظة المنوفية - إدارة بركة السبع التعليمية



A. Listening



1 Listen and circle the word with the short vowel:

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب.

a. tea - pen b. cup - soap c. kit - kite d. boat - hot

2 Listen and complete with one word:

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب.

1. They are one pound ....
2. .... she practise the piano?
3. I cleaned my ....
4. Let's .... a snack.

B. Reading

3 Read and write (True"T" or False"F"):



		True	False
1.	They are watching TV.	(....................)	(....................)
2.	There are three people.	(....................)	(....................)
3.	A man is cooking.	(....................)	(....................)
4.	They're in the bedroom.	(....................)	(....................)

4 Read and circle the odd one:

1.	run	use	drop	fox
2.	pepper	flag	butter	cheese
3.	play	crab	sleep	go
4.	plum	museum	hospital	restaurant

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c:

1. They .... at the restaurant yesterday.
   a) were b) was c) are
2. .... Kareem there?
   a) Is b) Were c) Are
3. Hey! Don't .... that.
   a) does b) do c) did
4. Let's .... video games.
   a) playing b) plays c) play

C. Writing

6 Look and answer the questions:

1

A : What is this?
B : ....

2

A : Where do you drop litter?
B : ....

3

A : Is it a tree?
B : ....

4

A : Are there any carrots?
B : ....

7 Look and write THREE sentences:

- ....
- ....
- ....

8 Punctuate the following:

- ahmed and soha didn't visit alexandria/ ....

٦- محافظة الغربية - إدارة كفر الزيات التعليمية



A. Listening

1 Listen and circle the word with the short vowel:

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب. Listen

a. (fun - tune) b. (leg - tree) c. (drop - home) d. (home - box)

2 Listen and complete with one word:

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب.

1. Let's go to the ....
2. I .... at the hospital.
3. He watches films at the ....
4. .... are green.

B. Reading

3 Read and write (True"T" or False"F"):



		True	False
1.	There isn't any grass.	(.....................)	(.....................)
2.	The girl is eating.	(.....................)	(.....................)
3.	The man is on the boat.	(.....................)	(.....................)
4.	There are nine trees.	(.....................)	(.....................)

4 Read and circle the odd one:

1.	Monday	wrong	sorry	good
2.	go	have	play	school
3.	Kareem	museum	Mona	Aya
4.	boy	child	hat	girl

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c:

1. Whose wallet .... this?
   a) are b) am c) is
2. No, I ....
   a) was b) wasn't c) isn't
3. There .... some flowers on the table.
   a) are b) is c) was
4. There aren't .... grass.
   a) some b) any c) the



6 Look and answer the questions:



A : Was she in the bedroom?
B : ....



A : Where is your mother?
B : ....



A : What is it?
B : ....



A : How much is it?
B : ....

7 Look and write THREE sentences:



- ....
- ....
- ....

8 Punctuate the following:

- no she wasn t/ ....



٧- محافظة الدقهلية - إدارة أجا التعليمية

A. Listening

1 Listen and circle the word with the short vowel:





للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب.

a. use - sun b. tune - cup c. that - these d. coat - box

2 Listen and complete with one word:

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب.

1. He .... some money.
2. How .... are these?
3. Is this your .... ?
4. Let's have a ....

B. Reading

3 Read and write (True"T" or False"F"):



		True	False
1.	There is a woman.	(..........)	(..........)
2.	She is watching TV.	(..........)	(..........)
3.	She is cooking.	(..........)	(..........)
4.	She is in the kitchen.	(..........)	(..........)

4 Read and circle the odd one:

1.	ponds	rivers	bus	trees
2.	garage	hall	garden	book
3.	happy	bored	hot	help
4.	help	need	sauce	like

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c:

1. She .... some make-up.
   a) have   b) has   c) are
2. I listen to music .... the evening.
   a) on   b) in   c) at
3. Were you in the bathroom this morning? - Yes, I ....
   a) were   b) was   c) am
4. There .... any salt.
   a) is   b) aren't   c) isn't

C. Writing

6 Look and answer the questions:

1

A : What is this?
B : ....

2

A : Are there any mushrooms?
B : ....

3

A : Do you like cookies?
B : ....

4

A : What do you want?
B : ....

7 Look and write THREE sentences:

- ....
- ....
- ....

8 Punctuate the following:

- we re studying english/ ....

٨- محافظة كفر الشيخ - إدارة مطوبس التعليمية

A. Listening

1 Listen and circle the word with the short vowel:

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب.

a. bike - pin b. bed - dream c. spell - sneeze d. coat - hot

2 Listen and complete with one word:

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب.

1. Let's have a ....
2. Let's ....
3. Do you .... fish?
4. How .... the cinema?



B. Reading

3 Read and write (True"T" or False"F"):



		True	False
1.	They are at the park.	[..........]	[..........]
2.	The bin is on the table.	[..........]	[..........]
3.	There is a girl.	[..........]	[..........]
4.	They are at school.	[..........]	[..........]

4 Read and circle the odd one:

1.	father	mother	sister	book
2.	Whose	What	Do	Where
3.	cake	tea	meat	apple
4.	cheese	spaghetti	mountain	pepper

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c:

1. What .... they eat yesterday?
   a) did b) do c) does
2. There .... any mushrooms.
   a) isn't b) aren't c) wasn't
3. Let's .... football.
   a) played b) playing c) play
4. Was she in the garden? - Yes, she ....
   a) is b) was c) wasn't

C. Writing

6 Look and answer the questions:

1
A : What is this?
B : ....

2
A : Is he a doctor?
B : ....

3
A : Were they at the museum?
B : ....

4
A : Are there any trees?
B : ....

7 Look and write THREE sentences:

- ....
- ....
- ....

8 Punctuate the following:

- no there aren t any mushrooms/ ....

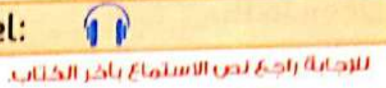
٩- محافظة البحيرة - إدارة إيتاي البارود التعليمية



A. Listening



1 Listen and circle the word with the short vowel:



للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب.

a. shop - drain b. flag - float c. smell - smoke d. tree - red

2 Listen and complete with one word:

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب.

1. Whose .... is this?
2. That sounds ....
3. Let's .... football.
4. What are you .... for?

B. Reading

3 Read and write (True"T" or False"F"):



		True	False
1.	This is a museum.	[..........]	[..........]
2.	This is a restaurant.	[..........]	[..........]
3.	The man is eating.	[..........]	[..........]
4.	There are some books.	[..........]	[..........]

4 Read and circle the odd one:

1.	hall	house	piano	garage
2.	take	drop	bin	get
3.	spaghetti	spider	slug	snake
4.	shampoo	perfume	forget	toothpaste

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c:

1. I .... find my sunscreen.
   a) doesn't   b) aren't   c) can't
2. I sleep in the ....
   a) kitchen   b) bathroom   c) bedroom
3. I .... call a friend yesterday.
   a) didn't   b) doesn't   c) don't
4. How .... is the toothpaste?
   a) many   b) much   c) old

C. Writing

6 Look and answer the questions:

1
A : What can you see?
B : ....

2
A : What is this?
B : ....

3
A : Does he like dogs?
B : ....

4
A : Were they in the garage?
B : ....

7 Look and write THREE sentences:

- ....
- ....
- ....

8 Punctuate the following:

- where s the candy, mona/ ....

١٠- محافظة دمياط - إدارة دمياط التعليمية



A. Listening

1 Listen and circle the word with the short vowel:

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب.

a. tub - tube b. bee - pen c. dog - door d. bike - pin

2 Listen and complete with one word:

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب.

1. I haven't got .... money.
2. You have to .... your homework.
3. Whose .... is this?
4. Don't .... your change.

B. Reading

3 Read and write (True"T" or False"F"):

	True	False
1. There are two carrots.	(..........)	(..........)
2. There isn't any salt.	(..........)	(..........)
3. There is some cheese.	(..........)	(..........)
4. There aren't any mushrooms.	(..........)	(..........)

4 Read and circle the odd one:

1.	pepper	hot sauce	rice	bus
2.	bathroom	plant	kitchen	dining room
3.	my	hers	ours	theirs
4.	soap	shampoo	tomatoes	toothpaste

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c:

1. .... she in the garden?
   a) Are   b) Was   c) Were
2. The bin is .... to the tree.
   a) under   b) next   c) on
3. .... have the wrong number.
   a) You   b) She   c) He
4. There is some .... in the fridge.
   a) ketchup   b) eggs   c) carrots

C. Writing

6 Look and answer the questions:

1

A : Is there any wildlife?
B : ....

2

A : Is he happy?
B : ....

3

A : How many books can you see?
B : ....

4

A : Was he in the bathroom?
B : ....

7 Look and write THREE sentences:

- ....
- ....
- ....

8 Punctuate the following:

- what are hala and mona doing/ ....

١١- محافظة الشرقية - إدارة العاشر من رمضان التعليمية



A. Listening

1 Listen and circle the word with the short vowel:

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب

a. glue - up b. man - cake c. box - home d. vet - queen

2 Listen and complete with one word:

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب

1. Were they in the dining .... ?
2. We .... bored.
3. Wow! That's ....
4. There's a plate .... the table.



B. Reading

3 Read and write (True"T" or False"F"):



	True	False
1. There is a girl.	[..........]	[..........]
2. She is doing her homework.	[..........]	[..........]
3. She is cleaning the room.	[..........]	[..........]
4. She is at the bookshop.	[..........]	[..........]

4 Read and circle the odd one:

1.	museum	exercise	cinema	bakery
2.	hurry	wear	sunscreen	do
3.	What	Where	present	How
4.	cat	cap	bee	duck

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c:

1. He is .... the chemist's.
   a) on b) at c) of
2. Let's .... a friend.
   a) call b) calls c) calling
3. .... about going to the cinema?
   a) Who b) What c) Whose
4. She doesn't .... any make-up.
   a) has b) had c) have

C. Writing

6 Look and answer the questions:

1
A : What are these?
B : ....

2
A : Were they in the bedroom?
B : ....

3
A : What is this?
B : ....

4
A : How many apples are there?
B : ....

7 Look and write THREE sentences:

- ....
- ....
- ....

8 Punctuate the following:

- what s reham doing/ ....

١٢- محافظة السويس - إدارة شمال التعليمية



A. Listening



1 Listen and circle the word with the short vowel:

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب.

a. read - red b. prune - cut c. tune - truck d. pot - goat

2 Listen and complete with one word:

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب.

1. He .... at the bakery.
2. Thank you so ....
3. Is this .... purse?
4. I can see .... pepper.

B. Reading

3 Read and write (True"T" or False"F"):



		True	False
1.	They are at the park.	[..........]	[..........]
2.	They are playing tennis.	[..........]	[..........]
3.	There's a tree.	[..........]	[..........]
4.	They are girls.	[..........]	[..........]

4 Read and circle the odd one:

1.	wash	brush	clean	video
2.	cheese	carrots	chair	spaghetti
3.	Sunday	under	Monday	Friday
4.	sand	beach	butter	sea

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c:

1. What's .... ?
   a) this b) these c) those
2. The car is .... the garage.
   a) next b) between c) in
3. .... were in the restaurant.
   a) They b) He c) I
4. We .... have any soap.
   a) aren't b) don't c) doesn't

C. Writing

6 Look and answer the questions:

1
A : Is it a tree?
B : ....

2

A : What time is it?
B : ....

3
A : What does she have?
B : ....

4
A : What is he doing?
B : ....

7 Look and write THREE sentences:

- ....
- ....
- ....

8 Punctuate the following:

- let s go to the zoo on sunday/ ....

١٣- محافظة الوادى الجديد - إدارة الوادى الجديد التعليمية



A. Listening

1 Listen and circle the word with the short vowel: 



للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب.

a. grass – game b. cup – glue c. cat – cake d. home - hot

2 Listen and complete with one word:

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب.

1. She .... at the cinema.
2. Let's ....
3. That .... good.
4. Hey! Don't do ....

B. Reading

3 Read and write (True"T" or False"F"):



	True	False
1. I can see a baker.	[..............]	[..............]
2. This is a girl.	[..............]	[..............]
3. We can buy bread at the bakery.	[..............]	[..............]
4. It is a cinema.	[..............]	[..............]

4 Read and circle the odd one:

1.	mother	friend	brother	father
2.	garage	garden	book	hall
3.	snow	grass	sand	box
4.	carrot	salt	sand	pepper

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c:

1. I'm so .... Let's play football.
   a) bored b) hungry c) thirsty
2. .... there any trees?
   a) Are b) Is c) Was
3. .... pen is this?
   a) Where b) When c) Whose
4. I don't have .... medicine.
   a) some b) any c) a

C. Writing

6 Look and answer the questions:

1. L.E. 5

A : How much is it?
B : ....

2.

A : Where was he?
B : ....

3.

A : How do you go to school?
B : ....

4.

A : Do you have any toothpaste?
B : ....

7 Look and write THREE sentences:

- ....
- ....
- ....

8 Punctuate the following:

- let s go to the park on friday/ ....



A. Listening

1 Listen and circle the word with the short vowel: 



Listen للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب.

a. bee - pen   b. flute - plum   c. dream - red   d. fox - home

2 Listen and complete with one word:

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب.

1. Bye, ... Have fun!
2. Don't drop the litter! Use the ....
3. Thank you .... much.
4. How .... are these?

B. Reading

3 Read and write (True"T" or False"F"):



		True	False
1.	There are two boys.	[..........]	[..........]
2.	They have a kite.	[..........]	[..........]
3.	They are happy.	[..........]	[..........]
4.	They are eating ice cream.	[..........]	[..........]

4 Read and circle the odd one:

1.	museum	cinema	bookshop	hen
2.	she	we	have	you
3.	pond	river	use	sea
4.	on	under	behind	colour

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c:

1. There is some ....
   a) snow b) trees c) ponds
2. Was he in the living room? - Yes, he ....
   a) was b) were c) weren't
3. He .... football yesterday.
   a) played b) play c) playing
4. She .... some toothpaste.
   a) has b) have c) is

C. Writing

6 Look and answer the questions:

1
A : Do you like ice cream?
B : ....

2
A : Is it a duck?
B : ....

3
A : Is there any snow?
B : ....

4
A : What can you see?
B : ....

7 Look and write THREE sentences:

- ....
- ....
- ....

8 Punctuate the following:

- what are ahmed and soha looking for/ ....

١٥- محافظة أسوان - إدارة أسوان التعليمية



A. Listening

1 Listen and circle the word with the short vowel:

Listen

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب.

a. cup - flute b. glue - up c. tea - ten d. blue - bug

2 Listen and complete with one word:

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع بآخر الكتاب.

1. You .... the wrong number.
2. I .... my teeth.
3. She has some ....
4. He doesn't .... cookies.

B. Reading

3 Read and write (True"T" or False"F"):

		True	False
1.	There are two girls.	[..........]	[..........]
2.	The boy is playing video games.	[..........]	[..........]
3.	They are in the bedroom.	[..........]	[..........]
4.	Kareem is calling Mona.	[..........]	[..........]

4 Read and circle the odd one:

1.	museum	bakery	chemist's	money
2.	help	play	please	eat
3.	mat	toothpaste	shampoo	soap
4.	restaurant	salt	hospital	bookshop

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c:

1. He .... his hands yesterday.
   a) washes b) washed c) wash
2. I have some shampoo .... my bag.
   a) with b) in c) by
3. .... about going to the cinema?
   a) Whose b) Where c) What
4. There isn't .... make-up here.
   a) some b) any c) many

C. Writing

6 Look and answer the questions:

1

A : Where do you drop litter?
B : ....

2

A : What are they doing?
B : ....

3

A : Is there any butter?
B : ....

4

A : Were they in the kitchen?
B : ....

7 Look and write THREE sentences:

- ....
- ....
- ....

8 Punctuate the following:

- let s go to the park on monday/ ....

Tape scripts نصوص الاستماع

GEM



Conversation Time

1. Can you help me?
2. They're two pounds each.
3. It's in aisle 3.
4. I'll take three.

Word time

1. Excuse me. Can you help me?
2. It's in aisle 1.
3. I'll take three.
4. Oops! Thanks a lot.

Cumulative Exercise Lessons 1 & 2

a. soap – cup
b. mum – cheap
c. toothpaste – What
d. mess – sunscreen

Cumulative Exercise Lessons 1 ⟶ 3

1) a. much - late
b. these - this
c. hurt - medicine
d. cheap - expensive

2) 1. Oh, no! We're late.
2. Mum! What time is it?
3. How much is the sunscreen?
4. Don't forget your change.

Phonics Time

1) a. chips - kites
b. boys - socks
c. trees - legs
d. caps - cakes

2) 1. We have two arms.
2. I can see with my eyes.
3. The girls sit on the mats.
4. They eat chips.

Workbook Unit (7) Test

A.

1. How much are these?
2. They're one pound each.
3. Wow! That's cheap. I'll take three.
4. Okay. That's three pounds.
5. Hey! Don't forget your change.
6. Oops! Thanks a lot.

B.

1. books	cats	pots
2. bags	girls	bees

Unit 7 Test 1

1) a. bin – bike
b. cup – flute
c. bat – plate
d. peas – pills

2) 1. Don't forget your change.
2. Can you help me?
3. What time is it?
4. We are late. Please hurry.

Unit 7 Test 2

1) a. kite – kid
b. cat – cake
c. pot – home
d. soap – book

2) 1. How much are these?
2. I have some perfume.
3. I'll take three.
4. We buy medicine at the chemist's.



Conversation Time

1. Don't do that.
2. Oh, it's mine.
3. I can't see it.
4. Whose wallet is this?

Word time

1. Oh, I see it.
2. I feel sick.
3. What's wrong?
4. You're welcome.

Cumulative Exercise Lessons 1 & 2

a. bin - see
b. tree - drop
c. mountain - river
d. look - snow

Cumulative Exercise Lessons 1 ⟶ 3

1) a. green - sand
b. snow - litter
c. mine - this
d. pond - toilet

2) 1. Don't drop litter!
2. It's under the tree.
3. Whose wallet is it?
4. You're welcome.

Phonics Time

1) a. pencil – green
b. dog – boat
c. bees – ducks
d. pens – trees

2) 1. I don't want eggs. 2. She runs on the beach.
3. The witches have pots and cups.
4. There are pencil cases under the desk.

Workbook Unit (8) Test

A.

1. Hey! Don't do that! 2. What?
3. Don't drop litter! Use the bin.
4. I'm sorry. Where is it?
5. It's over there. It's under the tree.
6. Oh! I see it thanks.

B. 1. ✓ 2. ✓ 3. ✗ 4. ✓ 5. ✗

Unit 8 Test 1

1) a. bus – use b. mine – witch
c. pot – do d. egg – bees

2) 1. It's under the tree. 2. This is my book.
3. Hey! Don't do that! 4. You're welcome.

Unit 8 Test 2

1) a. box – home b. bag – tree
c. fox – soap d. snow – pond

2) 1. There aren't any rivers. 2. Let's go to the park.
3. Don't drop litter! 4. Whose wallet is this?

Unit 9

Conversation Time

1. I have some strawberry ice cream.
2. What about some cookies?
3. That sounds good.
4. She doesn't want cookies.

Word time

1. There are some pickles. 2. What a mess!
3. There isn't any salt. 4. Where's the butter?

Cumulative Exercise Lessons 1 & 2

a. litter - like b. snack - salt
c. cheese - pepper d. hot - soup

Cumulative Exercise Lessons 1 ➝ 3

1) a. salt - drop b. butter - soup
c. sauce - pickles d. chip - cheese

2) 1. Sounds good.
2. What about some cookies?
3. Hey! Don't do that!
4. Don't drop litter.

Phonics Time

1) a. bread – prize b. bride – bridge
c. box – broom d. prune – plum

2) 1. It is brown. 2. Is there any bread?
3. She is pretty. 4. My grandmother likes grapes.

Workbook Unit (9) Test

A.

1. I'm hungry. 2. Me, too. Let's have a snack.
3. Do you want a chocolate chip cookie?
4. No, thanks. I don't like cookies.
5. What about some strawberry ice cream?
6. Mm! That sounds good.

B. 1. bread 2. grapes 3. present
4. prize 5. grandmother

Unit 9 Test 1

1) a. grapes – caps b. salt - salad
c. carrot - great d. soup - pepper

2) 1. She got a prize for her pretty prune.
2. What a mess!
3. Ali is my brother.
4. I want some ice cream.

Unit 9 Test 2

1) a. big - prune b. prize - bread
c. present - green d. brick - price

2) 1. They don't have any books.
2. I have some pickles.
3. That sounds good.
4. I have a green umbrella.

Units (7, 8, 9) General Exercises

One:

A: a. get – green
b. caps – grapes
c. tree –bed
d. kite – sit

B: a. duck – prune
b. home – fox
c. beach – pepper
d. grass – bake

C: a. big – bride
b. beets – box
c. three – leg
d. broom – bag

Two:

A: 1- Whose wallet is this?
2- What a mess!
3- It's a wallet.
4- I'll take three.

B: 1- Don't drop litter!
2- There are some mountains.
3- I don't like cookies.
4- There aren't any mushrooms.

C: 1- That sounds good.
2- You're welcome.
3- Don't drop litter!
4- How much are these chocolate chip cookies?

اختبارات على ما سبق دراسته

Exam (1)

1. a. bed – bee b. pin – bike c. glue – up d. home – box

2. 1. Let's have a snack.
2. Whose wallet is this?
3. What about some cookies?
4. That sounds good.

Exam (2)

1. a. pin - bike
b. cake - cap
c. kit - wild
d. beet - pen

2. 1. They are one pounds each.
2. I don't like cookies.
3. Let's have a snack.
4. That sounds good.

Exam (3)

1) a. seat - neck
b. six - pie
c. soup - pot
d. ant - lake

2) 1. They don't have any money.
2. Are these your glasses?
3. They are eating in the kitchen.
4. Whose prize is this?

Unit 10

Conversation Time

1. I want ice cream.
2. Thank you so much.
3. I will take two apples.
4. How much are they?

Word time

1. I exercise in the morning.
2. I go to work by bus.
3. When do you listen to music?
4. May I help you?

Cumulative Exercise Lessons 1 & 2

a. ticket - time
b. thank - great
c. please - help
d. shop - store

Cumulative Exercise Lessons 1 → 3

1) a. this - these
b. go - on
c. hospital - Whose
d. see - cinema

2) 1. I'm going now.
2. She was at the cinema.
3. They were at the bookshop.
4. Is this your purse?

Phonics Time

1) a. dream – desk
b. ten – tree
c. dress – green
d. truck – flute

2) 1. There is a girl in a red dress.
2. The tree is green.
3. Ali and Sarah trade trucks.
4. The crabs cross the creek.

Workbook Unit (10) Test

A.

1. Whose purse is this?/ Maybe it's hers. Let's ask.
2. Excuse me. / Yes?/ Is this your purse?
3. Yes, it is! Thank you so much./ You're welcome.

Answer key: 3, 1, 2

B.

1. cry
2. dress
3. truck
4. tree
5. crab
6. dream

Answer key: 1. cr 2. dr 3. tr 4. tr 5. cr 6. dr

Unit 10 Test 1

1) a. trade – bag
b. truck – museum
c. drive – cinema
d. creek – help

2) 1. I was at the restaurant.
   2. The young boy wants ice cream.
   3. Can I help you?
   4. Thank you so much.

Unit 10 Test 2

1) a. dream – dad
   b. green – cap
   c. pen – tree
   d. crab – crane

2) 1. We buy medicine at the chemist's.
   2. It's two pounds.
   3. She was at home.
   4. I'll take three.

Unit 11

Conversation Time

1. All right. Bye!
2. What are you looking for?
3. Don't worry. I'll help you look for them.
4. Okay. Thanks.

Word time

1. Don't jump on the bed!
2. Sure. Hold on.
3. Hey! Don't do that!
4. No problem.

Cumulative Exercise Lessons 1 & 2

a. bed - feet
b. home - box
c. like - kids
d. dad - plane

Cumulative Exercise Lessons 1 ⟶ 3

a. ox - home
b. kite - kitchen
c. garden - bed
d. room - bored

2) 1. Was she in the dining room?
   2. I play football on Friday.
   3. We're going outside.
   4. May I speak to Ali, please?

Phonics Time

1) a. prune – plum
   b. slide – slipper
   c. slug – float
   d. smell – smile

2) 1. The ship and the boat float on the sea.
   2. The plums play on the plate.
   3. The slug sleeps on the slide.
   4. The man is sleeping.

Workbook Unit (11) Test

A.

1. I'm bored. So am I. Let's play football.
2. Dad! We're going outside. Remember, you have to do your homework.
3. I know. Dad. Be back at six.
4. All right. Bye kids. Have fun!

Answer key: 4, 3, 2, 1

B.

1. plant
2. float
3. sling
4. play
5. slow
6. fly

Answer key: 1. pl 2. fl 3. sl 4. pl 5. sl 6. fl

Unit 11 Test 1

1) a. slide – kitchen
   b. flute – slug
   c. hot – float
   d. sleep – bed

2) 1. Are Kareem and Ramy bored?
   2. My father's car is in the garage.
   3. Mona is sleeping in the bedroom.
   4. I play football.

Unit 11 Test 2

1) a. plum – blue
   b. cake – slipper
   c. kid – play
   d. look – know

2) 1. She was at home.
   2. I'm watching TV in the living room.
   3. You have to do your homework.
   4. That sounds good.



Conversation Time

1. I'm bored.
2. I was at the museum on Monday.
3. How about the cinema?
4. Good idea!

Word time

1. The man is playing video games.
2. I don't bake cookies.
3. Clean the room and wash your hands.
4. I brush my teeth after meals.

Cumulative Exercise Lessons 1 & 2

a. good - house b. room - look c. milk - call d. teeth - brush

Cumulative Exercise Lessons 1 → 3

1) a. cookie - know b. right - look
c. key - pickle d. play - hand

2) 1. They played video games.
2. You have the wrong number.
3. He is listening to music.
4. Let's look.

Phonics Time

1) a. spell – sneeze b. smile – sniff
c. snow – smell d. sneeze - wet

2) 1. The spider can spell "Spain".
2. The snake sneezed in the snow.
3. Mrs Smith smells smoke.
4. Hisham smelled the rose and smiled.

Workbook Unit (12) Test

A.

1. Hello! Is Kareem there, please?
2. I'm sorry. You have the wrong number.
3. Is this 245-8769?
4. No, it isn't. It's 245-8768?
5. That's okay. Good-bye.

B.

1. spell 2. smile 3. spider
4. sneeze 5. snake 6. smell

Unit 12 Test 1

1) a. spell - spider b. snail – smash
c. sniff – speak d. brush – true

2) 1. Is Kareem there, please?
2. I'm sorry. You have the wrong number.
3. The snake sneezed in the snow.
4. I'm listening to music.

Unit 12 Test 2

1) a. number - museum b. teeth – spell
c. snatch - bake d. milk - idea

2) 1. Are there any pickles?
2. They brushed their teeth yesterday.
3. Whose keys are these?
4. I don't know.

Units (10, 11, 12) General Exercises

One:

A: a. cap – bake b. cut – flute
c. slide - slipper d. book – moon

B: a. glue – up b. bed – feet
c. hot – boat d. bike – bin

C: a. plate - cat b. dress – tree
c. kite – kit d. flake - flat

Two:

A: 1. I brush my teeth after meals.
2. I clean my room.
3. I see with my eyes.
4. Let's look.

B: 1. I play football on Friday.
2. I was at the museum on Monday.
3. What are you looking for?
4. We are sleeping in the bedroom.

C: 1. Thank you so much.
2. They were at the bookshop.
3. Is this your purse?
4. Whose wallet is this?

Graded Exams

Exam (1) "Easy"

1. 1. lute - gum 2. blue - duck
3. pencil - green 4. leg - eat

2. 1. Is Kareem there, please?
2. I'm listening to music.

3. She didn't like video games.
4. I go to work by car.

Exam (2) "Medium"

1. 1. red - read   2. true - run
   3. kiss - kite   4. ball - wallet
2. 1. Where's the bin?
   2. I don't like cookies.
   3. He was at the cinema.
   4. Is this your purse?

Exam (3) "Hard"

1. 1. plate - plum   2. top - snow
   3. sleeve - slipper   4. name - man
2. 1. I have some sunscreen.
   2. No, thanks. I don't like cookies.
   3. She wasn't at home.
   4. Don't forget your change.

Workbook Sample Tests

Sample Test (1)

1. a. spell – sneeze   b. bug – blue
   c. bed – bee   d. pin – home
2. 1. How much are those?   2. I need some toothpaste.
   3. There is some wildlife.   4. He is happy.

Sample Test (2)

1. a. glue – up   b. man – cake
   c. box – home   d. vet – queen
2. 1. I have some perfume.   2. They don't watch videos.
   3. She practises in the morning.   4. Whose wallet is this?

Sample Test (3)

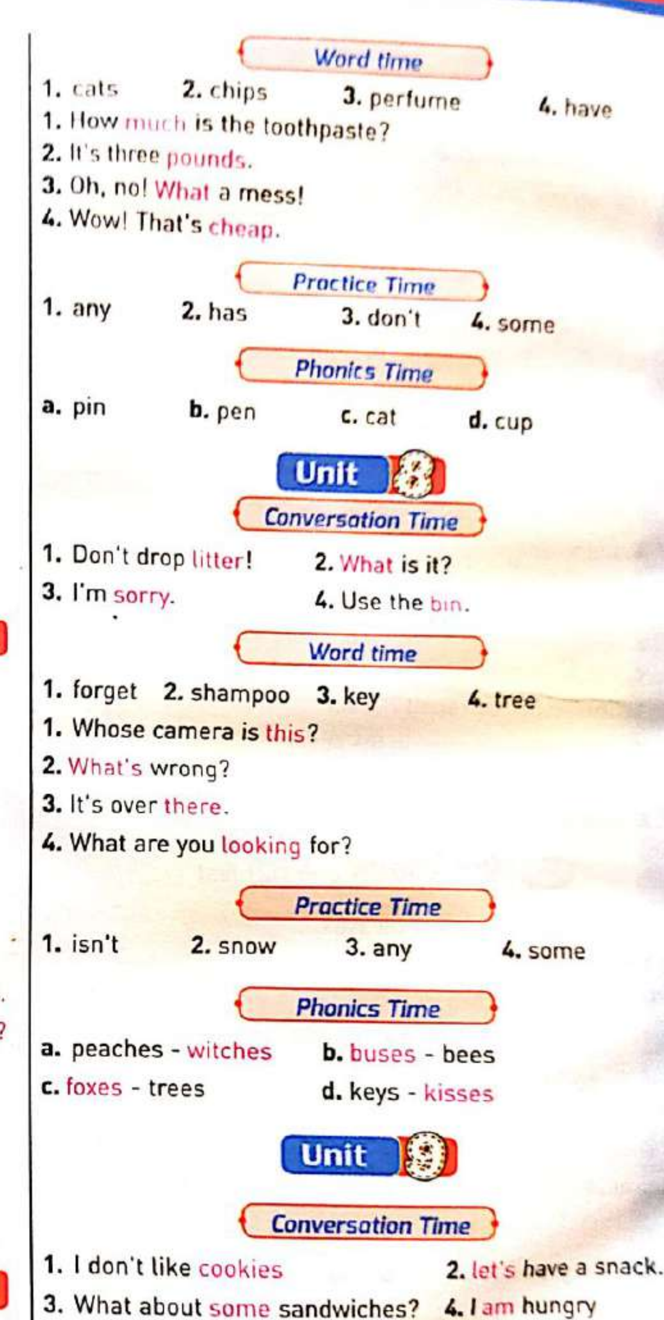
1. a. tune – cup   b. bed – feet
   c. night – tin   d. fox – coat
2. 1. Thank you so much.   2. They brush their teeth.
   3. I have some money.   4. He doesn't bake cookies.

Check-point Tape scripts & Answers



Conversation Time

1. How much are these?   2. That's three pounds.
3. Wow! That's cheap.   4. I'll take three.



Word time

1. cats   2. chips   3. perfume   4. have

1. How much is the toothpaste?
2. It's three pounds.
3. Oh, no! What a mess!
4. Wow! That's cheap.

Practice Time

1. any   2. has   3. don't   4. some

Phonics Time

a. pin   b. pen   c. cat   d. cup

Unit 8

Conversation Time

1. Don't drop litter!   2. What is it?
3. I'm sorry.   4. Use the bin.

Word time

1. forget   2. shampoo   3. key   4. tree

1. Whose camera is this?
2. What's wrong?
3. It's over there.
4. What are you looking for?

Practice Time

1. isn't   2. snow   3. any   4. some

Phonics Time

a. peaches - witches   b. buses - bees
c. foxes - trees   d. keys - kisses

Unit 9

Conversation Time

1. I don't like cookies   2. let's have a snack.
3. What about some sandwiches?   4. I am hungry

Word time

1. bag   2. mess   3. apple   4. perfume

1. Where is the cheese?
2. There's some pepper.

3. It's next to the salad.
4. There isn't any salt.

Practice Time

1. pickles 2. aren't 3. Is 4. any

Phonics Time

1. bread - broom 2. plum - prize
3. prune - brick 4. mother- grow

Unit 10

Conversation Time

1. Let's ask her. 2. You are welcome.
3. Thank you so much. 4. Whose purse is this?

Word time

1. money 2. books 3. Whose 4. purse
1. May I help you? 2. How do you go to work?
3. What time does it start?
4. When do you listen to music?

Practice Time

1. were 2. She 3. at 4. weren't

Phonics Time

1. drum - dream 2. trade - truck
3. creek - drink 4. crane - cross

Unit 11

Conversation Time

1. Dad! We're going outside. 2. Be back at six.
3. You have to do your homework.
4. I'm bored. Let's play football.

Word time

1. dad 2. play 3. garage 4. football
1. What about some cake?
2. May I speak to Sameh, please?
3. That sounds good.
4. Do you want a cookie?

Practice Time

1. was 2. was 3. Were 4. he

Phonics Time

a. film - slide b. sleeve - hen
c. play - flag d. gum - flute

Unit 12

Conversation Time

1. You have the wrong number.
2. That's okay. Goodbye.
3. Is Kareem here, please?
4. Is this 245-8768?

Word time

1. cookies 2. teeth 3. room 4. piano
1. I'm listening to music.
2. Whose keys are these?
3. Are there any pickles?
4. What are you doing?

Practice Time

1. clean 2. washed 3. didn't 4. baked

Phonics Time

a. smile - smell b. spell - Spain
c. speak - bed d. drop - snow

نصوص استماع امتحانات بعض المدارس والإدارات لعام 2016/2017

① محافظة القاهرة - إدارة المطرية التعليمية

1) a. boat – pond b. bin – night c. cat – tape d. pin – leash

2) 1. I see with my eyes.
2. Can you help me?
3. How much is it? 4. It is seven o'clock.

② محافظة الجيزة - إدارة العمرانية التعليمية

1) a. coat – box b. feet – vet c. up – tune d. gum – glue

2) 1. Thank you so much.
2. Don't drop litter.
3. Let's go to the museum. 4. You are welcome.

③ محافظة الاسكندرية - إدارة المنتزه التعليمية

1) a. crab - cry b. tree - dress c. plum - flute d. float – flag

2) a. 1. That sounds good.
2. I go to the museum.
3. You have the wrong number.
4. How about the cinema?

٤ محافظة القليوبية - ادارة بنها التعليمية

1) **a.** kite - sit **b.** train - car **c.** fox - home **d.** boat - box

2) **1.** Is this your purse?

2. The bin is over there.

3. They played video games yesterday.

4. Let's have some cookies.

٥ محافظة المنوفية - ادارة بركة السبع التعليمية

1) **a.** tea - pen **b.** cup - soap **c.** kit - kite **d.** boat - hot

2) **1.** They are one pound each.

2. Does she practise the piano?

3. I cleaned my room.

4. Let's have a snack.

٦ محافظة الغربية - ادارة كفر الزيات التعليمية

1) **a.** fun - tune **b.** leg - tree **c.** drop - home **d.** home - box

2) **1.** Let's go to the cinema.

2. I was at the hospital.

3. He watches films at the cinema.

4. Grapes are green.

٧ محافظة الدقهلية - ادارة أجا التعليمية

1) **a.** use - sun **b.** tune - cup **c.** that - these **d.** coat - box

2) **1.** He has some money.

2. How much are these?

3. Is this your purse?

4. Let's have a snack.

٨ محافظة كفر الشيخ - ادارة مطوبس التعليمية

1) **a.** bike - pin **b.** bed - dream **c.** spell - sneeze **d.** coat - hot

2) **1.** Let's have a snack. **2.** Let's look.

3. Do you like fish? **4.** How about the cinema?

٩ محافظة البحيرة - ادارة ايتاى البارود التعليمية

1) **a.** shop - drain **b.** flag - float

c. smell - smoke **d.** tree - red

2) **1.** Whose purse is this?

2. That sounds good.

3. Let's play football.

4. What are you looking for?

١٠ محافظة دمياط - ادارة دمياط التعليمية

1) **a.** tub - tube **b.** bee - pen

c. dog - door **d.** bike - pin

2) **1.** I haven't got any money.

2. You have to do your homework.

3. Whose purse is this?

4. Don't forget your change.

١١ محافظة الشرقية - ادارة العاشر من رمضان التعليمية

1) **a.** glue - up **b.** man - cake **c.** box - home **d.** vet - queen

2) **1.** Were they in the dining room?

2. We are bored.

3. Wow! That's cheap.

4. There's a plate on the table.

١٢ محافظة السويس - ادارة شمال التعليمية

1) **a.** read - red **b.** prune - cut **c.** tune - truck **d.** pot - goat

2) **1.** He was at the bakery. **2.** Thank you so much.

3. Is this your purse? **4.** I can see some pepper.

١٣ محافظة الوادى الجديد - ادارة الوادى الجديد التعليمية

1) **a.** grass - game **b.** cup - glue **c.** cat - cake **d.** home - hot

2) **1.** She was at the cinema. **2.** Let's ask.

3. That sounds good. **4.** Hey! Don't do that.

١٤ محافظة بنى سويف - ادارة ببا التعليمية

1) **a.** bee - pen **b.** flute - plum **c.** dream - red **d.** fox - home

2) **1.** Bye, bye. Have fun!

2. Don't drop the litter. Use the bin.

3. Thank you so much.

4. How much are these?

١٥ محافظة أسوان - إدارة أسوان التعليمية

1) **a.** cup - flute **b.** glue - up **c.** tea - ten **d.** blue - bug

2) **1.** You have the wrong number.

2. I brush my teeth.

3. She has some soap.

4. He doesn't like cookies.

Practise Writing



1) 1. Yes, I do.
2. No , he doesn't.
3. It's sunscreen. **or** This is sunscreen.
4. There are three bats.

2) a. • She's a girl.
• She has some make-up and shampoo.
• She doesn't have any perfume.

b. • The boy wants to buy some batteries.
• It's one pound each.
• They're cheap.

c. • The boy is eating.
• He has a cake and a cup of tea.
• He is happy.



1) 1. Yes, I do.
2. She is on the beach.
3. They are in the park.
4. It's red and blue.

2) a. • There are many trees.
• The girl is drinking water.
• The man is on the boat.

b. • Sokkar and Sokkara are in the park.
• Sokkara can't find her wallet.
• The wallet is yellow and green.

c. • There is some wildlife.
• There is a river.
• There are many animals.



1) 1. They're pickles.
2. Yes, I do.
3. No, there isn't.
4. I can see a present.

2) a. • Sokkar and Sokkara are in the park.
• Sokkar drops litter on the ground.
• Sokkara tells him to use the bin.

b. • They are in the kitchen.
• The boy feeds the cat.
• The food is in the fridge.

c. • Prue is happy.
• She gets a prize.
• Her prune is pretty.



1) 1. I want ice cream.
2. I can see a crab.
3. They are at the museum.
4. It is a crane.

2) a. • They are in the park.
• They found a purse.
• The purse is hers.

b. • She is a girl.
• She is carrying two books.
• She is at the bookshop.

c. • They're a boy and a girl.
• They are on the tree.
• They are trading trucks.



1) 1. They were in the dining room.
2. I can see a slide.
3. This is a flute.
4. Yes, he was.

2) a. • There are three girls.
• They are in the bathroom.
• They 're happy.

b. • There are a flea and a fly.
• They're in the sea.
• They float on the flag.

c. • Sokkar and Sokkara are in the park.
• Sokkara can't find her sunglasses.
• Sokkar is helping her to find them.



1) 1. She is dancing. 2. They washed their hands.
3. He baked cookies. 4. It's a spider. **or** This is a spider.

2) a. • Mona is talking on the phone.
• Mona's mother is cooking.
• They're in the kitchen.

b. • They're Sokkar and Sokkara.
• They're at the cinema.
• They're happy.

c. • They are at home.
• There is a mess.
• They're cleaning up.

Workbook Answer Key



Conversation Time Page 1

A. Read and circle.

1. How much are these?
2. They're one pound each.
3. Wow! That's cheap. I'll take three.
4. Okay. That's three pounds.
5. Hey! Don't forget your change.
6. Oops! Thanks a lot.

B. Read and write.

1. How much is this?
   • It's three pounds.
2. How much is that?
   • It's fifteen pounds.
3. How much are these?
   • They're two pounds each.
4. How much are those?
   • They're one pound each.

Word time Page 2

A. Read and put ✔ or ✘.

1. ✔ 2. ✘ 3. ✘ 4. ✔
5. ✘ 6. ✔ 7. ✘ 8. ✘

B. Look and write.

1. perfume 2. shampoo
3. toothpaste 4. money
5. sunscreen 6. soap
7. make-up 8. medicine

Practice Time Page 3

A. Read, circle and match.

1. I have some perfume. I don't have any soap. (third picture)
2. I have some shampoo. I don't have any soap. (first picture)
3. I have some soap. I don't have any money. (second picture)

B. Look and write.

1. They have some perfume.
2. She has some soap.
3. I have some make-up.
4. He has some sunscreen.

Phonics Time Page 4

A. Do they both have the same final /s/ sound? Put ✔ or ✘.

1. ✘ 2. ✔ 3. ✔ 4. ✔ 5. ✔ 6. ✘

B. Do the words with final s have the same final /s/ sound? Put ✔ or ✘.

1. ✔ 2. ✔ 3. ✘

C. Circle the word with a different final /s/ sound.

1. bees 2. bags 3. girls 4. cubs 5. bees



Conversation Time Page 5

A. Read and match. Then number the pictures.

1. Hey! Don't do that!/What?
2. Don't drop litter! Use the bin./I'm sorry. Where is it?
3. It's over there. It's under the tree./Oh, I see it. Thanks.

The pictures are numbered 3, 1, 2.

B. Unscramble, write, and match.

1. Don't watch TV! Wash the car. (b)
2. Don't listen to music! Clean up. (d)
3. Don't have a snack! Exercise. (a)
4. Don't climb a tree! Do homework. (c)

Word time Page 6

A. Look and write.

1. sand 2. rivers
3. mountains 4. snow
5. wildlife 6. grass
7. trees 8. ponds

B. Look, read, and put ✔ or ✘.

1. ✘ 2. ✔ 3. ✘ 4. ✔
5. ✔ 6. ✘ 7. ✔ 8. ✔

Practice Time Page 7

A. Read and write the letter.

1. b 2. c 3. d 4. a

Phonics Time Page 8

A. Read and circle the words with the final /es/ sound.

- pencil cases
- foxes
- peaches
- boxes
- glasses
- buses
- witches
- bushes
- oranges
- beaches
- sandwiches

B. Read and match.

1. d 2. a 3. c 4. b

C. Does it have the final /es/ sound? Put ✔ or ✘.

1. ✘ 2. ✔ 3. ✔ 4. ✔
5. ✘ 6. ✔ 7. ✘ 8. ✘

Unit 9

Conversation Time Page 9

A. Number the sentences in the correct order.

4. No, thanks. I don't like cookies.
6. Mm. That sounds good.
3. Do you want a chocolate chip cookie?
5. How about some strawberry ice cream?
1. I'm hungry!
2. Me, too. Let's have a snack!

B. Look and write.

1. He wants cookies. He doesn't want cereal.
2. They want ice cream. They don't want fish.
3. She wants eggs. She doesn't want cake.
4. You want vegetables. You don't want ice cream.

Word time Page 10

A. Look and write.

There's some...
- salt
- butter
- hot sauce
- pepper
- cheese
- soup

There are some...
- cookies
- mushrooms
- pickles
- carrots
- spaghetti

B. Look at A. Fill in the puzzle.

- mushrooms
- salt
- strawberry
- pickles
- cookies
- spaghetti
- soup
- pepper
- mystery word: hot sauce

Practice Time Page 11

A. Read and put ✔.

1. Is there any cheese? No, there isn't.
2. Are there any pickles? Yes, there are.
3. Is there any salt? Yes, there is.

B. Look and write.

1. Are there any pickles? Yes, there are.
2. Is there any cheese? Yes, there is.
3. Are there any mushrooms? Yes, there are.
4. Is there any pepper? No, there isn't.
5. Is there any bread? Yes, there is.
6. Are there any apples? No, there aren't.

Phonics Time Page 12

A. Circle and write br, gr, or pr.

1. green. 2. umbrella.
3. grapes. 4. brown.
5. pretty. 6. prize.
7. present. 8. bread.

B. Look, read, and match.

1. I eat brown bread at night.
2. My grandfather has a prune and a grape.
3. I have a green umbrella!
4. Sally gives her grandmother a present.

C. Do they both have the same consonant blend? Put ✔ or ✘.

1. ✔ 2. ✘ 3. ✘ 4. ✘

Review 1 Page 13

A. Read, check, and write the response.

1. Don't forget your change./Oops! Thanks a lot.
2. How much are these?/They're one pound each.
3. Where is it?/It's over there.
4. Do you want some ice cream?/Yes, please.

B. Match and write.

1. sunscreen 2. wildlife
3. mushroom 4. hairbrush
5. toothpaste 6. homework
7. hot sauce 8. brown bread
9. pencil case 10. lunch box
11. chocolate chip 12. ice cream

Review 1 Page 14

A. Look and write.

1. There are some mountains. There aren't any trees.
2. She has some toothpaste. She doesn't have any shampoo.
3. He has some money. He doesn't have any sunscreen.
4. Is there any salt? Yes, there is.

B. Do they both have the same final sound (/es/ or /s/)? Put ✔ or ✘.

1. ✘ 2. ✔ 3. ✔ 4. ✔

C. Match.

- br: bread
- pr: present, pretty, prize
- gr: grapes, grandmother



Conversation Time Page 15

A. Read, circle, and match.

1. Look! Whose purse is this?
   - Maybe it's hers. Let's ask. (second picture)
2. Excuse me.
   - Yes?
   - Is this your purse? (third picture)
3. Yes, it is! Thank you so much.
   - You're welcome. (first picture)

B. Read and write.

1. Is this her cap? Yes, it is.
2. Are these her glasses? No, they aren't.
3. Are these their keys? Yes, they are.

Word time Page 16

A. Read and match.

1. hospital 2. cinema
3. restaurant 4. museum
5. bookstore 6. chemist's
7. bakery 8. department store

B. Read and write.

1. Is this a restaurant? No, it isn't. It's a hospital.
2. Is this a museum? Yes, it is.
3. Is this a bookstore? No, it isn't. It's a chemist's.
4. Is this a bakery? No, it isn't. It's a cinema.

Practice Time **Page 17**

A. Look at the chart. Write.

1. He was at the bakery.
2. They were at the restaurant.
3. She is at the chemist's.
4. He was at the bookstore.

B. Look and write.

1. He was at the chemist's. He wasn't at the bakery.
2. She was at the bookstore. She wasn't at the cinema.
3. They were at the hospital. They weren't at the department store.
4. She was at the bakery. She wasn't at the museum.

Phonics Time **Page 18**

A. Look and write cr, dr, or tr.

1. truck. 2. dream. 3. dress.
4. tree. 5. cry. 6. creek.
7. train. 8. draw.

B. Write cr, dr, or tr. Then read and match.

1. The crab wants a truck and a train. (c)
2. The tree is next to the trail. (d)
3. I cry on my dress. (b)
4. That's a tree. This is a creek. (a)



Conversation Time **Page 19**

A. Read and write the letter.

1. c 2. d 3. a 4. b

B. Look and write.

1. I'm thirsty. 2. I'm cold.
3. I'm hot. 4. I'm hungry.

Word time **Page 20**

A. Read and circle.

1. bedroom 2. dining room
3. bathroom

B. Look at Kareem's house. Label the rooms.

1. bedroom 2. bathroom
3. hall 4. kitchen
5. dining room 6. living room
7. garden 8. garage

Practice Time **Page 21**

A. Read and write.

1. Were they in the garden? Yes, they were.
2. Was she in the bathroom? Yes, she was.
3. Was he in the kitchen? Yes, he was.
4. Was she in the hall? No, she wasn't. She was in the dining room.

B. Write the questions and answers.

1. Was she in the bedroom?
   - Yes, she was.
2. Was he in the hall?
   - No, he wasn't. He was in the kitchen.
3. Was she in the kitchen?
   - No, she wasn't. She was in the living room.
4. Was he in the garden?
   - No, he wasn't. He was in the dining room.
5. Was it in the garden?
   - Yes, it was.
6. Were they in the garage?
   - Yes, they were.

Phonics Time **Page 22**

A. that, they, this, mother, brother

B. 1. think 2. that 3. this
4. thick 5. these

C. 1. middle picture. 2. bottom picture.
3. top picture.



Conversation Time **Page 23**

A. Unscramble, write, and number.

1. Hello? Is Kareem there, please?
2. I'm sorry. You have the wrong number.
3. Is this 245-8769?
4. No, it isn't. This is 245-8768.
5. Sorry.
6. That's okay. Good-bye.

B. Read and match.

1. second picture. 2. third picture.

3. first picture.

Word time **Page 24**

A. Read and circle.

1. brush my teeth
2. play video games
3. call a friend
4. dance
5. wash my hands
6. clean my room
7. bake cookies
8. practise the piano

B. Write the questions and answers.

1. What's she doing?
   - She's baking cookies.
2. What's he doing?
   He's playing video games.
3. What's she doing?
   - She's washing her hands.
4. What's he doing?
   - He's calling a friend.

Practice Time **Page 25**

A. Write.

1. call a friend → called a friend.
2. bake cookies → baked cookies.
3. wash my hands → washed my hands.
4. brush my teeth → brushed my teeth.
5. practise the piano → practised the piano.
6. play video games → played video games.
7. clean my room → cleaned my room.
8. dance → danced.

Phonics Time **Page 26**

A. Look and write sm, sn, or sp.

1. snake. 2. smoke.
3. sneeze. 4. spider.
5. smell. 6. smile.
7. spell. 8. snow.

B. Write sm, sn, or sp. Then read and number the pictures.

1. The snake and the spider are speaking English.
2. Mr Smith sneezed at the hospital.
3. Amira is eating spaghetti in the snow.
4. Hisham smelled the rose and smiled.

The pictures are numbered as follows: 3, 4, 2, 1.

Review 2 **Page 27**

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:.

1. any 2. are 3. at
4. were 5. was 6. baked
7. what 8. her

B. Circle the odd words. There is one in each line.

1. money 2. make-up
3. garden 4. watch TV
5. film 6. dance

Review 2 **Page 28**

A. Read and tick True or False.

a. False b. True c. True d. False

B. Read and circle the odd one.

a. sand b. kitchen
c. car d. mushrooms
e. salt f. truck
g. cake h. leg

Conversation Time Review Page 29

A. Read the questions. Write the answers.

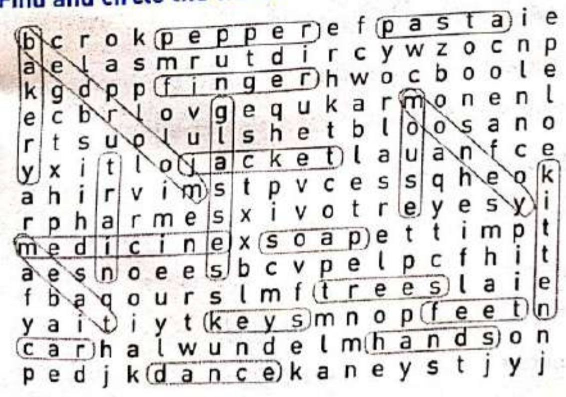
1. What does she look like?
   She's tall. She's wearing a dress. She has long hair.
2. Where are the bananas?
   They're next to the oranges.
3. How much are these?
   They're two pounds each.
4. Whose lunch box is this?
   Maybe it's hers.

B. Read the answers. Write the questions.

1. What's wrong?
   I can't find my mum!
2. May I help you?
   Yes, please. One ticket to London.
3. What colour is it?
   It's red and white.
4. What's your address?
   31 Ramses street.

Word Time Review Page 30

A. Find and circle the words.



Practice Time Review Page 31

A. Read and match.

1. I want a puppy./ I don't want a turtle.
2. Does she want vegetables?/Yes, she does.
3. When do they exercise?/ They exercise at night.
4. How do you go to school?/ I go to school by car.
5. Her foot hurts./ Her hands hurt.
6. Whose jacket is this? It's his.

B. Read and match.

1. He has some money./ He doesn't have any shampoo.
2. There's some snow./ There isn't any grass.
3. Is there any hot sauce?/ Yes, there is.
4. We were at the hospital. We weren't at the bakery.
5. Was he at the department store?/No, he wasn't. He was at the museum.
6. She called a friend/ She didn't clean her room.

Phonics Time Review Page 32

B. Do they both have the same final sound (es or s)? Write ✔ or ✘.



1. ✘ 2. ✔ 3. ✘ 4. ✔

C. What sound does it have? Match.

tr pr fl sm gr sh

final es — voiceless th

final s — sl

Unit 7 Test Page 33

A. Listen and write.

1. How much are these?
2. They're one pound each.
3. Wow! That's cheap. I'll take three.
4. Okay. That's three pounds.
5. Hey! Don't forget your change.
6. Oops! Thanks a lot.

B. Listen and circle the words with the same final /s/ sound.

1. cats, pots, cabs. 2. girls, bees.

C. Look and write:

1. soap 2. perfume
3. make-up 4. money

D. Look and write:

1. She has some toothpaste. She doesn't have any shampoo.
2. I have some money. I don't have any sunscreen.
3. We have some soap. We don't have any perfume.

Unit 8 Test Page 34

A. Listen and write.

1. Hey! Don't do that!
2. What?
3. Don't drop litter! Use the bin.
4. I'm Sorry. Where is it?
5. It's over there. It's under the tree.
6. Oh! I see it. Thanks.

B. Does it have final es? listen and write ✓ or ✗.

1. buses ✓ 2. oranges ✓
3. caps ✗ 4. nurses ✓
5. pens ✗

C. Unscramble and write:

1. grass 2. trees 3. ponds
4. rivers 5. wildlife 6. sand

D. Look and write:

1. There are some mountains. There aren't any rivers.
2. There's some grass. There isn't any snow.
3. There are some trees. There isn't any sand.
4. There's some wildlife. There aren't any ponds.

Unit 9 Test Page 35

A. Listen and Match.

1. I'm/ hungry.
2. Me, too. Let's/have a snack.
3. Do you want/a chocolate chip cookie?
4. No, Thanks. I/don't like cookies.
5. What about/some strawberry ice cream?
6. Mm. That sounds good.

B. Does it have br, gr or pr? listen and write.

1. bread 2. grapes
3. present 4. prize
5. grandmother

C. Look and write:

1. cookies 2. salt
3. pepper 4. mushrooms
5. hot sauce 6. spaghetti
7. butter 8. pickles

D. Look and write:

1. Is there any hot sauce? Yes, there is
2. Are there any pickles? No, there aren't.
3. Is there any cheese? No, there isn't.
4. Are there any mushrooms? Yes, there are.

Unit 10 Test Page 36

A. Listen and number the pictures.

1. Whose purse is this? Maybe it's hers. Let's ask.
2. Excuse me./ Yes?/ Is this your purse?
3. Yes, it is! Thank you so much./ You're welcome?

Answer: 3, 1, 2.

B. Does it have cr, dr, or tr? listen and match:

1. cry 2. dress 3. truck
4. tree 5. crab 6. dream

Answers:

1. cr 2. dr 3. tr 4. tr 5. cr 6. dr

C. Unscramble and write:

1. museum 2. bakery
3. hospital 4. chemist's
5. bookstore 6. restaurant

D. Unscramble and write:

1. Were you at the cinema? No, I wasn't. I was at the hospital.
2. Was she at the department store? Yes, she was.

Unit 11 Test Page 37

A. Listen and number the pictures.

1. I'm bored./ So am I. Let's play football.
2. Dad! We're going outside./Remember, you have to do your homework.
3. I know, Dad./ Be back at six.
4. All right. Bye, kids. Have fun!

Answer: 4, 3, 2, 1

B. Does it begin with fl, pl, or sl? Listen and write:

1. plant 2. float 3. sling
4. play 5. slow 6. fly

Answer:

1. pl 2. fl 3. sl 4. pl 5. sl 6. fl

C. Unscramble and write:

1. dining room 2. bathroom
3. bedroom 4. living room
5. kitchen 6. garage
7. hall 8. garden

D. Look and write:

1. Was she in the bedroom? Yes, she was.
2. Were they in the living room? Yes, they were.
3. Was he in the kitchen?

No, he wasn't. He was in the garden.

Unit 12 Test Page 39

A. Listen and write.

1. Hello? Is Ted there, please?

2. I'm Sorry. You have the wrong number.

3. Is this 245-8769?

4. No, it isn't. It's 245-8768.

5. Sorry.

6. That's Okay. Goodbye.

B. Does it have sm, sn or sp"? Listen and write:

1. spell 2. smile 3. spider

4. sneeze 5. snake 6. smell

C. Read and write:

1. wash my hands 2. brush my teeth

3. clean my room 4. bake cookies

5. call a friend

6. practise the piano

D. Look and write:

1. He washed his hands. He didn't brush his teeth.

2. She played video games. She didn't clean her room.

3. They practised the piano. They didn't dance.

4. She called a friend. She didn't bake cookies.

Sample Tests

Sample Test (1) Page 39

3. 1. ✗ 2. ✗ 3. ✓ 4. ✓

4. 1. bus 2. cat 3. duck 4. grapes

5. 1. a 2. b 3. b 4. a

6. 1. No, he isn't.
2. She goes to school by bike.
3. It's a truck.
4. She is cleaning.

7. 1. I can see a boy and a girl.
2. They are jumping on the bed.
3. They are in the bedroom.

8. Okay, that's three pounds.

Sample Test (2) Page 41

3. 1. ✗ 2. ✓ 3. ✗ 4. ✓

4. 1. teacher 2. butter
3. baby 4. English

5. 1. b 2. a 3. a 4. a

6. 1. It's under the tree.
2. They are one pound each.
3. She's in front of the board.
4. Yes, I do.

7. 1. I can see two girls and a boy.
2. They're eating ice cream.
3. They don't want fish.

8. Let's go to the park on Monday.

Sample Test (3) Page 43

3. 1. ✓ 2. ✗ 3. ✓ 4. ✗

4. 1. keys 2. girl 3. salt 4. cap

5. 1. a 2. c 3. c 4. b

6. 1. He likes fish.
2. I want to eat bread.
3. He has plum.
4. Yes, it is.

7. 1. They're in the kitchen.
2. Mum is baking cookies.
3. The girl is washing her hands.

8. No, it isn't.

5 Choose the correct answer from a,b or c: (4 marks)

1- Whose wallet ________ this?
ⓐ is ⓑ are ⓒ does

2- He ________ his hands yesterday.
ⓐ washes ⓑ wash ⓒ washed

3- ________ was in the restaurant.
ⓐ They ⓑ We ⓒ I

4- ________ much are these?
ⓐ What ⓑ How ⓒ Whose

C Writing (16 Marks)

6 Look and answer the questions: (6 marks)

1- What does he like?
____

2- What do you want to eat?
____

3- What does he have?
____

4- Is it a kitchen?
____

7 Look and write THREE sentences: (6 marks)

____
____
____

8 Punctuate the following: (4 marks)

no it isn t
____

Test 1 محافظة القاهرة



A Listening (12 Marks)

1 Listen and circle the word with the short vowel: (6 marks)

1	2	3	4
tube	kite	cat	home
run	sit	cake	hot

2 Listen and complete with one word: (6 marks)

نص الاستماع فى آخر الكتاب

1- We're ____________ outside.
2- Let's have a ____________.
3- Can you ____________ me?
4- That sounds ____________.

B Reading (12 Marks)

3 Read and write True (T) or False (F): (4 marks)

		True	False
1	There are some trees.		
2	There is a girl.		
3	There's a man.		
4	There are some animals.		

4 Read and circle the odd one: (4 marks)

1	mother	friend	brother	father
2	salt	pepper	cheese	tree
3	leg	eye	dog	nose
4	carrots	sand	tree	pond

5 Choose the correct answer from a,b or c: (4 marks)

1- I don't have .... soap.
ⓐ some ⓑ any ⓒ has
2- A: How .... are these? B: They're one pound each.
ⓐ much ⓑ many ⓒ long
3- .... pen is this?
ⓐ Where ⓑ When ⓒ Whose
4- I .... in the zoo yesterday.
ⓐ are ⓑ is ⓒ was

C. Writing (16 Marks)

6 Look and answer the questions: (6 marks)

1- Is he in the bedroom?
....

2- What can you see?
....

3- What is she doing?
....

4- What is this ?
....

7 Look and write THREE sentences: (6 marks)

....
....
....

8 Punctuate the following: (4 marks)

did ahmed visit you last tuesday
....

Test 2 محافظة الجيزة

A. Listening (12 Marks)

1 Listen and circle the word with the short vowel: (6 marks)

1	2	3	4
teeth	flag	bike	drum
spell	bake	bin	soap

2 Listen and complete with one word: (6 marks)

نص الاستماع فى آخر الكتاب

1- Let's .... a snack.
2- There is .... salt .
3- I don't .... mushrooms.
4- Let's play ....

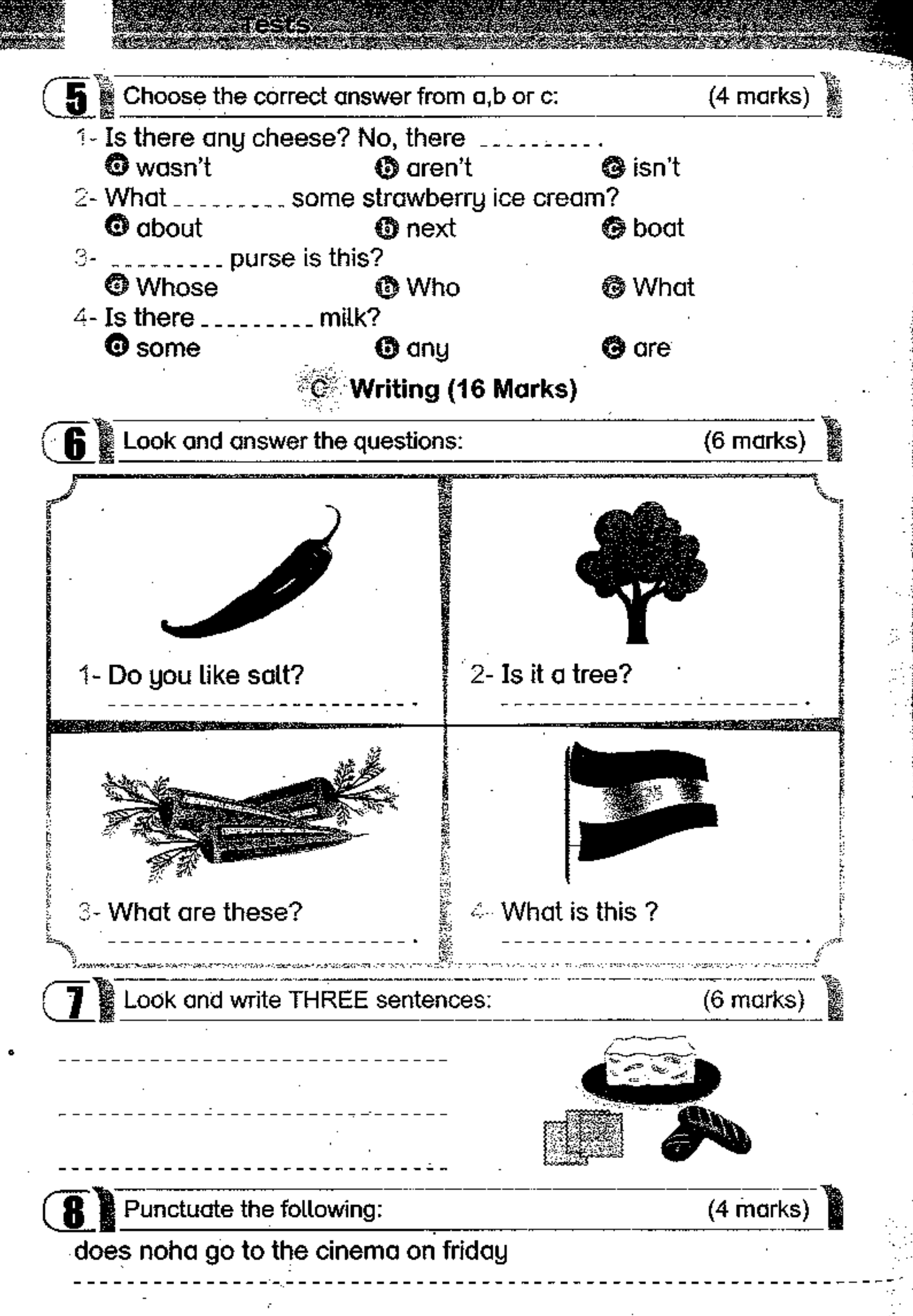
B. Reading (12 Marks)

3 Read and write True (T) or False (F): (4 marks)

1 It's a kitchen.
2 I can see my grandmother.
3 There is some cheese.
4 This is a museum.

4 Read and circle the odd one: (4 marks)

1	sleep	flag	play	have
2	cat	cookies	cake	ice cream
3	where	what	green	whose
4	hospital	was	museum	bakery



5 Choose the correct answer from a,b or c: (4 marks)

1- Is there any cheese? No, there ....

ⓐ wasn't ⓑ aren't ⓒ isn't

2- What .... some strawberry ice cream?

ⓐ about ⓑ next ⓒ boat

3- .... purse is this?

ⓐ Whose ⓑ Who ⓒ What

4- Is there .... milk?

ⓐ some ⓑ any ⓒ are

C Writing (16 Marks)

6 Look and answer the questions: (6 marks)

1- Do you like salt?

....

2- Is it a tree?

....

3- What are these?

....

4- What is this ?

....

7 Look and write THREE sentences: (6 marks)

....

....

....

8 Punctuate the following: (4 marks)

does noha go to the cinema on friday

....

Test 3 محافظة القليوبية

A Listening (12 Marks)

1 Listen and circle the word with the short vowel: (6 marks)

1	2	3	4
bed	night	vet	spell
feet	tin	queen	sneeze

2 Listen and complete with one word: (6 marks)

نص الاستماع فى آخر الكتاب

1- He was at the ....

2- I'm ....

3- They .... their teeth.

4- They .... at the hospital.

B Reading (12 Marks)

3 Read and write True (T) or False (F): (4 marks)

		True	False
1	There are two girls.		
2	The boy is playing video games.		
3	They are sitting in the bedroom.		
4	Kareem is dancing.		

4 Read and circle the odd one: (4 marks)

1	bedroom	dining room	garage	sand
2	garden	call a friend	watch videos	bake cookies
3	cookies	sandwich	keys	cereal
4	father	duck	mother	brother

5 Choose the correct answer from a,b or c: (4 marks)

1- They ________ at the hospital.
ⓐ was ⓑ were ⓒ wasn't
2- We ________ cookies yesterday.
ⓐ baking ⓑ baked ⓒ bake
3- I was ________ the bookshop yesterday.
ⓐ on ⓑ under ⓒ at
4- Let's ________ a friend.
ⓐ call ⓑ calls ⓒ calling

C Writing (16 Marks)

6 Look and answer the questions: (6 marks)

1- Was she in the bedroom?
____
2- What's she doing?
____
3- Is this a bakery?
____
4- Is it a kitchen?
____

7 Look and write THREE sentences: (6 marks)

____
____
____

8 Punctuate the following: (4 marks)

let s go to the park on monday
____

Test 4 محافظة المنوفية

A Listening (12 Marks)

1 Listen and circle the word with the short vowel: (6 marks)

1	2	3	4
lash bake	rice sniff	lunch prune	teeth men

2 Listen and complete with one word: (6 marks)

نص الاستماع في آخر الكتاب

1- I was at the museum ________ Monday.
2- That's a ________ idea.
3- You ________ the wrong number.
4- Is Kareem ________, please?

B Reading (12 Marks)

3 Read and write True (T) or False (F): (4 marks)

		True	False
1	This is a house.		
2	There is a car.		
3	I can see a cat.		
4	There is a tree.		

4 Read and circle the odd one: (4 marks)

1	six	seven	eat	nine
2	cinema	nurse	hospital	bookshop
3	crab	cap	dress	shirt
4	Saturday	yesterday	Friday	Wednesday

5 Choose the correct answer from a,b or c: (4 marks)

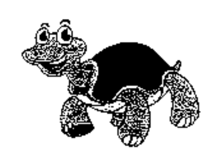
1- We .... the piano yesterday.
ⓐ practising ⓑ practised ⓒ practise
2- There .... some grass.
ⓐ is ⓑ have ⓒ are
3- I was .... a restaurant yesterday.
ⓐ at ⓑ of ⓒ on
4- He brushed .... teeth.
ⓐ she ⓑ I ⓒ his

C Writing (16 Marks)

6 Look and answer the questions: (6 marks)



1- What is this?
....



2- Is it slow?
....



3- Are there any mushrooms?
....



4- What are they doing?
....

7 Look and write THREE sentences: (6 marks)



....
....
....

8 Punctuate the following: (4 marks)

don t write on the wall please
....

Test 5 محافظة الشرقية



A Listening (12 Marks)

1 Listen and circle the word with the short vowel: (6 marks)

1	2	3	4
bun	bed	hot	sleeve
glue	feet	goat	dress

2 Listen and complete with one word: (6 marks)

نص الاستماع فى آخر الكتاب

1- They .... at the zoo.
2- We play video ....
3- I can't ride a ....
4- You .... to do your homework.

B Reading (12 Marks)

3 Read and write True (T) or False (F): (4 marks)



1 The boy is washing his face. ......
2 The boy is brushing his teeth. ......
3 He is wearing a cap. ......
4 There's a book. ......

4 Read and circle the odd one: (4 marks)

1	door	window	chair	teacher
2	spaghetti	rice	egg	box
3	pen	pencil	nurse	book
4	dress	cap	computer	shoes

5 Choose the correct answer from a,b or c: (4 marks)

1- I .... the piano.
ⓐ call ⓑ practise ⓒ brush
2- She .... her room.
ⓐ cleans ⓑ plays ⓒ eats
3- You have .... do your homework.
ⓐ two ⓑ too ⓒ to
4- They .... at the bakery.
ⓐ is ⓑ was ⓒ were

C Writing (16 Marks)

6 Look and answer the questions: (6 marks)

1- What is it?
....
2- What do you like?
....
3- Is this shampoo?
....
4- Is there any sand?
....

7 Look and write THREE sentences: (6 marks)

....
....
....

8 Punctuate the following: (4 marks)

let s visit mona
....

Test 6 محافظة الغربية

إدارة شرق طنطا التعليمية

A Listening (12 Marks)

1 Listen and circle the word with the short vowel: (6 marks)

1	2	3	4
cut	plane	meet	dog
cute	plan	spell	smoke

2 Listen and complete with one word: (6 marks)

نص الاستماع فى آخر الكتاب

1- Amira is eating .... in the snow.
2- Mrs. Smith .... at the hospital.
3- Adel .... the rose and smiled.
4- Is this your .... ?

B Reading (12 Marks)

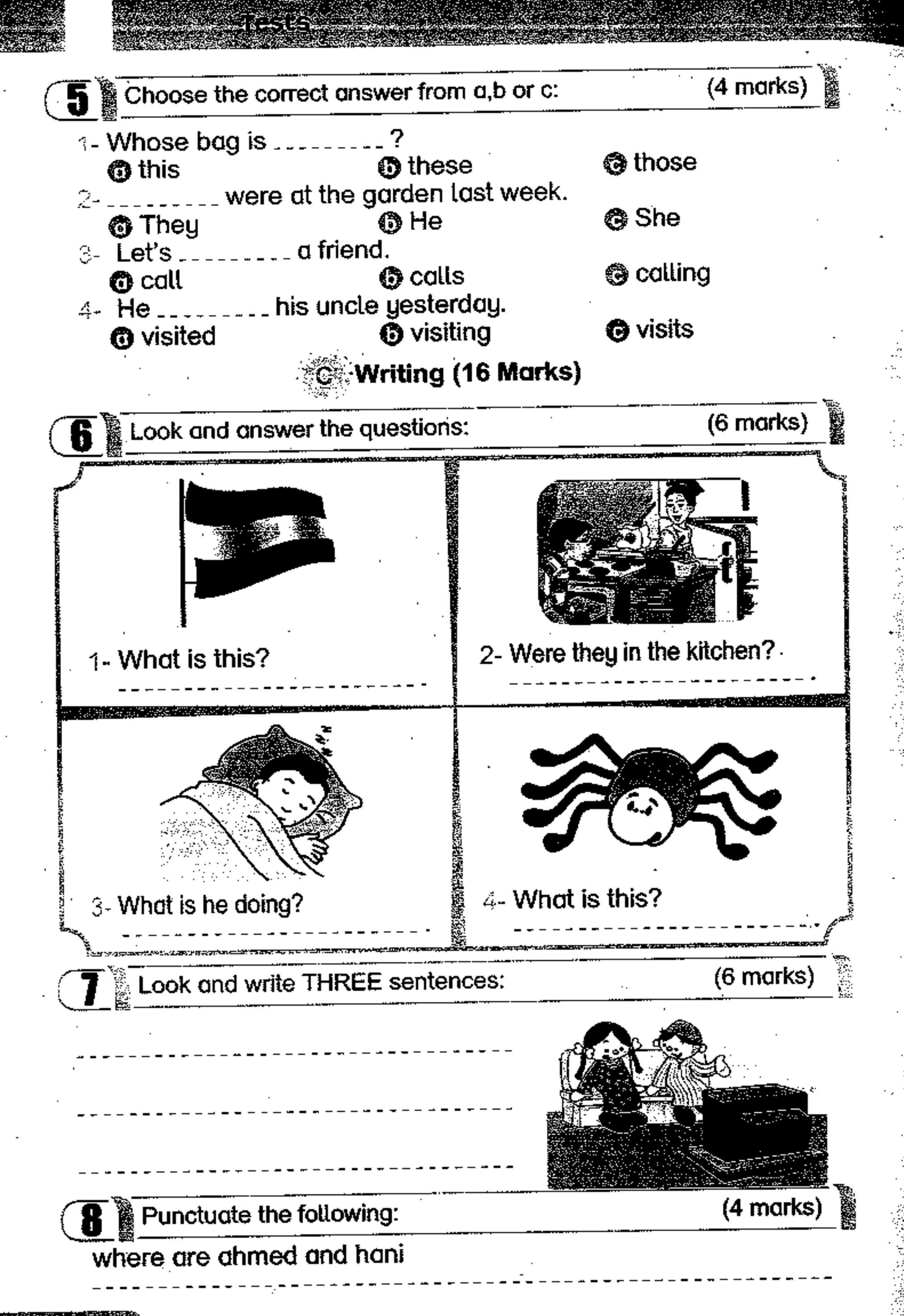
3 Read and write True (T) or False (F): (4 marks)

		True	False
1	There are two girls.		
2	There is a man eating.		
3	I can see a cat.		
4	The man is at a restaurant.		

4 Read and circle the odd one: (4 marks)

1	kitchen	garden	jump	bathroom
2	pepper	flag	butter	cheese
3	play	crab	sleep	go
4	plum	museum	hospital	restaurant





5 Choose the correct answer from a,b or c: (4 marks)

1- Whose bag is .... ?
ⓐ this ⓑ these ⓒ those

2- .... were at the garden last week.
ⓐ They ⓑ He ⓒ She

3- Let's .... a friend.
ⓐ call ⓑ calls ⓒ calling

4- He .... his uncle yesterday.
ⓐ visited ⓑ visiting ⓒ visits

C Writing (16 Marks)

6 Look and answer the questions: (6 marks)

1- What is this?
....

2- Were they in the kitchen?
....

3- What is he doing?
....

4- What is this?
....

7 Look and write THREE sentences: (6 marks)

....
....
....

8 Punctuate the following: (4 marks)

where are ahmed and hani
....

Test 7 محافظة كفر الشيخ

A Listening (12 Marks)

1 Listen and circle the word with the short vowel: (6 marks)

1	2	3	4
drive	truck	make	dream
bridge	true	cat	red

2 Listen and complete with one word: (6 marks)

نص الاستماع فى آخر الكتاب

1- Can you .... me?
2- I buy books at the ....
3- I went to the .... yesterday.
4- How .... are these?

B Reading (12 Marks)

3 Read and write True (T) or False (F): (4 marks)

		True	False
1)	The cats are on the bed.		
2)	The man has a prize and a present.		
3)	The girl is wearing glasses.		
4)	The girl has some caps.		

4 Read and circle the odd one: (4 marks)

1	thirsty	hungry	hot	dad
2	cookie	talk	jump	eat
3	kitchen	bedroom	purse	bathroom
4	Eman	Magdy	Mahmoud	Ahmed

5 Choose the correct answer from a,b or c: (4 marks)

1- He wasn't ________ the cinema.
ⓐ at ⓑ next ⓒ to

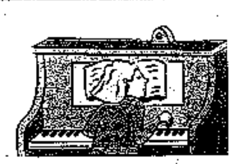
2- Whose pencil is ________ ?
ⓐ those ⓑ these ⓒ this

3- This dress is ________ .
ⓐ hers ⓑ my ⓒ our

4- You ________ at the park.
ⓐ was ⓑ is ⓒ were

C Writing (16 Marks)

6 Look and answer the questions: (6 marks)



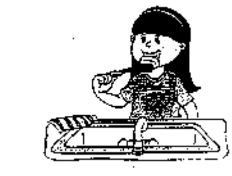
1- Did she practise the piano?
____



2- What is she doing?
____



3- Is she baking cookies?
____



4- Is she eating?
____

7 Look and write THREE sentences: (6 marks)



____
____
____

8 Punctuate the following: (4 marks)

mahmoud and yara like english
____

Test 8 محافظة البحيرة

A Listening (12 Marks)

1 Listen and circle the word with the short vowel: (6 marks)

1	2	3	4
chips prize	feet bed	run prune	box boat

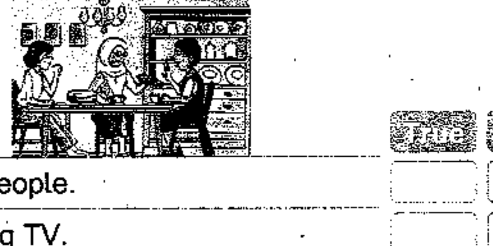
2 Listen and complete with one word: (6 marks)

نص الاستماع فى آخر الكتاب

1- Hey! Don't ____________ that.
2- Maybe it's hers. Let's ____________ .
3- Is Kareem ____________ , please?
4- I ____________ my hands.

B Reading (12 Marks)

3 Read and write True (T) or False (F): (4 marks)



		True	False
1	I can see three people.		
2	They are watching TV.		
3	They are at school.		
4	They are in the dining room.		

4 Read and circle the odd one: (4 marks)

1	bored	nurse	hungry	happy
2	bedroom	bathroom	prize	kitchen
3	teacher	doctor	nurse	school
4	museum	hospital	bread	cinema

5 Choose the correct answer from a,b or c: (4 marks)

1- I .... my teeth yesterday.
ⓐ brushes ⓑ brushed ⓒ brushing
2- They .... at the cinema last Friday.
ⓐ isn't ⓑ wasn't ⓒ weren't
3- We can buy bread at the ....
ⓐ park ⓑ kitchen ⓒ bakery
4- I'm .... You have the wrong number.
ⓐ sorry ⓑ hungry ⓒ happy

C Writing (16 Marks)

6 Look and answer the questions: (6 marks)

1- What's this?
....

2- What did she do?
....

3- What do you like to eat?
....

4- Can they fly?
....

7 Look and write THREE sentences: (6 marks)

....
....
....

8 Punctuate the following: (4 marks)

let s go to the park on monday
....

Test 9 محافظة الإسكندرية

إدارة العجمي التعليمية



Listening (12 Marks)

1 Listen and circle the word with the short vowel: (6 marks)

1	2	3	4
fat	bed	prune	kid
bake	green	cup	nine

2 Listen and complete with one word: (6 marks)

نص الاستماع في آخر الكتاب

1- There .... any carrots.
2- I'm .... to the shop.
3- I .... my teeth after meals.
4- Tamer is playing .... games.

B Reading (12 Marks)

3 Read and write True (T) or False (F): (4 marks)

		True	False
1	They are at the museum.		
2	There is some bread.		
3	There aren't any rivers.		
4	There are there people.		

4 Read and circle the odd one: (4 marks)

1	mouth	eye	teacher	ear
2	shampoo	soap	perfume	snow
3	sauce	salt	train	pepper
4	book	school	museum	bakery

5 Choose the correct answer from a,b or c: (4 marks)

1- Whose keys .... these?
ⓐ is ⓑ are ⓒ does
2- He .... his hands yesterday.
ⓐ washes ⓑ wash ⓒ washed
3- .... was in the restaurant.
ⓐ They ⓑ I ⓒ We
4- They .... at the bookshop.
ⓐ weren't ⓑ isn't ⓒ wasn't

C Writing (16 Marks)

6 Look and answer the questions: (6 marks)

1- Is he happy?
....
2- Where do you sleep?
....
3- What is she doing?
....
4- What is this?
....

7 Look and write THREE sentences: (6 marks)

....
....
....

8 Punctuate the following: (4 marks)

let s go to the park on friday
....

Test 10 محافظة الإسماعيلية

إدارة الإسماعيلية التعليمية



A Listening (12 Marks)

1 Listen and circle the word with the short vowel: (6 marks)

1	2	3	4
dress sleeve	soup pond	tune ten	meet spell

2 Listen and complete with one word: (6 marks)

نص الاستماع فى آخر الكتاب

1- I .... football on Friday.
2- Whose .... is this?
3- Thank .... so much.
4- He .... at the bookshop.

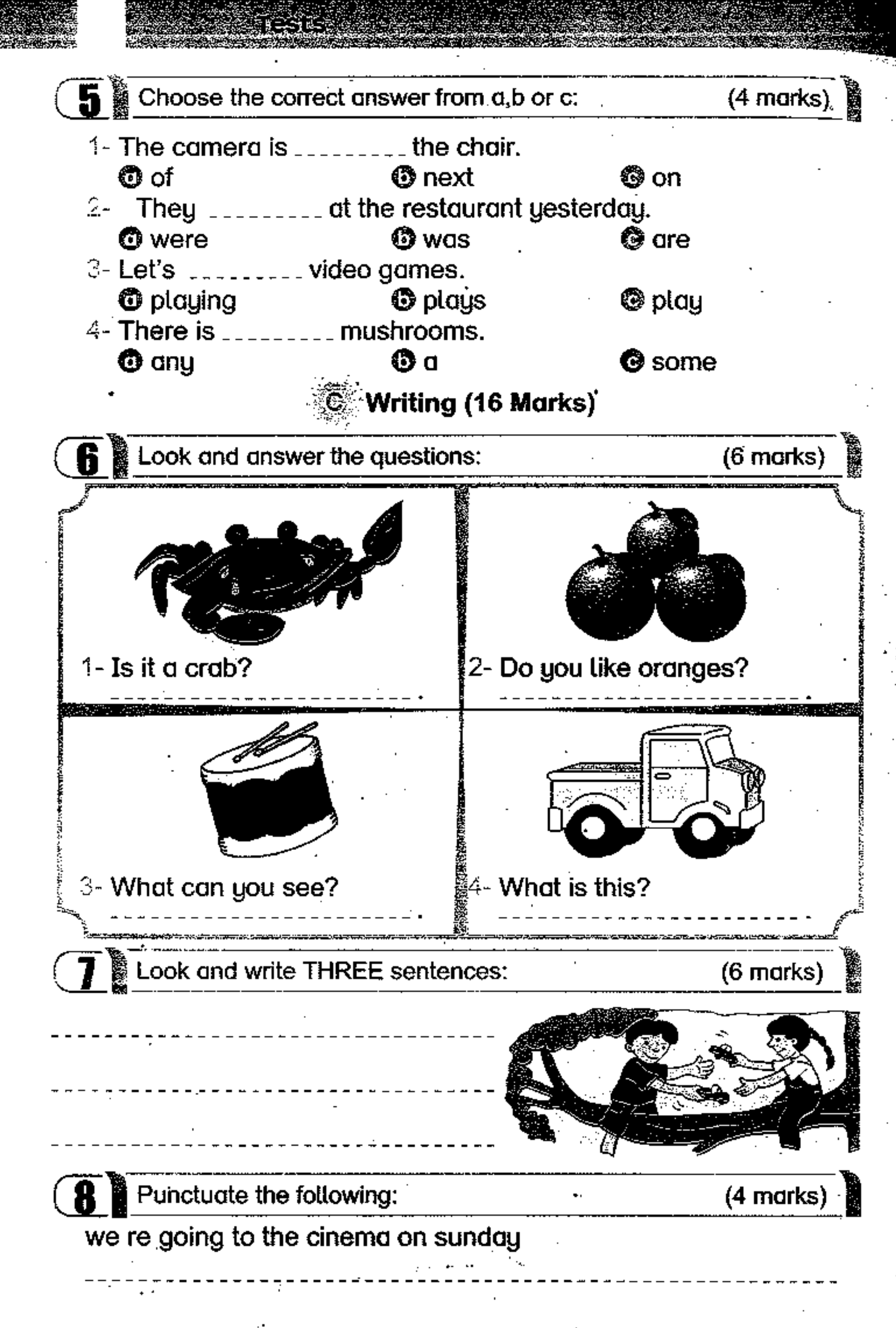
B Reading (12 Marks)

3 Read and write True (T) or False (F): (4 marks)

		True	False
1	He is in the kitchen.		
2	He is sleeping.		
3	He is in the living room.		
4	There is a bus.		

4 Read and circle the odd one: (4 marks)

1	play	crab	sleep	go
2	when	whose	where	white
3	pepper	flag	butter	cheese
4	bakery	cinema	thirsty	hospital



5 Choose the correct answer from a,b or c: (4 marks)

1- The camera is ________ the chair.
ⓐ of ⓑ next ⓒ on
2- They ________ at the restaurant yesterday.
ⓐ were ⓑ was ⓒ are
3- Let's ________ video games.
ⓐ playing ⓑ plays ⓒ play
4- There is ________ mushrooms.
ⓐ any ⓑ a ⓒ some

C Writing (16 Marks)

6 Look and answer the questions: (6 marks)

1- Is it a crab?
____

2- Do you like oranges?
____

3- What can you see?
____

4- What is this?
____

7 Look and write THREE sentences: (6 marks)

____
____
____

8 Punctuate the following: (4 marks)

we re going to the cinema on sunday

____

Test 11 محافظة بورسعيد

A Listening (12 Marks)

1 Listen and circle the word with the short vowel: (6 marks)

1	2	3	4
sneeze spell	drum dream	creek truck	slug flute

2 Listen and complete with one word: (6 marks)

نص الاستماع فى آخر الكتاب

1- ______________ you so much.
2- Let's ______________ football.
3- Whose purse is ______________ ?
4- I ______________ at the bookshop.

B Reading (12 Marks)

3 Read and write True (T) or False (F): (4 marks)

		True	False
1	The woman is fat.		
2	The man has meat.		
3	The boy doesn't want ice cream.		
4	The man is buying ice cream.		

4 Read and circle the odd one: (4 marks)

1	school	museum	English	bakery
2	kitchen	hall	garden	plum
3	whose	where	were	when
4	plate	play	sleep	cry

5 Choose the correct answer from a,b or c: (4 marks)

1- Was she .... the garden?
ⓐ next ⓑ in ⓒ on

2- .... have the wrong number.
ⓐ You ⓑ She ⓒ He

3- .... much is that? - It's two pounds.
ⓐ What ⓑ How ⓒ Whose

4- They .... at the hospital.
ⓐ was ⓑ were ⓒ wasn't

C Writing (16 Marks)

6 Look and answer the questions: (6 marks)

1- What is this?
....

2- What can you see?
....

3- Where are they?
....

4- Do you have a dress?
....

7 Look and write THREE sentences: (6 marks)

....
....
....

8 Punctuate the following: (4 marks)

i wasn t at the chemist s
....

Test 12 محافظة الفيوم

A Listening (12 Marks)

1 Listen and circle the word with the short vowel: (6 marks)

1	2	3	4
blue dress	fun flute	tree pen	pot boat

2 Listen and complete with one word: (6 marks)

نص الاستماع فى آخر الكتاب

1- Let's play ....
2- We're going ....
3- Be .... at six.
4- Have ....!

B Reading (12 Marks)

3 Read and write True (T) or False (F): (4 marks)

		True	False
1	It's a slide.		
2	It's a flag.		
3	It's a car.		
4	We can see it in our schools.		

4 Read and circle the odd one: (4 marks)

1	hungry	bored	six	hot
2	nurse	cinema	doctor	teacher
3	pencil	book	bag	shop
4	when	what	white	where

5 Choose the correct answer from a,b or c: (4 marks)

1- I .... call a friend yesterday. I washed my hands.
ⓐ didn't ⓑ don't ⓒ doesn't
2- .... she in the hall?
ⓐ Was ⓑ Were ⓒ Are
3- Is this .... purse? - Yes, it is.
ⓐ your ⓑ you ⓒ me
4- You have to .... your homework.
ⓐ do ⓑ make ⓒ play

C. Writing (16 Marks)

6 Look and answer the questions: (6 marks)

1- What is this?
....

2- What can you see?
....

3- Do you like riding a bike?
....

4- Is it a slug?
....

7 Look and write THREE sentences: (6 marks)

....
....
....

8 Punctuate the following: (4 marks)

where are ahmed and hani
....

Test 13 محافظة بني سويف



A. Listening (12 Marks)

1 Listen and circle the word with the short vowel: (6 marks)

1	2	3	4
kite	gum	June	home
pen	flute	bus	hot

2 Listen and complete with one word: (6 marks)

نص الاستماع في آخر الكتاب

1- I don't like ....
2- The car is in the ....
3- You have the .... number.
4- Let's go to the ....

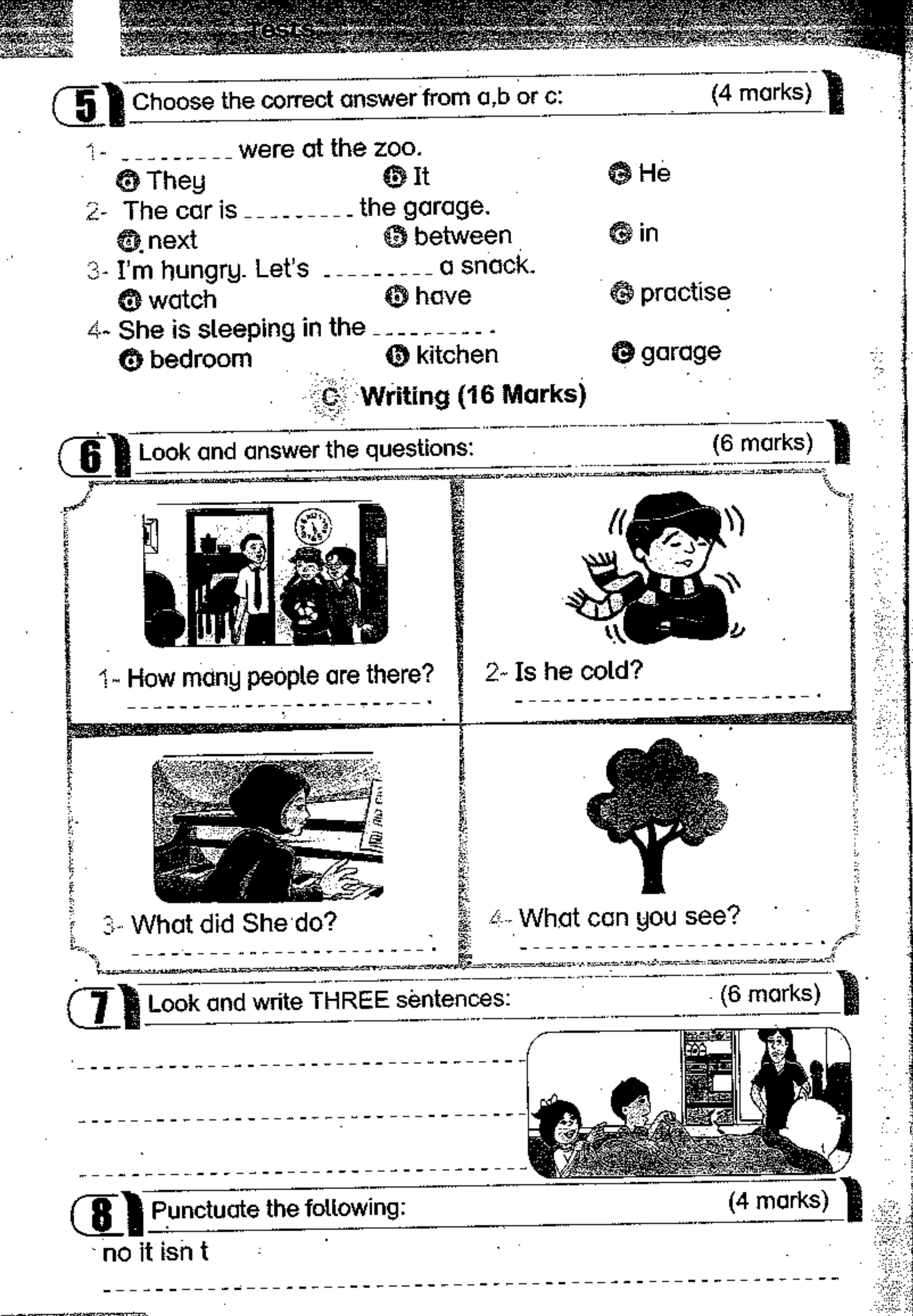
B. Reading (12 Marks)

3 Read and write True (T) or False (F): (4 marks)

		True	False
1	She got a prize.		
2	She is happy.		
3	She is dancing.		
4	She has a prune.		

4 Read and circle the odd one: (4 marks)

1	bathroom	hall	living room	hat
2	cheese	rice	blue	meat
3	he	we	she	ball
4	in	like	want	eat



5 Choose the correct answer from a,b or c: (4 marks)

1- ________ were at the zoo.
ⓐ They ⓑ It ⓒ He

2- The car is ________ the garage.
ⓐ next ⓑ between ⓒ in

3- I'm hungry. Let's ________ a snack.
ⓐ watch ⓑ have ⓒ practise

4- She is sleeping in the ________ .
ⓐ bedroom ⓑ kitchen ⓒ garage

C Writing (16 Marks)

6 Look and answer the questions: (6 marks)

1- How many people are there?
____

2- Is he cold?
____

3- What did She do?
____

4- What can you see?
____

7 Look and write THREE sentences: (6 marks)

____
____
____

8 Punctuate the following: (4 marks)

no it isn t
____

Test 14

محافظة سوهاج
ادارة جرجا التعليمية

A Listening (12 Marks)

1 Listen and circle the word with the short vowel: (6 marks)

1	2	3	4
red	home	cut	cap
bee	box	blue	cake

2 Listen and complete with one word: (6 marks)

نص الاستماع فى آخر الكتاب

1- How ____________ is your bag?
2- You are ____________ .
3- How about the cinema? - Good____________ .
4- Boys and girls like ____________ .

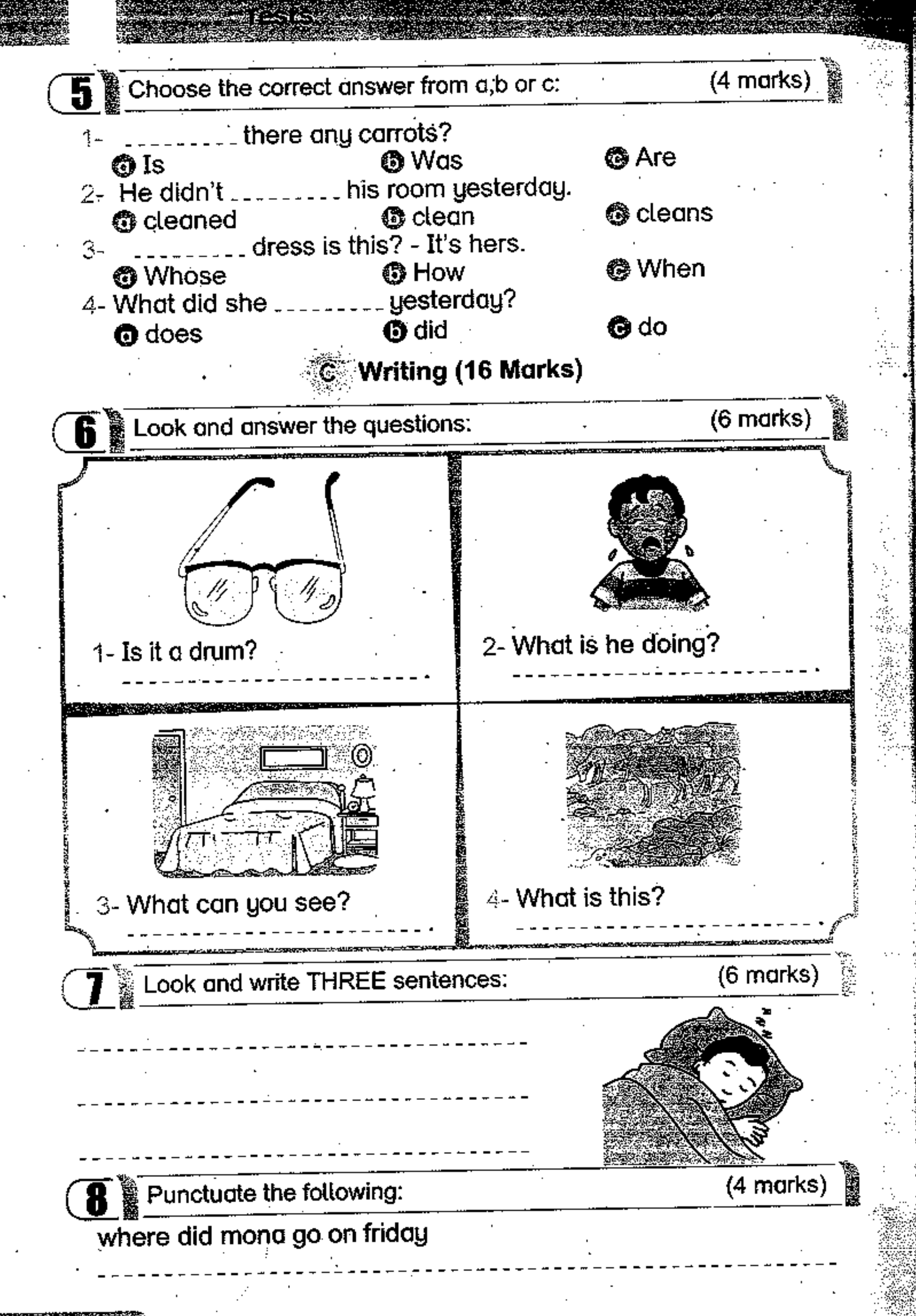
B Reading (12 Marks)

3 Read and write True (T) or False (F): (4 marks)

		True	False
1	There are three boys.		
2	They are in the kitchen.		
3	The boys are playing.		
4	I can see a flag.		

4 Read and circle the odd one: (4 marks)

1	cinema	baby	restaurant	museum
2	pencil	bag	pen	father
3	snake	clean	dance	wash
4	garden	garage	sister	hall



5 Choose the correct answer from a,b or c: (4 marks)

1- .... there any carrots?
ⓐ Is ⓑ Was ⓒ Are

2- He didn't .... his room yesterday.
ⓐ cleaned ⓑ clean ⓒ cleans

3- .... dress is this? - It's hers.
ⓐ Whose ⓑ How ⓒ When

4- What did she .... yesterday?
ⓐ does ⓑ did ⓒ do

C Writing (16 Marks)

6 Look and answer the questions: (6 marks)

1- Is it a drum?
....

2- What is he doing?
....

3- What can you see?
....

4- What is this?
....

7 Look and write THREE sentences: (6 marks)

....

....

....

8 Punctuate the following: (4 marks)

where did mona go on friday

....

Test 15 محافظة أسيوط

إدارة الفتح التعليمية

A Listening (12 Marks)

1 Listen and circle the word with the short vowel: (6 marks)

1	2	3	4
dress	snake	kids	flute
dream	flag	slide	plum

2 Listen and complete with one word: (6 marks)

نص الاستماع في آخر الكتاب

1- Whose .... is this?
2- Dad, we're .... outside.
3- Hello. Is Kareem ...., please?
4- You have to .... your homework.

B Reading (12 Marks)

3 Read and write True (T) or False (F): (4 marks)

		True	False
1	There are four people.		
2	They are in the garden.		
3	The girl is doing homework.		
4	They are in the bedroom.		

4 Read and circle the odd one: (4 marks)

1	welcome	museum	bookshop	cinema
2	clean	practise	dance	room
3	garage	crab	kitchen	hall
4	white	what	whose	where

5 Choose the correct answer from a,b or c: (4 marks)

1- He .... his hands yesterday.
ⓐ washed ⓑ washes ⓒ wash

2- They .... at the department store.
ⓐ wasn't ⓑ weren't ⓒ isn't

3- The boys are eating .... the dining room.
ⓐ of ⓑ with ⓒ in

4- I'm sorry. You .... the wrong number.
ⓐ have ⓑ has ⓒ is

C Writing (16 Marks)

6 Look and answer the questions: (6 marks)

1- What is this?
....

2- Was she in the bathroom?
....

3- Is he a teacher?
....

4- Did they play video games?
....

7 Look and write THREE sentences: (6 marks)

....
....
....

8 Punctuate the following: (4 marks)

nabil and hossam didn t clean their room
....

Test 16

محافظة قنا
إدارة قوص التعليمية



A Listening (12 Marks)

1 Listen and circle the word with the short vowel: (6 marks)

1	2	3	4
spell	dream	flag	tree
sneeze	dress	flute	truck

2 Listen and complete with one word: (6 marks)

نص الاستماع فى آخر الكتاب

1- They don't .... videos.
2- I cleaned my ....
3- Look! Whose .... is this?
4- She .... at the museum.

B Reading (12 Marks)

3 Read and write True (T) or False (F): (4 marks)

1 The girl is washing the dishes.
2 They are in the garden.
3 The mother is baking cookies.
4 The girl is wearing glasses.

4 Read and circle the odd one: (4 marks)

1	kitchen	hall	bedroom	spider
2	wash	room	clean	play
3	chair	duck	cat	dog
4	green	cry	brown	black

5 Choose the correct answer from a,b or c: (4 marks)

1- Let's .... a friend.
ⓐ call ⓑ calls ⓒ calling

2- .... have the wrong number.
ⓐ She ⓑ He ⓒ You

3- He .... his hands yesterday.
ⓐ washes ⓑ wash ⓒ washed

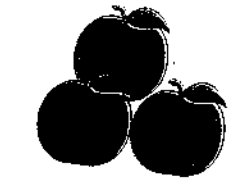
4- They .... in the living room.
ⓐ was ⓑ were ⓒ wasn't

C Writing (16 Marks)

6 Look and answer the questions: (6 marks)



1- Is he happy?
....



2- What do you want to eat?
....



What's this?
....



Were they in the garage?
....

7 Look and write THREE sentences: (6 marks)



....
....
....

8 Punctuate the following: (4 marks)

i don t go to school on friday
....

Test 17 محافظة الأقصر

إدارة اسنا التعليمية



A Listening (12 Marks)

1 Listen and circle the word with the short vowel: (6 marks)

1	2	3	4
dress	dream	bake	smell
sleep	drum	brush	sneeze

2 Listen and complete with one word: (6 marks)

نص الاستماع في آخر الكتاب

1- Let's .... football.
2- You .... the wrong number.
3- Whose .... is this?
4- Thank you .... much.

B Reading (12 Marks)

3 Read and write True (T) or False (F): (4 marks)



1 I can see two boys.
2 They are at the bookshop.
3 They are sleeping.
4 They are playing football.

4 Read and circle the odd one: (4 marks)

1	hand	wash	clean	practise
2	they	was	she	you
3	museum	bakery	hospital	friend
4	bathroom	homework	kitchen	dining room

5 Choose the correct answer from a,b or c: (4 marks)

1- They .... at the restaurant.
ⓐ was ⓑ wasn't ⓒ were

2- Was .... in the garden?
ⓐ she ⓑ you ⓒ they

3- I .... brush my teeth.
ⓐ doesn't ⓑ didn't ⓒ isn't

4- Is there .... sand?
ⓐ some ⓑ any ⓒ an

C Writing (16 Marks)

6 Look and answer the questions: (6 marks)

1- What's this?
....

2- Is it a truck?
....

3- Is this your pencil?
....

4- Were they in the bathroom?
....

7 Look and write THREE sentences: (6 marks)

....
....
....

8 Punctuate the following: (4 marks)

let s go to the cinema on sunday
....

Test 18 محافظة الوادى الجديد

إدارة الفرافرة التعليمية

A Listening (12 Marks)

1 Listen and circle the word with the short vowel: (6 marks)

1	2	3	4
duck	broom	cake	pen
blue	hot	man	bee

2 Listen and complete with one word: (6 marks)

نص الاستماع فى آخر الكتاب

1- Ahmed, let's .... football.
2- You have the .... number.
3- Excuse me, ... you help me?
4- She .... cookies.

B Reading (12 Marks)

3 Read and write True (T) or False (F): (4 marks)

1 This is an aeroplane. ......
2 It can fly. ......
3 There is a slide. ......
4 It's fast. ......

4 Read and circle the odd one: (4 marks)

1	hall	garage	kitchen	tree
2	cleaned	washed	call	played
3	brother	black	father	mother
4	Heba	Ali	Samy	Kareem

5 Choose the correct answer from a,b or c: (4 marks)

1- .... weren't at the bookshop.
- ⓐ I ⓑ They ⓒ She

2- She .... practise the piano.
- ⓐ didn't ⓑ do ⓒ does

3- .... purse is this?
- ⓐ Why ⓑ How ⓒ Whose

4- We .... going outside, Dad.
- ⓐ is ⓑ are ⓒ am

C Writing (16 Marks)

6 Look and answer the questions: (6 marks)

1- Is this a museum?
....

2- What is this?
....

3- What's he doing?
....

4- Were they in the bedroom?
....

7 Look and write THREE sentences: (6 marks)

....
....
....

8 Punctuate the following: (4 marks)

where are mona and ahmed
....

Test 19 محافظة مطروح

إدارة الضبعة التعليمية



A Listening (12 Marks)

1 Listen and circle the word with the short vowel: (6 marks)

1	2	3	4
bed	cake	feel	fox
sneeze	man	hot	soup

2 Listen and complete with one word: (6 marks)

نص الاستماع فى آخر الكتاب

1- Do you .... chocolate chip cookies?
2- I .... like fish.
3- I was at the ....
4- Whose purse is .... ?

B Reading (12 Marks)

3 Read and write True (T) or False (F): (4 marks)

		True	False
1	She is playing.		
2	She is at the bathroom.		
3	She is dreaming.		
4	She is wearing glasses.		

4 Read and circle the odd one: (4 marks)

1	wash	clean	call	hand
2	green	grapes	brown	black
3	dog	cat	girl	bat
4	train	aeroplane	bus	slug



5 Choose the correct answer from a,b or c: (4 marks)

1- .... sunglasses are these?
ⓐ Who ⓑ How ⓒ Whose

2- He didn't .... his room.
ⓐ cleaned ⓑ clean ⓒ cleans

3- I'm hungry. Let's .... a snack.
ⓐ watch ⓑ have ⓒ practise

4- She is sleeping in the ....
ⓐ bedroom ⓑ kitchen ⓒ garage

C. Writing (16 Marks)

6 Look and answer the questions: (6 marks)

1- What is this?
....

2- Is he happy?
....

3- What does he like?
....

4- Is it a truck?
....

7 Look and write THREE sentences: (6 marks)

....

....

....

8 Punctuate the following: (4 marks)

ahmed and mona don t want fish

....

Test 20

محافظة جنوب سيناء

إدارة سانت كاترين التعليمية

A. Listening (12 Marks)

1 Listen and circle the word with the short vowel: (6 marks)

1	2	3	4
dress	slide	snake	spell
sneeze	pin	flag	sleep

2 Listen and complete with one word: (6 marks)

نص الاستماع فى آخر الكتاب

1- The .... can spell Spain.
2- She was in the .... room.
3- They weren't at the ....
4- What about some ice .... ?

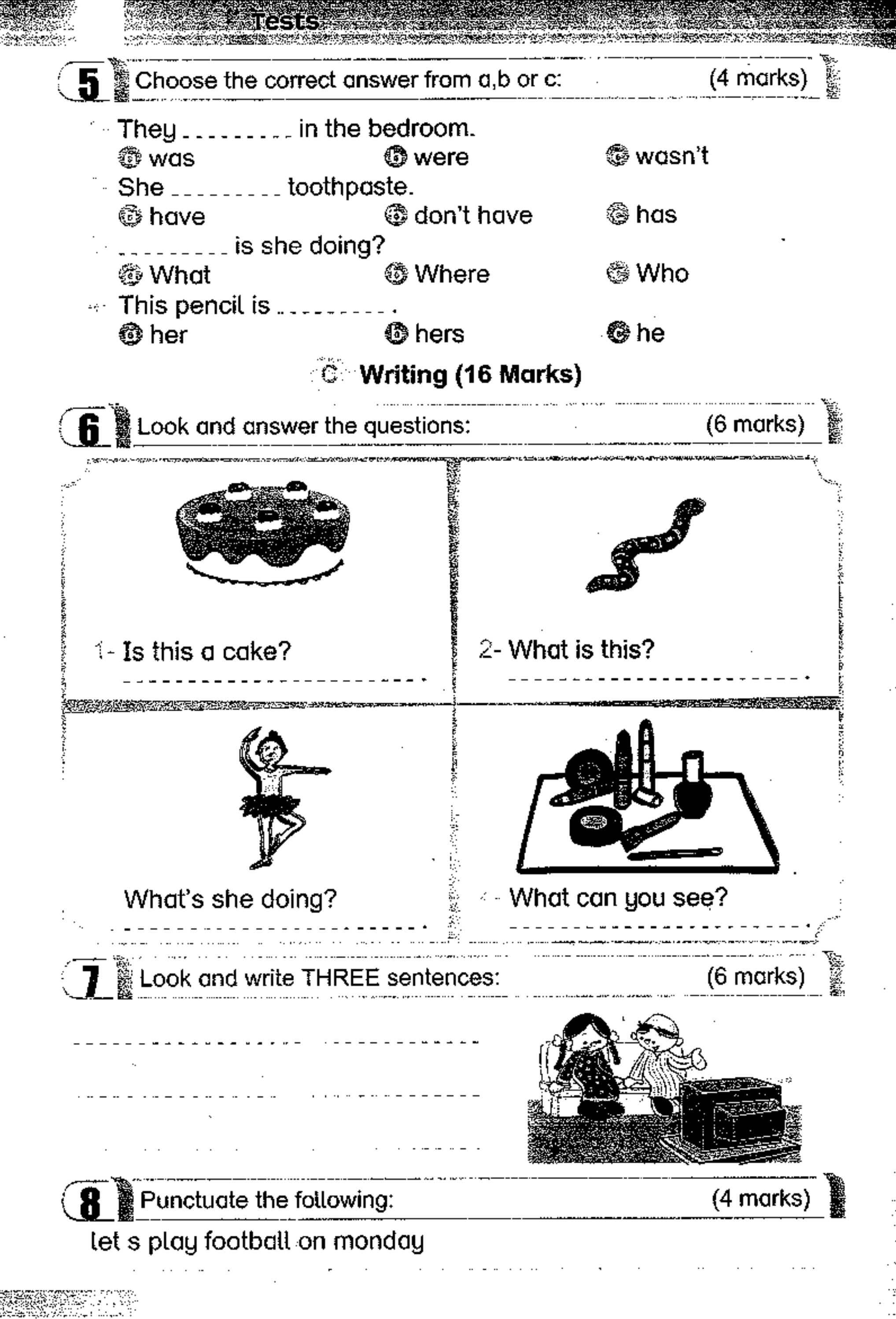
B. Reading (12 Marks)

3 Read and write True (T) or False (F): (4 marks)

		True	False
1	They are in the bathroom.		
2	There are two boys.		
3	They are eating.		
4	They are writing.		

4 Read and circle the odd one: (4 marks)

1	play	garage	sleep	dance
2	cinema	tree	hospital	chemist's
3	plum	snake	spider	crab
4	wash	played	cleaned	baked



5 Choose the correct answer from a,b or c: (4 marks)

1- They .... in the bedroom.
ⓐ was ⓑ were ⓒ wasn't

2- She .... toothpaste.
ⓐ have ⓑ don't have ⓒ has

3- .... is she doing?
ⓐ What ⓑ Where ⓒ Who

4- This pencil is ....
ⓐ her ⓑ hers ⓒ he

C. Writing (16 Marks)

6 Look and answer the questions: (6 marks)

1- Is this a cake?
....

2- What is this?
....

3- What's she doing?
....

4- What can you see?
....

7 Look and write THREE sentences: (6 marks)

....
....
....

8 Punctuate the following: (4 marks)

let s play football on monday
....

Test 21 محافظة البحر الأحمر

إدارة الغردقة التعليمية

A. Listening (12 Marks)

1 Listen and circle the word with the short vowel: (6 marks)

1	2	3	4
cup	fox	fin	feet
tune	coat	fine	bed

2 Listen and complete with one word: (6 marks)

نص الاستماع فى آخر الكتاب

1- I don't .... cookies.
2- That sounds ....
3- Let's .... football.
4- Is this your .... ?

B. Reading (12 Marks)

3 Read and write True (T) or False (F): (4 marks)

1 The boy is happy. ......
2 There are two girls. ......
3 There is a cake. ......
4 There is a cup. ......

4 Read and circle the odd one: (4 marks)

1	bathroom	hall	living room	hat
2	cheese	rice	blue	meat
3	he	she	we	ball
4	in	like	want	eat

5 Choose the correct answer from a,b or c: (4 marks)

1- Is there .... salt?
ⓐ any ⓑ many ⓒ some

2- Was she .... the garden?
ⓐ to ⓑ in ⓒ on

3- .... about going to the cinema?
ⓐ Whose ⓑ When ⓒ How

4- I .... call a friend yesterday. I washed my hands.
ⓐ didn't ⓑ don't ⓒ doesn't

C Writing (16 Marks)

6 Look and answer the questions: (6 marks)

1- Is he happy?
....

2- How does she go school?
....

3- What is this?
....

4- Do you have a dress?
....

7 Look and write THREE sentences: (6 marks)

....
....
....

8 Punctuate the following: (4 marks)

ahmed and mahmoud went to alexandria
....

Test 22

محافظة شمال سيناء
إدارة العريش التعليمية

A Listening (12 Marks)

1 Listen and circle the word with the short vowel: (6 marks)

1	2	3	4
bed	cake	feel	fox
sneeze	man	bed	coat

2 Listen and complete with one word: (6 marks)

نص الاستماع فى آخر الكتاب

1- Do you .... chocolate chip cookies?
2- I .... like fish.
3- I was at the ....
4- Whose purse is ....?

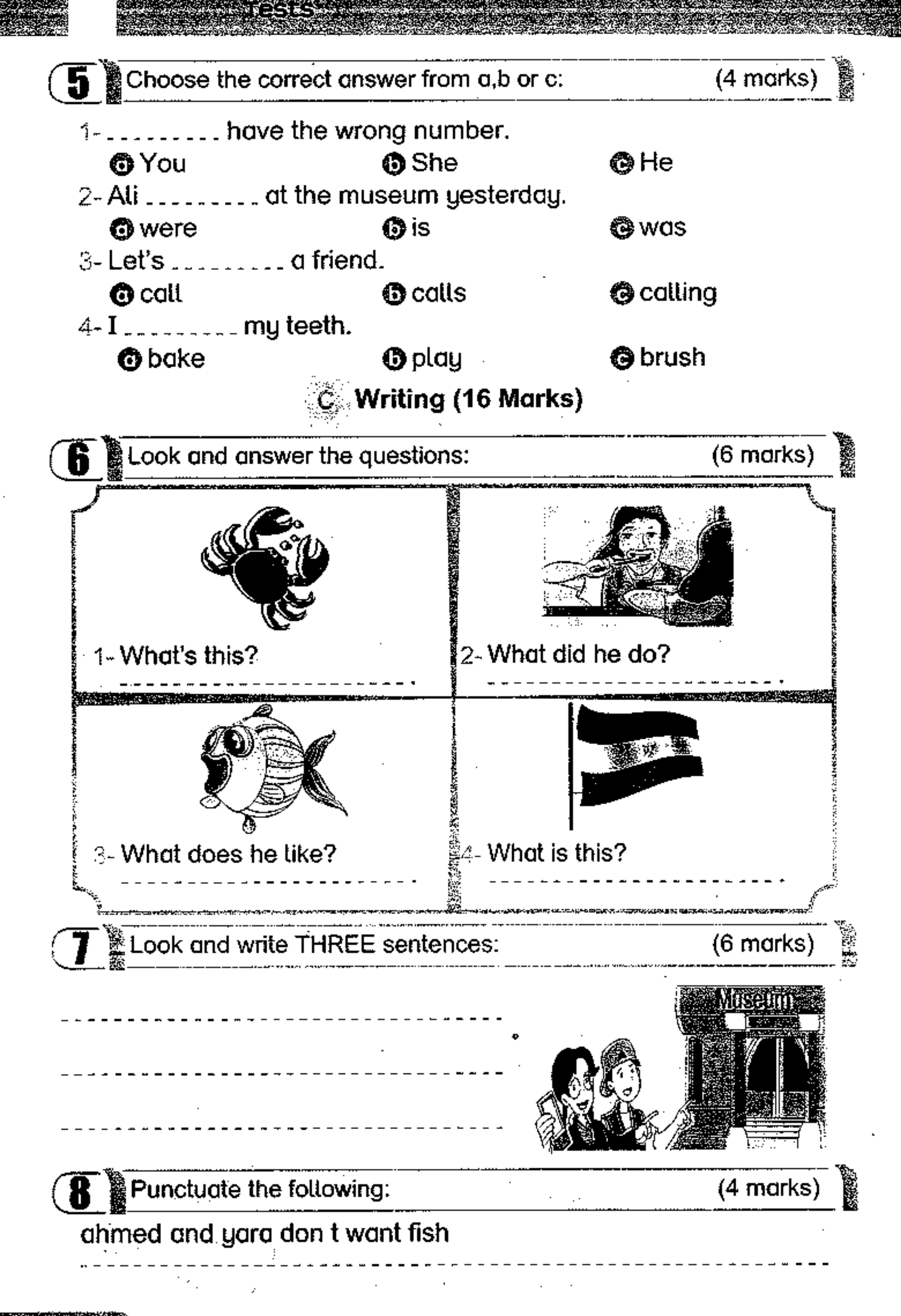
B Reading (12 Marks)

3 Read and write True (T) or False (F): (4 marks)

		True	False
1	She is playing.		
2	She is at school.		
3	She is dreaming.		
4	She is wearing glasses.		

4 Read and circle the odd one: (4 marks)

1	pepper	hot sauce	cat	salt
2	green	grapes	brown	black
3	dog	cat	girl	bat
4	cap	dance	play	wash



5 Choose the correct answer from a,b or c: (4 marks)

1- .... have the wrong number.
ⓐ You ⓑ She ⓒ He

2- Ali .... at the museum yesterday.
ⓐ were ⓑ is ⓒ was

3- Let's .... a friend.
ⓐ call ⓑ calls ⓒ calling

4- I .... my teeth.
ⓐ bake ⓑ play ⓒ brush

C Writing (16 Marks)

6 Look and answer the questions: (6 marks)

1- What's this?
....

2- What did he do?
....

3- What does he like?
....

4- What is this?
....

7 Look and write THREE sentences: (6 marks)

....

....

....

8 Punctuate the following: (4 marks)

ahmed and yara don t want fish

....

Test 23

محافظة اسوان

ادارة ادفو التعليمية

A Listening (12 Marks)

1 Listen and circle the word with the short vowel: (6 marks)

1	2	3	4
drop	kite	cheap	sand
boat	pickle	pepper	lake

2 Listen and complete with one word: (6 marks)

نص الاستماع فى آخر الكتاب

1- I .... sandwiches.

2- They were at the ....

3- The man .... a prize and a present.

4- There are some ....

B Reading (12 Marks)

3 Read and write True (T) or False (F): (4 marks)

		True	False
1	This is a tree.		
2	The tree is tall.		
3	There a river.		
4	There are birds.		

4 Read and circle the odd one: (4 marks)

1	hand	foot	tooth	room
2	father	friend	brother	mother
3	chair	duck	bee	dog
4	orange	apple	present	banana

5 Choose the correct answer from a,b or c: (4 marks)

1- Let's .... tennis.
ⓐ played ⓑ play ⓒ playing

2- I'm hungry. Let's have a ....
ⓐ snack ⓑ snake ⓒ snow

3- I have .... soap.
ⓐ an ⓑ any ⓒ some

4- .... pen is this?
ⓐ Whose ⓑ Where ⓒ Who

C- Writing (16 Marks)

6 Look and answer the questions: (6 marks)

1- Is this a cap?
....

2- Do you want some ice cream?
....

3- What are they doing?
....

4- How much is it?

L.E15

....

7 Look and write THREE sentences: (6 marks)

....
....
....

8 Punctuate the following: (4 marks)

no thanks. I don t like cookies
....

Test 24

الأزهر الشريف
منطقة القاهرة الأزهرية التعليمية

1 Do they have the same final (s) sound? Put (✓) or (✗):

1	2	3	4
ducks	cats	trees	dogs
girls	cups	bees	peas
☐	☐	☐	☐

2 Read and complete:

Shams : Excuse me. Can you help me?
Manar : Yes, of ....
Shams : .... is the candy?
Manar : The candy is in aisle 1.
Shams : How much is the candy?
Manar : It's two ....

3 Look and circle the correct answer:

Is he happy?
a. No, he isn't.
b. Yes, he has.

What does he like?
a. He likes bananas.
b. He likes fish.

4 Read and circle the odd one:

1	bathroom	bedroom	dining room	bicycle
2	money	museum	bakery	school
3	toothpaste	shampoo	car	soap
4	dog	cup	duck	bee

5 Choose the correct answer from a,b or c:

1- There isn't .... sand in the park.
(a) any (b) some (c) many

2- .... about going to the cinema?
(a) What (b) Whose (c) Where

3- .... have the wrong number.
(a) You (b) She (c) He

4- I was .... the bookshop.
(a) on (b) at (c) under

6 Read and write:



How does he go to school?
....



What did she do yesterday?
....

7 Punctuate the following:

1- no it isn t
....

2- let s go to the park on monday
....





Listening materials

Listening materials - General Exercises

السؤال الثانى

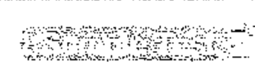
2- Listen and complete with one word:

1- I went to the bakery to buy some bread.
2- How did you go to school?
3- You have the wrong number.
4- He was at the museum.

1- I like cookies.
2- They don't have any money.
3- How much are these?
4- Whose purse is this?

1- Were they in the dining room?
2- We are bored.
3- Wow! That's cheap.
4- There's a plate on the table.

Listening materials - Sample Tests



Sample Test 1

2- Listen and complete with one word:

1- How much are these?
2- I need some salt.
3- There is some grass.
4- He is dreaming.



Sample Test 2

1- I have some money.
2- They don't watch videos.
3- She practises in the morning.
4- Whose wallet is that?

Sample Test 3

1- Thank you so much.
2- They brush their teeth.
3- I have some money.
4- He doesn't like cookies.

Listening materials
نصوص الاستماع الخاصة بامتحانات المحافظات

محافظة القاهرة - إدارة جنوب القاهرة التعليمية

1- We're going outside.
2- Let's have a snack.
3- Can you help me?
4- That sounds good.

محافظة الجيزة - إدارة العجوزة التعليمية

1- Let's have a snack.
2- There is some salt.
3- I don't have mushrooms.
4- Let's play football.

محافظة القليوبية - إدارة القناطر التعليمية

1- He was at the bakery.
2- I'm hungry.
3- They brushed their teeth.
4- They were at the hospital.

محافظة المنوفية - إدارة قويسنا التعليمية

1- I was the museum last Monday.
2- That's a good idea.
3- You have the wrong number.
4- Is Kareem there, please?

محافظة الشرقية - إدارة غرب الزقازيق التعليمية

1- They were at the zoo.
2- We play video games.
3- I can't ride a bike.
4- You have to do your homework.

